Journey to Lhasa and central Tibet / by Sarat Chandra Das ; edited by W.W. Rockhill.

Contributors

Das, Sarat Chandra, 1849-1917.
Rockhill, William Woodville, 1854-1914.

Publication/Creation

London : J. Murray, 1902.

Persistent URL

https://wellcomecollection.org/works/secxvt32

License and attribution

Conditions of use: it is possible this item is protected by copyright and/or related rights. You are free to use this item in any way that is permitted by the copyright and related rights legislation that applies to your use. For other uses you need to obtain permission from the rights-holder(s).

wellcome collection

Wellcome Collection
183 Euston Road
London NW1 2BE UK
T +44 (0)20 7611 8722
E library@wellcomecollection.org
https://wellcomecollection.org

JOURNEY TO LHASA
AND
CENTRAL TIBET

SARAT CHANDRA DAS, C.I.E.

SARACHCHANDRA

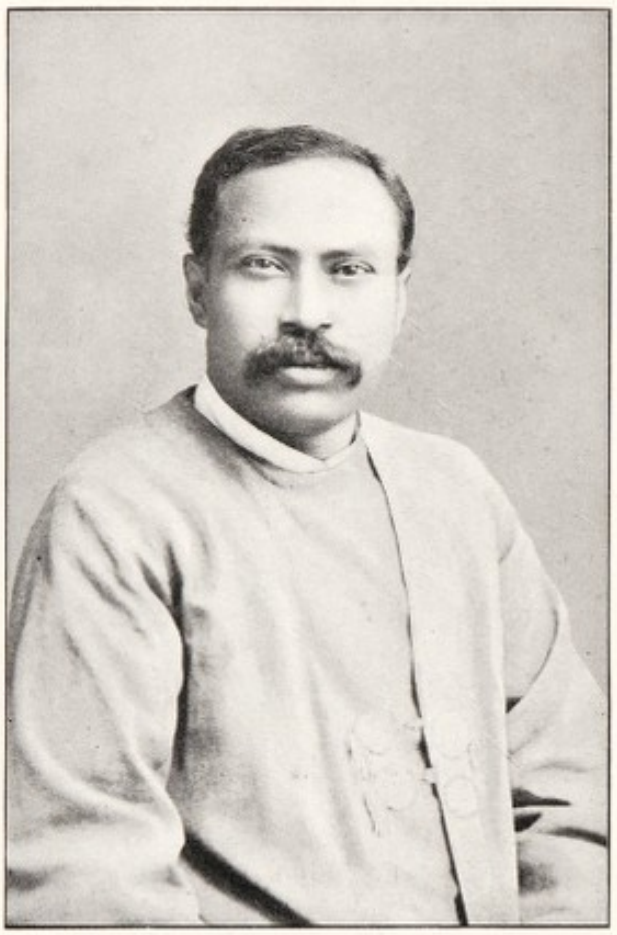
22101436068

0/6 net

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2017 with funding from
Wellcome Library

https://archive.org/details/b29351923

JOURNEY TO LHASA AND CENTRAL TIBET.



SARAT CHANDRA DAS, C.I.E.

82961

JOURNEY

TO

LHASA AND CENTRAL TIBET.

BY

SARAT CHANDRA DAS, C.I.E.,

Of the Bengal Educational Service, Member of the Asiatic Society, Bengal, etc.

EDITED BY

THE HON. W. W. ROCKHILL.

LONDON:

JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET.

1902.

PRINTED BY
WILLIAM CLOWES AND SONS, LIMITED,
LONDON AND BECCLES.

WELLCOME
LIBRARY
INSTITUTE

O. Top.
360

INTRODUCTION.

SARAT CHANDRA DAS was born in the town of Chittagong, in Eastern Bengal, in 1849, in a Hindu family of the *vaidya*, or medical caste. He received his education in the Presidency College at Calcutta, where he became favourably known to Sir Alfred Croft, the present Director of Public Instruction of Bengal, who ever since has been his friend and guide in his geographical and literary work, and by whose representations to the Indian Government it became possible for him to perform his important journeys into Tibet.

While still in the engineering department of the college he was appointed in 1874 head master of the Bhutia Boarding School, just opened at Darjiling by order of the Lieutenant-Governor of Bengal, Sir George Campbell. Sarat Chandra at once applied himself with characteristic energy to the study of the Tibetan language, and established friendly relations with the Raja of Sikkim and many of the leading lamas in that country, to which he made several short trips in the succeeding years.

In 1878, lama Ugyen-gyatso, who was attached to his school as Tibetan teacher, was sent to Tashilhunpo and Lhasa with tribute from his monastery, and advantage was taken of this opportunity to ascertain whether permission could not be obtained from the Tibetan authorities for Sarat Chandra to visit Tibet. The lama was so fortunate as to obtain from the Prime Minister of the Panchen rinpoche of Tashilhunpo an invitation for Sarat Chandra to visit that great centre of lamaist learning, of which George Bogle and Samuel Turner have left us such interesting descriptions; and, so as further to insure his safety and justify his presence in the country in the eyes of the suspicious lamas and Chinese, the Minister had the Babu's name entered as a student of theology in the Grand Monastery of that

place. A passport was also brought Sarat Chandra by the lama, issued to him by the Prime Minister, by which a choice of roads to enter Tibet was given him, and his safe conduct insured to Shigatse.

Armed with these credentials, Sarat Chandra set out for Tashilhunpo in June, 1879, accompanied by lama Ugyen-gyatso, and there he remained for nearly six months, the guest of the Prime Minister, with whose assistance he was able to make a careful examination of the rich collections of books in the great libraries of the convent, bringing back with him to India a large and valuable collection of works in Sanskrit and Tibetan. He also explored during this journey the country north and north-east of Kanchanjinga, of which nothing was previously known, noting with great care observations of bearing and distances. Not the least valuable result of this journey was, however, the friendly relations which the traveller was able to establish with the liberal and powerful Prime Minister, who, deeply interested in western civilization and its wonderful discoveries, of which he had learned much from the mouth of Sarat Chandra, requested him to come back again to Tashilhunpo, to instruct him further in the wonders of the west.

An account of this first journey was printed by the Bengal Government some time after the author's return, with a prefatory note by the traveller's friend, Sir Alfred Croft. As the route therein described is the same as that followed by the traveller in his second and more extended journey of 1881–82, and as the results of his studies in Tibet in 1879, as shown in this report, bear nearly exclusively on historical and religious subjects, it has been deemed advisable to omit it from the present publication, embodying in footnotes all such details as have been found in it bearing on the geography and ethnology of Tibet, and which are not in the later and fuller report.

The year 1880 was passed by Sarat Chandra at his home in Darjiling, working on papers on the history, religion, ethnology, and folk-lore of Tibet, drawn from the data collected during his journey. These papers, most of them of great value to Oriental students, have since appeared in the *Journal* of the Bengal Asiatic Society and in that of the Buddhist Text Society of India, which Sarat Chandra founded in 1892, and of which he has since remained the secretary.

In November, 1881, in fulfilment of the promise previously made to the Prime Minister of the Panchen rinpoche, Sarat Chandra started on his second journey to Tibet, again accompanied by Ugyen-gyatso, who acted as secretary, collector, and surveyor, though much of the later work, including the extremely important survey of Lake Palti (Yamdo tso), was done by the traveller himself. Sarat Chandra again established his headquarters at Tashilhunpo, whence he made various excursions along both banks of the great Tsangpo, from Sakya in the west to Samye and Tse-tang in the east. He was also so fortunate as to be able to make a short visit to Lhasa, which had only been done twice by native explorers prior to his time, once in 1866 by Nain Singh, and again in 1880 by Kishen Singh, the latter making a detailed map of the whole city and its environs. He was present at an audience of the Tale lama, and visited a number of the important monuments of the city; but for various reasons, especially of a prudential nature, he was prevented from seeing many places of great interest in and around the city; but his valuable notes are a most important addition to the descriptions left us by previous travellers.

After this brief visit to the capital of Tibet, Sarat Chandra explored the valley of the Yalung, where Tibetan civilization is said to have first made its appearance, gathering everywhere, with the usual thoroughness which distinguishes his work, valuable information concerning each locality traversed. In January, 1883, he re-entered India after an absence of about fourteen months.

The report of this journey was printed in two separate publications by order of the Government of Bengal. They are entitled, "Narrative of a Journey to Lhasa," and "Narrative of a Journey Round Lake Palti (Yamdok), and in Lhokha, Yarlung, and Sakya." For various reasons these reports were kept as strictly confidential documents by the Indian Government until about 1890, when selections from them, bearing exclusively upon the ethnology of Tibet, however, appeared in an article in the July number of the *Contemporary Review*, and five years later further extracts from them were published in the August number of the *Nineteenth Century*. It is these reports which, with only such slight modifications as have

seemed absolutely necessary to make the narrative connected, are published in the present volume.

In 1885, when the Government of India contemplated sending a mission to Tibet, and the late Honourable Colman Macauley was sent by it to Peking to obtain the necessary authorization of the Chinese Government to the projected embassy, Sarat Chandra accompanied him to the Chinese capital, where he remained several months in the early part of the year. It was during this visit to Peking that I became acquainted with the Babu, to whom I felt strongly drawn by my lifelong interest in Tibetan studies. Sarat Chandra lived, while at Peking, in the lamasery outside the An-ting gate, known as the Hsi Huang ssu, and in which all Tibetan traders stop when at Peking. He wore the dress common to lamas in China, and was always called the "Ka-che lama," or "the lama from Kashmir." His knowledge of Tibetan, his extensive travels, and his courteous manners gained for him the friendship of many of the lamas, among others of the Chang-chia Hutuketu, the Metropolitan of the lama church in China. Had the mission ever been sent to Tibet, it was understood that Sarat Chandra was to accompany it, and he would have rendered it valuable service; but the project was abandoned, and since then the Babu has bent all his energies to the publication of Tibetan texts and to the preparation of other works on Buddhism while living in Darjiling, where he holds the position of Tibetan translator to the Government of Bengal.

The services he rendered Mr. Macauley while in Peking were deemed, however, of such value by the Indian Government, that on his return to Bengal he was given the title of Rai Bahadur, and created a Companion of the Order of the Indian Empire, and in 1887 the Royal Geographical Society awarded him the "Back Premium" for his geographical researches.

The amount of literary work accomplished by Sarat Chandra since his return from Tibet in 1883 is enormous in bulk, and its value to students cannot be over-estimated. He brought back with him from his travels over two hundred volumes, manuscripts or block-prints, obtained from the great libraries in Tibet, a number of them in Sanskrit, and for many centuries past lost in India. From these

sources he has drawn for the preparation of the valuable papers which he has since published, a list of which would occupy several pages. Besides a large number of translations into English of Tibetan texts, he has edited in Sanskrit for the 'Bibliotheca Indica' Kshemendra's poem, entitled "Avadana Kalpalata," which he was so fortunate as to discover in Lhasa, and in Tibetan an historical work of great value, another giving the history of the pre-Buddhist or Bon religion of Tibet, a very valuable native grammatical work, and others too numerous to mention. He is now engaged, and has well on through the press, a Tibetan-English dictionary, which, he tells me, will be of about two thousand pages, exclusive of a Sanskrit-English appendix of Buddhist terms.

This brief notice of Sarat Chandra's literary work will suffice, however, to show that his labours in this field are as important as those which he has rendered to geography. Personally, I am under a lasting debt of gratitude to him for the valuable information which he gave me while in Peking, and which was later on of great use to me during my explorations in Tibet, and I hold myself particularly fortunate in having been chosen by the Royal Geographical Society to edit his reports, as it is a means of publicly expressing my indebtedness to him, and also, I trust, of helping him to take the place he so justly deserves beside Csoma de Koros, as one of the greatest pioneers of exploration and discovery in Tibet.

This introductory note would not be complete if further reference were not made to the Babu's faithful companion and assistant in his two journeys to Tibet, lama Ugyen-gyatso. The lama, who is a Tibetan from Sikkim and connected with the reigning family of that State, was born in 1851 at Yangang, and at the age of ten entered the lamasery of Pēma-yangtse, where he took the usual course of monastic studies for twelve years. In 1873 he visited, for the first time, Darjiling in the suite of the Raja of Sikkim, and a little later on in the same year he was designated by that Prince, and at the request of the Deputy-Commissioner, Mr. Edgar, to fill the post of Tibetan teacher at the Bhutia school at Darjiling, which it was proposed to open. For a time the lama was employed in the office of the Deputy-Commissioner, and accompanied that officer on a visit to

Sikkim. In 1874 he entered upon his duties as teacher in the school, and continued there until 1878, when he went to Tibet, as previously noted, to bear tribute from his lamasery to the heads of the church. During the lama's residence at Darjiling he had been instructed in the use of such surveying instruments as it is customary for the trans-frontier surveyors to use, and the accurate work which he did during his various journeys bears witness to the thoroughness with which he was instructed and to his own ability. From this journey of 1878, the lama brought back with him the passport which enabled Chandra Das to make his two journeys to Tibet, in both of which he accompanied him, rendering him everywhere true and valuable service.

The discovery by Sarat Chandra in 1882 of the true dimensions and shape of Lake Palti,* seemed to Sir Alfred Croft so important that in June, 1883, he despatched the lama to cover the same ground in order to check off, verify, and complete the survey of the Babu. This he successfully did, adding only to the latter's work a small portion to the south-east of the lake, but establishing the great accuracy of the previous survey. He also explored the Lhobrak (Manas) valley, and again visited Lhasa, returning to India by way of the Tang la and Chumbi valley, and reaching Darjiling in December of the same year. A report of this work was prepared by Colonel, now Sir Thomas, Holdich, and appeared in the "Report of the Explorations in Sikkim, Bhutan, and Tibet from 1856 to 1886," which was published in 1889 by the Trigonometrical Survey of India, and is frequently quoted in the notes to the present narrative.

Since then the lama, whose services have been rewarded by the Indian Government with the title of Rai Bahadur, a silver medal and a grant of money, has been employed as chief Tibetan translator to Government, serving in that capacity during the late Sikkim expedition, and has also given valuable assistance to Sarat Chandra in editing Tibetan texts.

W. W. ROCKHILL.

Block Island, U.S.A.,
July 27, 1899.†

* Sarat Chandra has, in honour of Sir Alfred Croft, named the lake Yamdo Croft. See *Journ. Buddh. Text Soc.*, iv. pt. iii. p. iv.

† The publication of this volume has been unavoidably delayed.

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER		PAGE
I.	Journey from Darjiling to Tashilhunpo	1
II.	Residence at Tashilhunpo	45
III.	Journey to Dongtse	69
IV.	Residence at Tashilhunpo, and preparations for Journey to Lhasa	104
V.	From Tashilhunpo to Yamdo Samding, and thence to Lhasa	122
VI.	Residence at Lhasa	148
VII.	Government of Lhasa—Customs, Festivals, etc. ...	171
VIII.	Return to Tashilhunpo and Ugyen-gyatso's visit to the Bonbo Sanctuary of Rigyal Sendar	195
IX.	Funeral of the Panchen Rinpoche — Visit to the Great Lamasery of Samye and to Yarlung	213
X.	Visit to Sakya and Return to India	237
XI.	Social Divisions—Marriage—Funerals—Medicine—Festivals	246

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

	PAGE
Portrait of Sarat Chandra Das	*Frontispiece*
Map showing the Routes of Sarat Chandra Das through Sikkim and Tibet	1
A Kirati Woman of the Limbu Tribe	9
Sikkim Soldier	25
Sarat Chandra crossing the Donkhya Pass	42
Town of Shigatse	45
The Grand Monastery of Tashilhunpo	50
Khandro Ye-shes. Padma Sambhava. Lha-cham Mandarasa ...	58
Chang-sa Rgyab-pa, Wine-drinking concluding Wedding Ceremonies ...	73
Black-hat Dance (Shanag Cham)	115
A Lhacham, or Lady of Rank	120
Tibetan Nobleman	125
Nam Tos-sras (Vaisravana), the Guardian King of the North	136
The Disposal of the Dead (by cutting the Corpse into pieces) ...	140
Plan of Lhasa	149
Plan of the City of Lhasa	151
Potala, the Residence of the Dalai lama, at Lhasa	154
Paldan Lhamo (srimati-devi)	158
Cho-Khang, the Grand Temple of Buddha, at Lhasa	160
Funeral Procession	164
Potala, the Palace of the Grand Lama	166
Lama delivering an Oracle	175
A Little Girl, daughter of a Tibetan Nobleman	200
Picnic in a Grove	201
Glaciers of Kanglachan Pass	215
River Zemu, Chatangla Pass	219
Glacial Lake and Moraines at the Source of the Zenni (?)	223
Cane Bridge on the Rungit River	229
Bridge at Bri, near Yangyang	233
Waterfall below Pachungri, between Gera-tang and Metang ...	239
Khamba Djongpon's Encampment on a Moraine beyond Kangchan Jang Mountain	243
Semarinu and adjoining Snowy Mountain	249
Snow Mountains beyond Chattayla Pass	253
Map of Tibet and the surrounding Regions	*At end*

Published by the Royal Geographical Society

JOURNEY TO LHASA AND CENTRAL TIBET.

CHAPTER I.

JOURNEY FROM DARJILING TO TASHILHUNPO.

November 7, 1881.—On the night of my departure from Darjiling,* the moon was shining brightly, though some dark clouds presaged a slight fall of rain. Our eyes often turned with anxiety towards the mountain-tops on the eastern outskirts of Nepal, to see if snow was falling on them; and the fear of death in the snows and the hope of overcoming the obstacles of nature alternated within me as I left my home in Darjiling, soon to bid a long farewell to my native land, with but faint hope that I would ever see it again.

I rode on silently, and, to my great relief, unnoticed by any one, save one or two Bhutias on their way towards Darjiling, and in the stillness of the night we could hear the songs of the workwomen of Takvar and the music of their pipes and drums. Coming to the river, which was rather broad at this season of the year, I met lama Ugyen-gyatso, who was waiting to help me across. Three or four bamboos loosely laid over the main stream enabled us to cross, though with some difficulty, and with the help of an intelligent Bhutia attendant I was able to push on over the narrow slippery path till half-past one, when I reached Gok, now a deserted village, where, in place of the dozen shops and pretty Buddhist shrine which formerly marked the place, I found but a cow-shed where a Nepali was snoring fast asleep. It was here that the up-country grain-sellers used to come to buy large quantities of Indian corn and cardamom seed to resell in the Darjiling bazar.

* On the origin of Darjiling as a sanatorium, see Hooker, 'Himalayan Journals,' (1854) i. 115.

Spreading our rugs in the long grass near the cow-shed, we tried to rest for a while; but what with the unevenness of the ground, insects creeping over me, the prickly points of brambles and weeds penetrating the thin rug on which I lay, and a shower of rain which wetted us through, we could get no sleep, so we started again at four in the morning. The path, hardly a foot broad, was choked with weeds and long grass. Lighting my lantern, I followed Phurchung, my shot-gun tied across the top of the load he carried, and with many a slip and tumble we reached the valley of the Rummam at daybreak.

November 8.—The Rummam, one of the principal feeders of the Great Rungit, rises in the Singli mountains, and forms the boundary between British territory and independent Sikkim on the north-west, all the country to the right (south) of it belonging to the former Government. We found it a raging torrent, and only spanned by a light footbridge of bamboo poles resting on a huge boulder in the middle of the stream, and held down by rocks. The Lepchas and Limbus catch fish, sometimes of considerable size, in the cold season in the pools in the river-bed, which the former sell in the Darjiling bazar. *Sal* trees were abundant, and on the hill-slopes we saw cardamom and cotton now ready to be picked. On the larger patches of cultivation, guards were stationed in bamboo watch-houses to scare away the monkeys and bears with bamboo clappers. I was told that a large species of monkeys, besides the small variety of which we saw a few, are found in this valley, and that they are a terror to the peasants and to solitary female travellers.* To kill these the Lepchas use dogbane and other poisonous roots, which they mix with cooked edible roots or rice.

On nearing the bridge, we fell in with some twenty men carrying oranges to Darjiling, but I was fortunately able to pass by unnoticed. After a short rest, during which I had some breakfast, and changed my Indian dress for a Tibetan one, we resumed our journey uphill, leaving the Mitogang road on our right. Antelope and wild goat abound hereabout, but the villagers shoot but little: they are so poor

* Hooker, *op. cit.*, ii. 37, mentions seeing a troop of large monkeys in the Lamteng valley (alt. 9000 feet) in Sikkim. *Ibid.*, p. 108, he says that in the most snowy part of Sikkim (near the Tunkra la) "large monkeys are also found on the skirts of the pine forests, and a curious long-tailed animal, *Ailurus ochraceus*, peculiar to the Himalaya, something between a diminutive bear and a squirrel." Large monkeys are also found in Eastern Tibet at about 9000 feet alt.—(W. R.)

that they have hardly a dozen matchlocks among them all. Nepalese settlers are numerous here, and I noticed some Brahmans and Chetris who live chiefly by selling milk and butter. We passed several paddy fields made on terraces along the hillsides, where ploughs drawn by bullocks were used; but the Bhutias neither terrace the hillsides nor do they use ploughs, but keep to their time-honoured implements, hoes and clubs (*in*) of oak, by which they get but scanty returns. The Limbus * till the ground for three consecutive years, and then leave it fallow for three, when the weeds are cut and burnt, and it is again put under cultivation.

After ascending several hills by steep paths, we came to the top of a ridge marked by a *mendong* and a *chorten*,† and from whence a picturesque view of the valley of Dhuramdien, dotted with numerous houses, and of the surrounding country is obtained. This spot is called *Mani-dara* by the Pahirias, and *Chorten-gang* by the Bhutias, both names meaning "the ridge of the sacred *stupa*." Here we halted by the side of a rill, and purchased two bottles of *murwa* beer ‡ and vegetables from some Limbus.

November 9.—Our way led along an easy path by Limbu houses with sheepfolds and pigsties in front of them, and around which a few goats and cows were also seen. The Limbu fowls, by the way, are not so large as those of the Bhutias. As I journeyed on we talked of some of the Limbu § customs, the most remarkable of which is that

* Called Chung by the Lepchas. Though not divided into castes, they belong to several tribes. All consider themselves as the earliest inhabitants of the Tambur valley, though they have a tradition of having originally emigrated from Tibet. See Hooker, *op. cit.*, i. 137.

† It would, perhaps, be better to transcribe this *mangdong* (from Tibetan *mang*, "many;" and *dong*, "stones"). *Chorten* is *mchod*, "offering;" *rten*, "receptacle." It is usually pronounced *chürten*. See *infra*, 37, 40.—(W. R.)

‡ Made from half-fermented millet. *Murwa* is *Eleusine coracana*. See Hooker, *op. cit.*, i. 133, 175.—(W. R.)

§ The country between the Arun and Tambur is called Limbudu by the Nepali natives, and the aboriginal people who have dwelt there from time immemorial are designated by the name of Limbu, though they call themselves by the name of Yakthanga. In the same manner the tribes inhabiting Kiranta, or the regions between Dudkosi and the Arun, are called Kirat, which name is as old as that of the great Hindu deity Mahadeva. The Kirat of the north and the Limbu of the south were known to the ancients by the name of Kirata, on account of their living by hunting and carrying on trade with the natives of the plains in musk, yak-tails, shellac, cardamoms, etc., from the earliest Hindu periods. See also *infra*, p. 26.

The Tibetans and the Bhutias of Nepal and Sikkim call the Limbus by the name of Tsang, probably on account of their having emigrated from the Tsang province of Tibet. Both tradition and written Limbu works relate that the Limbu people partly

of beating drums on every trivial occasion. Every Limbu family, be it poor or rich, possesses, as a rule, three or four tambourine-shaped drums, which they beat on going out of or returning to their villages. The wife or children beat them in honour of the husband when he goes out, and the latter when he leaves the house.

Crossing the range we entered a richer country, as was evidenced by the vegetation and the abundance of trees. We saw long canes growing luxuriantly, and there was quite a large grove of plantation trees, showing the warm climate the country enjoys.

November 10.—The sky was cloudy and the atmosphere filled with fog when we set out. Along the banks of the streams we had to cross grew tall pines and giant ferns, while thick brushwood, ferns and rattans lined the banks, the water dashing down from the hill-tops in cascades. Pushing our way through the dense forests of the Hi range, the sky scarcely visible through the lofty oaks, pines and magnolias, we reached after an hour's hard ascent the Rishi chorten, near which is a moss-covered *mendong*. The Hi La commences here, and from it one commands an excellent

emigrated thither (to Limbuan) from Tsang in Thibet and Kashi in the Madhya Desh, and partly sprang from underneath a huge rock in the village of Khedab, to the north-east of Tsanpur. So that the Limbu people were divided into three great tribes, according to their original homes, Tsang, Kashi, and Phedah. The first branch from Tsang spread over Tambur-Khola, Phalung, Mirva Khola itself, Mayiwa, and Yangrub, being designated by the Tibetans as Tsang Monpa, or the Limbus inhabiting the defiles. Those who came from Kashi occupied Chaibisa, Kaikhola, and Tsolkar. Those that sprang from underneath the great rock of Phedah were also called Baiphuta. The name of the place in the middle of which stands the huge slab of rock, measuring a hundred fathoms on either side, was Phedah Pangi-loma, which is evidently a corruption of the name *Pheduh Pangi-lungpa*, or "the pasture land in Pheduh." See also *infra*, p. 26.

The Baiphuta Limbu were the most powerful and numerous; their chief, Baiphuta Han Raja, ruled over Eastern Nepal. All the Limbu tribes, as well as the Kiratas, paid him tribute and military service, in a manner resembling the feudal system of Europe. The power of this family having declined, the third tribe assumed the supremacy, and massacred the adherents of the former rulers. After the fall of the Han dynasty there was anarchy all over Eastern Nepal, until there arose in the Srisobha tribe a mighty man called Marang, who succeeded in reconciling the different tribes, and was elected king over all the aboriginal tribes of Eastern Nepal, the southern portion being ruled by a Newar chief. After the death of the most distinguished of his successors, Mohani Raja, the Limbu tribes again fell into anarchy, and continued in this state for more than a century. At last, probably in the ninth century, appeared the famous Srijanga, the deified hero of the Limbus. The cis-Himalayan Bhutias identify him with an incarnation of Padma Sambhava, and attribute to him the introduction of the art of writing by the invention of an alphabet. Tradition also attributes the introduction of this art to Marang Raja, and its revival to Srijanga.—(S. C. D.) See *Gazetteer of Sikkim*, pp. 36-38.

view of South-Western Sikkim, including Tonglo and Singli, and the hills of Darjiling. In the thickets roundabout were to be seen the tracks of wild pigs, and the woods were alive with monkeys which feed on acorns.

At about 1 p.m. we reached the top of the range, some 6000 feet above the level of the sea. Crossing a number of brooks which empty into the Rishi, we came to some cowsheds, where I would have liked to have rested; but no rest was possible, for I could see the leeches * spanning their length with swift but measured paces, making for me with haste.

At 4 p.m. we commenced our descent from the top of the ridge, which is marked by a *lartsé* †—here a bush of dwarf bamboos, with scraps of red cloth tied to it, near which Phurchung uttered his *lha sol*,‡ or invocation to the mountain deities. We halted for the night in a little clearing in the jungle at the foot of a gigantic oak, a few miles above the village of Lingcham. The giant nettle creeper here attains its largest growth, some more than 100 feet long. The tree nettle also abounds in this forest, and our servants found also the common nettle, the tender leaves of which make excellent soup.§

November 11.—The sky was overcast, and there was rain and sunshine at the same time, a phenomenon the Bhutias call *metog-charpa*, or "flowery shower." The village of Hi, by which we passed, contains several Bhutia, Lepcha, and Limbu houses.‖ The latter

* Cf. Hooker, *op. cit.*, i. p. 107: "They puncture through thick worsted stockings, and even trousers, and when full roll in the form of a little soft ball into the bottom of the shoe. . . ." *Ibid.*, p. 167, he makes mention of them swarming below 7000 feet, "a small black species above 3000 feet, and a large yellow-brown solitary one below that elevation."—(W. R.) Leeches are found at all elevations up to 10,000 feet at least.

† *La*, "pass;" *rtse*, "point, summit;" usually a pile of stones with brush stuck in it, on which rags are hung.—(W. R.)

‡ *Lha*, "god;" *gsol*, "to beg." The invocation I have always heard used is "*lha gya lo, lha gya lo*," meaning, "god (give me) an hundred years, god (give me) an hundred years!"—(W. R.)

§ The giant nettle is the *Urtica heterophylla*. Hooker, *op. cit.*, i. 182. The fibres of some nettles are twisted for bowstrings, others as thread for sewing and weaving, while many are eaten raw and in soups, especially the numerous little succulent species. The *Urtica crenulata*, or great shrubby nettle, grows also in these parts. Hooker, *op. cit.*, ii. 188.—(W. R.)

‖ On the Lepchas, see Dr. A. Campbell, *Jour. Anth. Inst.*, i. 128, *et seq.* Dr. Campbell has also written several valuable papers on the Limboos in the *Jour. Asiat. Soc. of Bengal* for 1855 and other years, and in the *Jour. Anth. Inst.*, vol. i.; also papers on the Murnis and Haius of Nepaul and Sikkim, in the same collection, I believe; but

people seem to be prosperous; they cultivate rice on irrigated terraces, and use a plough drawn by buffaloes. A few hundred yards above the River Kalai (also called Kalhait) we saw cardamom patches carefully fenced. The Kalai river, which we found rapid at even this season of the year, rises in the Singli pass, and after a circuitous course of about 20 miles, empties into the great Rungit near the foot of Tashiding hill. Villages are numerous along the river for many miles; they are situated on ridges, which look like lateral ribs of a range running on either side of the Kalai from west to east, generally sending out southerly spurs.

The Kalai is overhung on both sides by lofty trees growing on steep banks apparently inaccessible when looked at from the river bank. The river is bridged by two long, stout bamboos resting on a huge boulder in the middle of the stream, and weighted down with slabs of stone.

In the shallow part of the stream piles have been driven to hold bamboo nets for capturing fish. This torrent is well known for its delicious fish; and we saw growing by some of the Limbu houses the *na-dag-shig*,* a tree, the leaves of which are used to poison fish which swarm in the stagnant pools in the river.

There are five classes of priests among the Limbu people, who perform their religious and secular ceremonies. They are called *Phedangba, Bijua, Dami, Baidang,* and *Srijanga.*†

The Phedangba enjoy the privilege of conducting the religious ceremonies, and of dealing in omens and fortune-telling. The Bijuba are trained to the Shamanic worship, of which fantastic dances are the characteristic feature. The third order practice witchcraft exclusively, and are said to be able to expel evil spirits through the

they are not accessible to me. Dr. Hooker, *op. cit.*, i. 127-136, says of the Lepchas: "They, or at least some of their tribes, call themselves Rong and Arratt, and their country Dijong. Polyandy is unknown among them, and polygamy rare. Marriage is by purchase. The dead are burnt or buried. Omens are sought in the entrails of fowls (p. 135). They have no religion, though acknowledging the existence of good and bad spirits."—(W. R.)

* Perhaps Nya-dug-shing (*nya*, "fish;" *dug*, "poison;" *shing*, "tree"). Dr. Hooker (*op. cit.*, i. 168) mentions as growing in Sikkim, aconite and convallaria yielding the *bikh* poison.—(W. R.)

† Dr. Hooker (*op. cit.*, i. 138) says that in their funeral ceremonies "the Bijooa of the Lepchas is employed; but the Limboo has also priests of his own, called 'Phedangbos,' who belong to rather a higher order than the Bijooas." Dr. Hooker's description of the Bijua and of the Lepchas' religious beliefs prove them conclusively to profess nearly the same religion as the Bonbo of Tibet.—(W. R.)

mouth. The fourth class, called Baidang, are physicians, the name Baidang being undoubtedly derived from the Sanskrit *Baidya*. The fifth, which is the most important of the five orders, has the exclusive privilege of interpreting the religious books, and of studying religious observances and rites. My informant, though a Srijanga, combined in his person the qualifications of the other four orders; hence his great reputation among the Limbus, who considered him endowed with divine attributes.

Leaving the banks of the Kalai, we pushed on uphill through long grass and reed thickets, where wild pigs were numerous and the porcupine abounds.* The latter animal is said to do much harm to pulse and radish fields, and destroys a great many of the wild yams on which the people chiefly subsist. On ascending about 3000 feet above the Kalai valley, we enjoyed distant views of Pema-yangtse, Yantang, Hi, Sakyang, and other villages on the high flat ridges on either side of the Kalai and Ratong rivers, and on our right was the village of Lingcham with its orange groves and numerous *murwa* fields. We halted near a Limbu house, and the coolies plucked wild onions (*lagog*) † growing in the crevices of the rocks, with which they seasoned their curries. This *lagog*, though smelling like the common garlic, is not half so strong, and gives a peculiar flavour to meat. It is said to produce coughing.

November 12.—We continued to ascend by a hardly discernible trail, passing patches of Indian corn and a few miserable Limbu houses: one woman we saw was carrying a basketful of wild apricots. At 2 p.m. we reached the top of the ridge, on the furthest extremity of which to our right was the Sangnag Choiling (pronounced Changachelling) monastery, while near the path we were following was an old moss-covered *chorten*.

Passing through dense woods of oaks and pines, and pushing our way through thickets of tree-nettle and underbrush, we reached, after two hours, the little village of Tale, where there are some twenty houses, and around which some mares, buffaloes, pigs, and a large number of cows were feeding. The inhabitants were anxious

* Cf. Hooker, *op. cit.*, i. 205.—(W. R.)

† The Tibetan word *lagog* is usually translated garlic. I have always heard onion called by its Chinese name *tsung*. Wild onions are very common in Northern Tibet, at elevations of 15,000 feet and upwards.—(W. R.)

to get salt from us in exchange for *chang*,* for the October fall of snow had prevented the Yangpung salt dealers from reaching this place, and salt was in consequence scarce; but we had to decline their offers, as we had no more than we required ourselves.†

November 13.—Our way led us through the village of Tale to the Ringbi river, a stream as rapid as the Kalai. There is a strong bamboo bridge over it, but we crossed by some bamboos laid side by side where the river was narrowest. To the north-west of the village, on a parallel ridge trending northward from the same range of hills, is the village of Nambura. We followed the stream up for 5 miles by a circuitous trail, and then crossed over again to the right bank, a little below Nambura. The path led along the side of a cliff, and we had great difficulty in making our way along its slippery side, placing our feet in fissures of rocks and holding fast by creepers and grass. Then, following the course of the river, we ascended towards the village of Ringbi, and looking back we saw Tale, Nambura, and many other villages perched high up on the mountain sides several thousand feet above us.

Passing under a huge rock, below which the stream had cut gullies, we crossed over by means of bamboos and wooden ladders. Looking up once I saw some stuffed pheasants and a Tibetan shirt of red cloth hidden in a fissure of the rock, evidently by some bird-*shikaris*. Birds of various hues, especially several varieties of pheasants, abound in these woods, which are frequented by *shikaris* who earn a livelihood by selling stuffed birds at Darjiling.

A mile further on we came to the village of Ringbi,‡ situated in a beautiful plain, behind which rose cragged rocks; to the north and east the Ringbi river roared far down below us. The wild plantain, a gigantic rattan, and numerous pines and oaks covered the hills on the other side of the torrent. There are here a half-dozen houses inhabited by Limbus, who raise rice, Indian corn, murwa, and other varieties of millet.

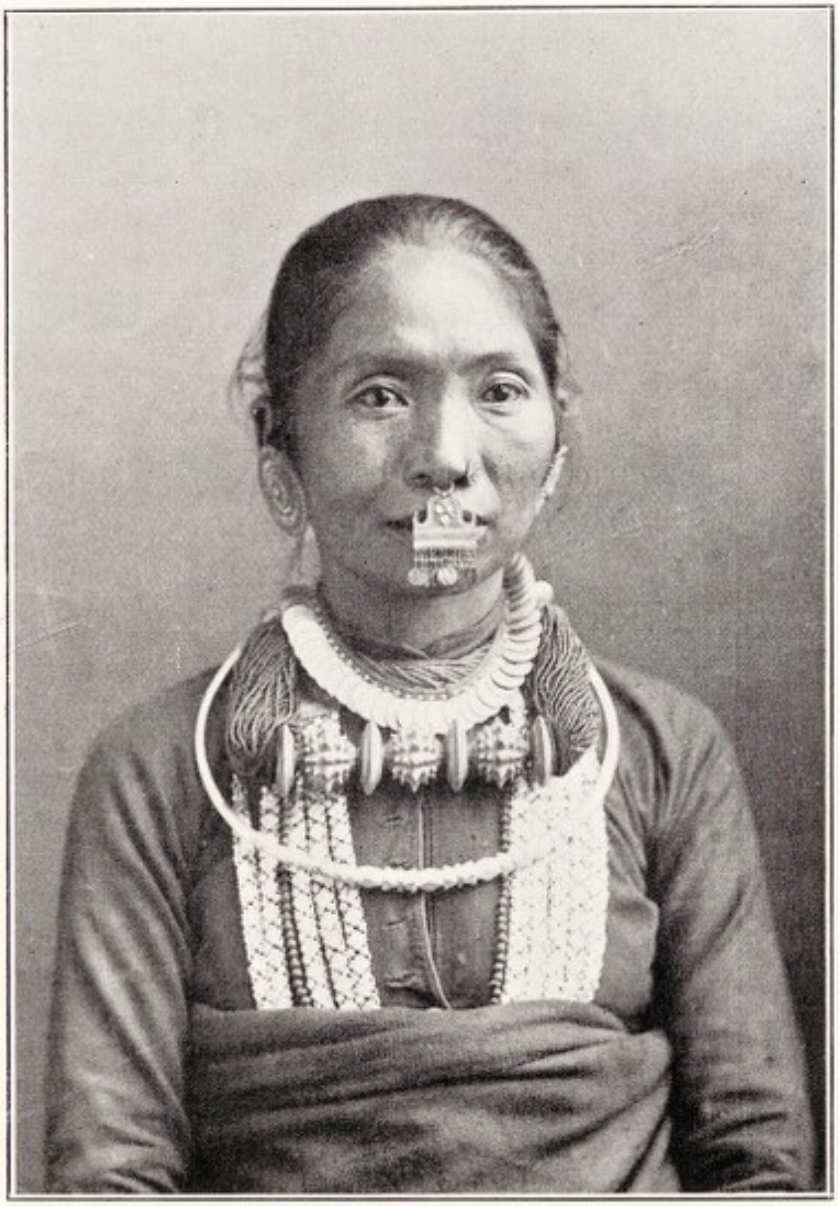
As soon as Phurchung had laid his load on the ground, he ran off to the house of an acquaintance to buy for me some bottles of

* *Chang* is made from half fermented barley, and is the national drink of Tibet. On its preparation, see Jaeschke, 'Tib.-Engl. Dictionary,' *s. v. chang*, and *infra* 34, note 1.—(W. R.)

† On the salt trade *viâ* the Rathong valley, see Hooker, *op. cit.*, i. 340, 350.

‡ Hooker's Ringbee.

beer, and presently returned with three, of which he well knew one would be given him. Our tent was pitched on the flat near the river, and my rugs being spread, I stretched myself at my ease, forgetting the fatigues of the journey. The servants had dispersed, some to collect firewood, some to pick edible wild plants,



A KIRATI WOMAN OF THE LIMBU TRIBE.

others to buy vegetables for our evening meal—nothing broke the silence save the sound of the rushing torrent below. I slept soundly, my mind more occupied with the future than the past.

November 14.—The morning was clear, the view on all sides superb, and, though familiar with mountain scenery, my eye never tired of its wild grandeur. We waited and waited for hours for

Phurchung, whom I had sent to Nambura to buy provisions; but, as he had not appeared by noon, we had to give up all thoughts of travelling that day. In the afternoon he made his appearance, loaded with rice, maize, murwa, eggs, vegetables, etc., and leading a ewe, which he said had cost him Rs. 4. He was very drunk, but conscious of his condition. He begged to be excused, and, after numerous salams and lollings of the tongue after the Tibetan fashion, he vanished from our sight.

We were asked by the Limbus to exchange salt, of which they stood much in need, for *tsuo*,* a dyeing creeper which grows here in abundance, and of which they had collected many large bundles; but again we had to refuse.

Phurchung much regretted that one of his best friends among the Limbus of this place had gone to a distant village to attend a marriage, for he might have rendered great assistance in many ways.

The marriage customs of this people are very curious and interesting. Some among them at the time of marriage consult astrologers. When a man and a girl think of marrying, they meet, without consulting their parents, at some place—a market, if there be one near—in order to sing witty songs, in which test the man is required to excel his fair rival. If he is beaten in this contest by the maiden whose hand he covets, he runs away in deep shame at his defeat; but if he wins, he seizes her by the hand and takes her to his home without further ceremony, but usually accompanied by a female companion. If the man has had some previous knowledge of the girl's superior attainment in singing, he sometimes bribes the maiden's companion to declare him the winner in the singing competition.

Another means of wife-winning is by courting her in the house of her parents, to which free access is readily gained by presenting the girl's nearest relative living in the house with a pig's carcass, a present called in their language *phudang*. When the marriage ceremony takes place, the bridegroom, if rich enough, kills a buffalo or a pig, which is presented to the bride's parents, a native coin fixed on its forehead. Among the lower people, the parents of the bride seldom know anything about the marriage till the return of the girl from her captor's house. Then the marriage ceremony takes place. The

* *Tsos* (pron. *tso*) means "dye" in Tibetan. The dye here referred to is probably the yellow one prepared from the *symplocos*. See Hooker, *op. cit.*, ii. 41, and *J.R.A.S.*, 1891, 218.—(W. R.)

friends and relatives assemble in some spacious courtyard, each bringing a present of a basket of rice, a bottle of murwa or arrack. The bridegroom then beats a drum, to the music of which the bride dances, outsiders also taking part in the dance. This over, a Phedangba priest conducts certain religious ceremonies beginning with the following *mantra:* "According to the commands handed down to us from ancient times and the doings of the patriarchs, we bind our son and daughter to-day in marriage."

As the priest repeats the formula, the bridegroom places his palm on that of the bride, holding at the same time a cock, and she a hen, which they afterwards hand over to the Phedangba. When the above formula has been recited, the fowls' throats are cut, and they are thrown away for any one to pick up and keep, and the blood is collected on a plantain leaf, and from it omens are drawn. In another leaf is some vermilion paint, in which the bridegroom dips his middle finger, which he passes across the forehead of the priest to the tip of the bride's nose. The bridegroom then says, "Henceforth, maiden, thou art my wife;" and shouting repeatedly, "Maiden, thou art my wife," he puts a vermilion mark on her brow.

The following morning the priest invokes some friendly spirit, and says to the newly married couple, "You two should henceforth live as husband and wife as long as you remain on this earth;" to which the parties suitably reply, "We will do as you command." Unless this period of a lifetime is mentioned, the marriage is held to be unlucky; and to make it fortunate further ceremonies, which open new sources of profit for the priest, are considered necessary.

At the marriage feast, where first murwa is served to each guest, the meat is generally pork, and finally a dish of rice is presented to every one of the party.

When the marriage ceremony is over, the bride, released from her captor's hands for the first time, returns to her parents, who are supposed to have been in ignorance of the previous proceedings. Two or three days after her return comes a go-between, or *parmi,** to settle differences with the bride's parents. He brings, as a rule, three things—a bottle of arrack, the carcass of a pig, and a silver coin, as presents to the bride's parents. Just as he is about to make them the presents, they are bound to fly into a passion and threaten

* *Parmi* seems to be Tibetan *bar*, "middle;" *mi*, "man."—(W. R.)

to beat him, whereupon he entreats them not to do so, and tries to pacify them with the present of another rupee. Then they ask him in an angry tone, "Why did you steal away our daughter?" and suchlike questions. When their anger has subsided, he pays the price of the bride, which, according to the wealth of the groom, varies from Rs. 10 to Rs. 120, or the equivalent; but in all cases a pig is an indispensable part of the price. Then a further present of usually Rs. 12, or its equivalent, is made to the *soffas* (subahs) and village headmen.

This present is known in Limbu as *turayimbag*, meaning satisfaction to the parents for stealing their daughter; and though it is really due to the bride's parents, it is nowadays appropriated by the village officials.

Like the Tibetans, the Limbus present white cotton *khatag* to all who are interested in the marriage. When the time comes for delivering up the bride to the *parmi*, the parents must say, "Oh, our daughter is lost! She is not to be found! Some one must go and find her!" Then a couple more silver coins are paid, and one of the relatives discovers the lost bride, who has usually hidden herself in the storeroom, and she is handed over to the *parmi*. Nowadays, however, it is more common for the bride to come forth of herself as soon as the money has been paid, but not before.*

November 15.—The villagers tried to dissuade us from attempting to cross the passes where the paths were hidden by the snow, saying that it would be more convenient to stay at Ringbi, where provisions were easily procurable. If I remained here, however, various reports would be spread to prejudice the frontier guards of Tibet against us, and we would, moreover, be unable to ascertain when the snow should have hardened sufficiently to admit of our setting out on our journey, as the passes were three or four days' march from the village. We determined to try the Yampung la, which still remained free from snow. Our coolies gave the villagers to understand that we shikaris (for Phurchung, with his fowling-piece and load of cartridges, was enabled to pass us off as such) had very little to do with the passes, except for going to Kangpa-chan, where game

* Cf. Hooker, *op. cit.*, i. 137, 138. Speaking of their burial ceremonies, he says, "They mourn, burn, and bury their dead, raising a mound over the corpse, erecting a headstone, and surrounding the grave with a little paling of sticks; they then scatter eggs and pebbles over the ground."—(W. R.)

was more abundant: if we failed entering Namga-tsal, we should most probably return by Jongri to Darjiling.

We passed behind the village, where there are some tall cypresses and a solitary juniper tree, which the people erroneously call *chandan*, or sandal wood.* A short distance from the village we passed the road leading to Dechan phug, "the cavern of bliss," a huge rock, the hollow in which is haunted by numerous demons and evil spirits. Now and then we saw Limbus making bamboo mats or collecting osiers to thatch their houses. The road along the river was easy, the rills falling into it bridged, and the steep banks carefully crossed by stone dykes, while steps were cut in the rocks where necessary.

By one o'clock we reached Paongtang, where, in a wretched shed for travellers (*dong-khang*), we made our camp. A light rain was falling, so we had to cook our food in the miserable shed, where we could not stand erect, where ants and centipedes were creeping over everything, and the smoke and dust raised by the bellows nearly suffocated us. Though we had a tent, the obstinacy of my servants compelled me to forego the comfort it afforded, for to them the *dong-khang* was a comfortable dwelling, and they insisted that I should enjoy it too.

Phurchung bought some milk, cheese, murwa, and excellent fish from one of the neighbouring herdsmen, a cousin of his; and when we had refreshed ourselves with the beer, we sat listening to two of our companions, Jordan and Tonzang, as they sang and declaimed over their drink. Though these men carried our loads, they were men of much respectability in their own country, and had been induced to do menial work only to oblige me, as I did not care to trust outsiders with the secret of my movements. I amused myself listening to Jordan, and really wondered that even among the uncivilized dwellers of the hills wine could inspire such eloquence. Among the volleys of his eloquence were quotations from a book called '*Rinchen Tenwa*,' or 'The Precious Rosary.'

"All here assembled, pray attend.

"The eagle is the king of birds; when he rises, all rise.

"The lion is the king of beasts; when he leaps, all leap.

* Trees or shrubs, with aromatic wood or having sweet-smelling flowers, are frequently called *chandan* in Tibet. At Kumbum, for example, the famous tree, which is said to have sprung from the hair cut from the head of Tsongkhapa, and which is in all probability a *Syringa*, is called *Tsandan* (or *Chandan*) *karpo*.—(W. R.)

"He who drinks is the prince of speech; when he speaks, all hear."

Here Jordan's analogy broke down, for he should have said, "When he speaks, all speak;" but as his were quotations, he could take no liberties with the text.*

November 16.—After having started Jordan and Tonzang to Darjiling with letters and my Indian clothing, we resumed our journey, and after a mile along the course of the Ringbi we climbed the Lungmo la, which is thickly covered with dwarf bamboos and mossy oaks of immense size.

At 2 p.m. we came to Chonjom, the junction of the two head-streams of the Ringbi, where there is a well-made bridge across the river with strong boulder-made buttresses; its bed is here covered with thick green moss. A little later on we halted at a place called Keta, in the midst of dark woods, the abode of bears, pigs, and Sikkim leopards. As I had sent my tent back, we had to make a shelter against the inclemency of the weather by a contrivance made with our bed-clothes, and on the branches of a neighbouring tree we hung our meat and fish, which attracted owls and mice during the night.

November 17.—Our hearts quaked as we continued our way through the dense wood and thick undergrowth, for a man-eater was reported to have killed two Nepalese wood-cutters in the Singli la. The year before last a tiger came up to Jongri, where it killed a dozen yaks, and we feared lest now it might have come back to make havoc on the Yampung yaks. While crossing one of the numerous fences dividing different pieces of property, we found a pheasant caught by the neck in a hair-trap. The way was steep and stony, and the cold piercing.

At noon we reached the zone of rhododendrons, and, passing through the pines, where we startled pheasants and some other birds of beautiful plumage, we came to a snow-covered ridge. Then we began the ascent of a steep spur, where we were told the Lepcha

* This work of Sakya Pandita, the Sanskrit title of which is '*Subhashita ratna nidhi*,' is well known to Oriental scholars by the translation, accompanied by the Tibetan text, published by Csoma de Koros in vols. xxiv. and xxv. of the *Journ. Bengal Asiat. Soc.*, and by the French translation of a selection from it made by Ph. E. Foucaux, Paris, 1858, 8vo., under the title of 'Le trésor des belles paroles.' The original work is in 454 stanzas. Csoma only translated the 234 first. Sakya Pandita's Indian name was Ananda Dhwadja; he lived in the thirteenth century. His Tibetan name is derived from that of the lamasery of Sakya, near Tashilhunpo, where he resided.—(W. R.)

troops of Sikkim had repelled the Gurkha invaders, shooting their arrows at them, and then rolling rocks down on the enemy. After this difficult piece of road, the ascent became more gradual and easier. On the way we saw some beehives, which differ in shape from those of the plains, being like great white fungi projecting from the rock.

At 2 p.m. we reached the Dok of Yampung, situated on the lee side of the range. Long *mendong* mark the approach to the village, and flying flags show the whereabouts of the yak-sheds and houses; patches of snow and ice glistening in the sun gave, from a distance, a fine appearance to the village, but, on approaching, the beauty vanished, as we perceived the forlorn and deserted condition of the place. Not a living being, not a yak, nor a dog, only some hungry crows perched on the flag-poles and the roofs. The village is composed of a dozen houses built very rudely of loose stone slabs, the roofs made of long pine planks kept in their places by stones. The larger houses were locked up, and the doors of those without locks were sealed by strings. Heaps of red dye-creepers were in every house, which the people exchange for salt brought here from Eastern Nepal in the summer months and in November after the first snows. The Limbus and Lepchas of Western Sikkim come here annually to buy salt, wool, tea, and Tibetan earthenware, in exchange for murwa, maize, dye-creepers, and other little commodities of the Darjiling bazar.

November 18.—The Yampung la, though not lofty, presented much difficulty in the ascent, the vegetation on its sides not so luxuriant as that on the Jongri la, which is nearly of equal height. To the north the range skirts the snows of the famous Kangchan, the dreaded Khumba Karna of the hillmen. The eye, on all sides but the east, met only snow, and as I descended to the south-western flank of the Du la, "Demon Mount," I looked down towards the deep gorge through which the Ringbi leaps with ceaseless roar. The snow-streams from the Yampung la flow into a lake some half-mile in circumference, called Tama chu, on account of its crescent shape; the Nepalese call it Lampokri.

With the Du la the difficulties of the ascent began. Ugyen complained of headache and shortness of breath, and said he was sick with *la dug* (mountain-sickness); and to add to our troubles, such a gale was blowing that I was thrown to the ground several times. One of the coolies fell helpless to the ground, his feet frost-bitten. I gave him my shoes and Kabul socks, putting on myself a new pair of

Tibetan boots. The direct way to Gumo tang was blocked with snow, so we had to make a detour by the northern and western flanks of the pass. The snow was frozen, and walking became very dangerous. I made my way as best I could, using both hands and feet. The gorge along which we advanced was so deep that the eye tired of following its windings. The snows from the pass supply the headwater of the Yong-dso chu, which runs past the Jongri (la). The descent was even more dangerous than the ascent; my coolies, used to such work, had soon left me far behind.

Leaving the snows of the Du la, we again came in sight of deep gorges filled with pines, with here and there bits of pasture-land overhung by rugged cliffs.

Again we had to cross a spur, beyond which lay Gumo tang, our next halting-place, in a deep gorge, some 2000 feet below us. We followed a glacier, and by six in the evening I reached the beautifully wooded Gumo tang gorge, and found it flooded by a torrent coming from the melting snows to the north-east. On the other side of the precipice which overhangs Gumo tang is Lachmi pokri, "The Lake of Fortune," said to contain gold and precious stones. It is a mile in circumference, deep black in colour, and in its depths are water-elephants, the people say.

November 19.—Crossing a stream, with water knee-deep, flowing eastward to feed the Ratong, we began the ascent of the Bogto la. Firs and junipers of various species overhung our way, which lay along the sides of a dry, glacial channel, with a stream flowing down it, and *débris* on either side. There are two tracks from here leading to the only shed on the slope of the Bogto; one follows the course of the stream which comes down from the Tso-nag lake, and is usually taken by the Yampung herdmen and the salt traders from Yangma; but the one we followed is not liked by them, as there grows along it a plant called *Dug shing*,* a deadly poison if eaten by yaks or sheep. Pheasants were feeding on the rhododendron berries, and we also saw herds of wild sheep; but before we reached the summit the rhododendrons and junipers disappeared, and we only saw now and then some lichens or moss-like vegetation in the clefts of the rocks.†

Reduced for the last few days to a miserable diet of rice and tea,

* *Dug*, "poison;" *shing*, "tree or wood."—(W. R.)

† Cf. Hooker, *op. cit.*, i. 254.

we were but ill prepared to go through the exertion of climbing up to such high altitudes. I pushed on for half a mile, my head aching violently and with continual retching; I finally fell to the ground, and lay there breathless and utterly exhausted. The coolies suffered even more than I, for while I had only my heavy clothing to carry, they had their loads besides. The wind was piercingly cold, and clouds scudded across the sky. One of the men prepared some tea; I drank a little, but I had no desire for food, though Phurchung insisted on my eating a frozen egg and a little dried fruit. Wrapped in all my blankets, I lay prostrate, my feet resting against one of the loads to prevent me rolling into the abyss. I passed the night in a troubled sleep, while close by me my companions were snoring in deep slumber.

November 20.—The sky was overcast and a gentle breeze was blowing, and the guide, who saw signs of a snowstorm, took up his load reluctantly, after chanting some *mantras*, and, leaving this dreadful place, called the Noga slope, we began the ascent of the pass.

A few hundred yards of ascent brought us to the Tso-nag tso, a lakelet now frozen to the bottom, of oval shape, and about 400 yards long and 200 broad; passing this we crossed from ridge to ridge, each covered with sheets of ice, the scenery of the wildest grandeur, the solitude appalling, no sound of water, not even the fall of an occasional avalanche was heard, no one spoke, all were intent on making their way over the slippery surface.

After a mile ascent we reached another frozen lake. The guide ran forward, and, collecting some snow and pieces of ice, he sprinkled them across the lake to show us the path and prevent us from slipping. This lakelet, of about the same size as the one just referred to, is held in the sacred books of the Sikkimese to be an object of special sanctity. It is called Tso dom-dongma, "The Lake of Peacock's Spots," and the eye of the enchanted devotee can see something like spots in the bubbles in the icy sheets of the lake. The glorious peak of Chum-bok la rose right before us. Clouds now swept swiftly across the sun, and within half an hour the whole vault of heaven was hidden from our view. Courage then failed our hitherto intrepid guide. "Why proceed further up, sir?" said he. "Death awaits us in this desolate place. One hour more and we shall be gone." "What do you mean by this, Phurchung?" said I. "Where see you death?" "Sir, look at the sky; those clouds will shortly fall in heavy snow on us, from which no human means can enable us to escape. If you

escape the snows on this side of the path, you cannot do so on the other." He trembled and looked pale and depressed. He cried, and said, "Oh, sir, we *pon-yog* [master and servant] will perish if we go not back to Bogto. The skies are ominous, and tell you to return towards the Bogto la." He repeated his entreaties with childish tears, but in vain. I told him and the coolies that I was determined not to retrace a single step, and that all his entreaties were to no purpose. In an hour's time we could scarcely reach Bogto, and if the snow began falling in the mean time, we could hardly escape; besides, such a course would not lessen our troubles, as we should have the risk of recrossing the distance we had now travelled over. There might be a second snowfall, when we should again have to turn back.

Ceding finally to my arguments, Phurchung pushed forward. I took the lead, and with fresh energy clambered on, till after an hour we stood on the pass. The skies had cleared up, the azure heavens again smiled on us, and the welcome reappearance of the brilliant sun dispelled all our fears. To our left was Sundub phug, to the right the towering pinnacles of Kangla jang-ma, while the rounded form of the lofty Lap-chyi in the Shar-Khambu district of Nepal rose above the haze. The valley of the Chum-bok la is called Chu lonkyok, "The Water-spoon," because it receives the waters of the surrounding mountains in a spoon-like basin.

I had hardly time to congratulate myself on having reached the summit, when our guide, now smiling, put his arms in the straps (*nambo*) of his load, and uttering the usual prayer (*lha sol*), resumed his journey. The descent was fraught with immense dangers, for it lay through trackless snows. The guide sounded the snow everywhere for a path, and not finding one, he took a circuitous direction which seemed practicable to his experienced eye.

After walking about an hour we found we had made but little progress, when we came on the tracks of a Tibetan long-tailed leopard (*sah*).* I wondered how the animal had been able to walk along over the soft snow without ever sinking in it, but my men explained this by attributing supernatural powers to this beast, which they said was indeed the goblin of leopards. An hour's struggle in the snow exhausted my strength, and I could proceed no further. The guide opened the loads and repacked them, putting all the breakable

* Written, I believe, *gsha*. —(W. R.)

objects in one, all the clothing and provisions in the other. The latter he threw down the slope, and it ploughed a path, down which I followed till the load brought up against a rock. Then I let myself slide down the half-hardened snow, guiding myself with my elbows so as to escape any crevasse across my path.

By 3.30 p.m. we had descended so far in the gorge of Chu lonkyok that patches of grass showed here and there amidst the snow, and I saw an alpine shrub called *upala*,* with large pink leaves at the top like those of the water-lily, waved in the wind, which had again begun to blow. The coolies now pushed rapidly ahead, leaving me far behind, but the gradual reappearance of grass, rhododendrons, and juniper bushes revived my spirits as I walked on, frequently halting to catch my breath. Continuing down the gorge through rhododendrons, junipers, and several species of prickly, sweet-scented shrubs, we finally reached, about dark, a great boulder, underneath which we camped. In front of it ran a brook about four feet wide, said to be the head-stream of the famous Kabili of Nepal, which receives the waters from the Chum-bok and the Semarum mountains.

November 21.—Though I still felt, when I awakened, greatly exhausted, I had to start without breakfast, as the coolies had left early, fearing lest the fine morning might be followed by a bad afternoon. Dressed very lightly in order to be able to climb more easily, I set out, following in Phurchung's footsteps. The trail at first presented no great difficulty, though it was continually up and down over mountain ridges five or six hundred feet high; but our previous day's experience made us think little of such a road. After a few miles we reached a kind of gateway lying between two rocky cliffs, where began the region of scanty vegetation that invariably is found just below the snow-line. Here we halted for a while and drank some tea; then, resuming our journey, we reached the summit of Semarum after a couple of hours of most trying climbing over ice and melting snow. The pass is protected to the south and west by a very rugged cliff resembling the outspread wings of an eagle both in colour and shape, and inspired me with a strange feeling of dread. Sitting on the summit of the pass, I enjoyed, though tired and unwell, the

* *Utpala*, or *Udpala*, is the blue lotus of India, also used medicinally. Mr. Jaeschke, 'Tib.-Engl. Dict.,' *s.v.*, says, "In Lhadak this name seems to be transferred to *Polemonium caeruleum*."—(W. R.)

grandeur and sublimity of the scene. No poet could adequately describe Nature's exploits in this part of the world, no pencil could delineate these romantic scenes.

Legend has it that many years ago, on this very pass, a certain cunning and designing Limbu of Tambur Khola concealed under the rocks a red earthen jar filled with charcoal, with the object of establishing his heirs' right over the whole easternmost part of Nepal, called Yangoro, which includes Singli la, and in his will he made mention of this bequest. A few years later hostilities broke out between the Limbus of Tambur Khola and Yangoro, which lasted for nearly twelve years, during which time the Gurung were the chief sufferers. Pasturing their cattle on the disputed land, both parties stole them as a rent for the right of pasture. Finally the Chambisi Rajah, who ruled at Bhatgaong, settled the dispute in favour of the Yangoro Limbus, the trick of the Tambur Khola Limbus having been found out.

From the Semarum pass I saw the Choma Kankar, or "Lord of Snows," the famous sacred mountain of the Buddhists which overhangs Lap-chyi, the highest of its three peaks, dome-shaped, the two others standing side by side, of truncated cone shape; then to the north-west of these appeared the Shar Khambu Mountains, half lost in the rising mist; to the west, beyond the great chasm formed by the Tambur valley, were the valleys of Feylep, Yalung, Dhunkota, all indistinct in the general haze.

Phurchung endeavoured in vain to find a way down through the deep snow which everywhere covered the ground, and finally we had to slide down through the snow for several hundred feet; and then, finding a foothold, we waded on, dragging the loads behind us. I saw tracks of rabbits,* snow-leopards, and a species of bird called *chamdung*, probably the snow-pheasant. After a little while we could advance no further down the slope, so Phurchung made a detour over a ridge to our right, its summit a huge bare rock some forty to fifty feet high. From this we descended with great difficulty, throwing the loads down ahead of us and sliding down ourselves in the deep, soft snow.

By 4 p.m. we were clear of the snow, and once more found vegetation. After a short rest we resumed our journey along the gentle rill which leaps down from here with a pleasant murmur, and

* Hares, I take it, are meant.—(W. R.)

is known as the second headwater of the Kabili, although the brook which we followed empties into the Namga stream which rises in the Kangla Nangmo pass near Jongri. The snow, reaching several miles below the Kangla pass on either side of the Namga, showed us that this pass was inaccessible. These early snows are called *shingsa pahmo.* The road led through dwarf rhododendrons, bushy junipers, and prickly shrubs bearing a red fruit. The river was frozen over, except in the narrow parts. In the distance the pine-clad flanks of Juonga, through which the Yalung dashes, were seen resplendent in the rays of the setting sun. We plodded on to 6 p.m., when we reached a broad flat called Namga tsal, "The Grove of Joy," and shortly after crossed the river by a wooden bridge of the East Nepalese type, and some forty feet long, and came to the halting-place under the widespread branches of a high *dung shing* or cedar. Namga tsal received its name, I was told, from Lha-tsun, the great Buddhist patriarch of Sikkim, having spent a few days here to rest from his fatigue when travelling for the first time from Tibet to convert the Lhopas (Southerners). He so enjoyed his rest here that he ordered his disciples to hold the place sacred, and to celebrate their annual inaugural religious ceremonies at the cavern in which he had spent a few days. We could see the cave from where we were camped, and were told that the Buddhists of Sikkim and Eastern Nepal still resort to this place on pilgrimage.

November 22.—Crossing two streams with swampy banks, the way led uphill for a while through thickets of rhododendrons, where we saw numerous green pheasants of the colour of a green parrot, with spurs on their legs and a deep, thick red line round their eye. In size they were larger than a domestic fowl.* Next we came to the Yalung river, which we crossed by a substantial bridge of cedar logs and silver-fir planks, and then we began the ascent of the steep and lofty Chunjorma, or "Collection of Cascades." In the wooded solitudes on the lower slopes of the great Kanchanjinga stood the little monastery of Dechan rolpa. The predecessor of the present abbot, it is said, was able to visit Na-Pematang, the Lepcha Paradise, which has only been entered by seven families, and which lies between the Cho-kanchan and Cho-kanchanjinga.

* Dr. Hooker, *op. cit.*, i. 255, states having found similar pheasants near the Nango la. The male bird had two to five spurs on each of its legs, according to its age.—(W. R.) *Ithagenes Cruentus.*

Some three miles to the west of the Dechan rolpa gomba is the village of Yalung, where twelve families live who spend their summer in tending yaks at Yalung, and their winter at Yanku tang, in the valley of the Kabili.*

Passing by the two lakelets of Tso chung donka, we ascended the mountains of the same name, and finally reached by the Nango la the summit of Chunjorma, which name applies to the portion of the pass between the Nango la and the Mirkan la, where the road from Nepal by Khan-do-phug joins it.

From Mirkan la we passed some lofty crags, called Ta-miran kukyab, the principal of which is said to be the image of the horrible deity Tamdrin, or Haryagriha. In shape it resembles a horse's head (Ta-mgrin) facing towards Kanchanjinga. Descending, we found grass growing on the Pangbo la, and on the Zinan la were junipers and rhododendrons. At about 7 p.m. we reached Mudang phug, Phurchung carrying me on his back for part of the way.

November 23.—Our way led along an extensive moraine, the huge reddish boulders of which were covered with creeping tamarisks and dwarf junipers. After about a mile we reached Manda phug, a hollow between two gigantic boulders, the one inclined towards the other; and here we took our breakfast of rice and buttered tea. The vegetation improved as we neared Manda la, and the sight of thick forest growth in the deep glens refreshed our eyes, so long tired with looking on barren rocks. From Tama la, where we saw some shepherds tending their flocks and some yaks, one descends the Yamatari valley, the top of the slope being held sacred to the dreaded Mamo goddesses; on the rhododendron bushes were white and red flags offered to them by wayfarers. From this point I obtained a good view of the Kangpa-chan valley.

Finding that I was greatly exhausted, Dao Namgyal, Phurchung's brother-in-law, took me on his back and carried me till we reached the north-west flank of the Tama la. Soon after this we came to a flat, grass-covered valley with tall rhododendrons and ferns growing about. Phurchung held this spot to have been a singularly lucky one for him, for it was here that his parents had met Hooker some thirty-five years ago, while the great botanist was exploring Nepal. Phurchung's father, suffering from snow-blindness, was led by his wife to the Doctor, who not only gave him excellent medicine, but presented her

* Cf. Hooker, *op. cit.*, i. 275.—(W. R.)

with a pretty coin to hang about the neck of her child, Phurchung, then a baby in the arms.*

At about 2 p.m. we reached the Yamata ri, formed by the streams which issue from Kanchanjinga. The gorge in which this river flows is singularly beautiful. Above the steep crags on either side were blue glaciers, and at their feet forests of native firs and larches, covered with pendant mosses waving like feathers in the breeze. Just before reaching Kangpa-chan (Gyunsar) village, the Yamata ri river is crossed by a little bridge, and then the village with its wooden huts comes in view. Some of the houses were empty; a few old hags with goitre sat on their thresholds basking in the sun and spinning.

Phurchung had reached this, his native village, ahead of us, and he now came, much the worse for drink, to greet us, and led us into his mother's house, where a fire of rhododendron boughs and aromatic firs blazed in the middle of the room. *Chang* † was ready in wooden bottles, and his mother poured some boiling water into them as soon as we were seated on the cushions placed for us. Some dry junipers and pines were burnt as incense, and two joss-sticks smoked before us. Then two brass plates full of boiled, red-skinned potatoes were offered us, followed by rice and boiled mutton, the rice being served wrapped up in the broad leaves of some kind of hill plant. When night came on we sat around the fire, each with a bottle of murwa before him; but drowsiness soon overtook me, and I fell asleep.

November 24.—The village of Kangpa-chan ‡ is built on several terraces facing the south-west, the houses enclosed in low stone walls. Several small streams empty into the Kangchan below the village, and mountains covered with snow and ice rise precipitously on either side of it, their lower slopes clad with thick forest growth of moss-covered silver firs, deodars, and larches. Juniper and

* See Hooker, *op. cit.*, i. 263.—(W. R.)

† Tibetan beer. Its preparation is thus described by Jaeschke, *op. cit.*, *s.v.*, *Chang*: "When the boiled barley has grown cold, some *phabs* (yeast or dry barm prepared in Balti of flour, mixed with some ginger and aconite) is added, after which it is left standing for two or three days, until fermentation commences, when it is called *glum*. Having sufficiently fermented, some water is poured to it, and the beer is considered to be ready for use."—(W. R.)

‡ Hooker's Kambachen (*op. cit.*, i. 257). He gives its altitude at 11,380 feet above sea-level.—(W. R.)

rhododendron bushes surround the village. Round about it are patches of barley,* from one to the other of which flew flocks of wild pigeons.

Coming back from a stroll, I found two men waiting to invite me to drink *chang* at their houses; and having accepted their invitation, I went first to that of a man called Jorgya. Taking my seat on a thick mattress-like seat covered with a piece of Khamba carpet, a bamboo bottle filled with murwa, with a little piece of butter placed on top of it, was set before us.† Tea was first drunk, the housewife serving mine in a china cup, a form of Tibetan politeness only shown to persons of superior social standing, those of equal or inferior rank to the host using the wooden bowls each one carries about in the breast of his gown. After this, a brass plate filled with potatoes was placed before us on a little table, together with parched Indian corn, milk, and butter, of all of which we ate heartily.

Our host advised me not to attempt to go by Wallung, as I would be sure to meet with much difficulty, but rather to enter Tibet by Yangma and the Kangla chen pass, which was still possible, he said, even at this advanced season of the year.

I next went to the house of Pemazang, Phurchung's uncle, which I found well plastered and with a tastefully painted chapel. His son and wife received me at the head of the ladder, and led me into the house. Pemazang had long, thick, and tangled hair. He wore gold earrings in the shape of magnolia flowers, and his looks and talk were grave and serious. He often sits in deep meditation for the purpose of arresting hail or other storms by the potency of the charms he is able to pronounce.‡

Leaving Pemazang, we crossed the river and paid a visit to the Tashi-chos ding monastery, which we found nearly deserted, one or

* Hooker (*loc. cit.*) says that the only cultivation here consists of radishes, potatoes, and barley: no wheat is grown.—(W. R.)

† This custom of putting a little piece of butter on the mouth of a bottle or neck of a jug of wine when offered to any one is observed by all Tibetans, and by most of the Mongol tribes with which I am acquainted.—(W. R.)

‡ From this description of Pemazang, it may be inferred that he was a Khamba, a Tibetan from the north-east. We know by Hooker, *op. cit.*, i. 137, that many Khamba came to Sikkim with the first Sikkim rajah. They are, as a people, famous "rain-makers;" while the people from other parts of Tibet are not much given to performing rain-making or rain-dispelling ceremonies. Cf. 'The Land of the Lamas,' p. 188.—(W. R.)

two old women here and there turning the prayer-wheels outside the temple. Ascending two flights of ladder-stairs, we entered the lama's house. He and his *ani* * received us most kindly, and the latter asked me for some medicines for the old gentleman, who was suffering with dyspepsia (*pakan*).

SIKKIM SOLDIER.

Returning to our lodgings, we found that the lock of the bag in which I kept my money had been tampered with, but I did not

* The term *ani* (also pronounced *aneh*) is used to designate a wife, concubine, or nun. In the present case it certainly means a nun living in a state of concubinage with a lama. It is a common practice in Tibet, and in many places lamas (*graba*) and *ani* live in the same convent. See 'Report on Explorations in Sikkim, Bhutan, etc., from 1856 to 1886,' pp. 9 and 12, and *infra*, p. 42.—(W. R.)

open it, as six other persons were living in the room we occupied, and I feared lest they might see the contents. Whatever the loss might be, I made up my mind to bear it silently, and keep my suspicions to myself.

November 25.—Phurchung's brother, Dao Namgyal, brought me a quantity of presents—potatoes, murwa, millet, butter, and last, but not least, a kid, for which I gave him a return present of five rupees. The poor people of the village all followed with various presents, not that they had any great respect for me, but solely with an eye to return presents, which they hoped would be greater than the value of theirs. Fortunately there were but few people in the village, otherwise they would have drained me of all my cash.

By noon Phurchung had sufficiently slept off his drunkenness to procure for me several pair of *kyar*,* or snowshoes, from the people of the village. I had learnt from a newly engaged coolie that he had lately crossed the Kangla pass on *kyar*, and had reached Jongri, where he had met Captain Harman, who had been much struck by the great usefulness of this rude contrivance.

In the evening the men killed two kids; the blood was poured into the intestines, which had been washed and cleaned, barley-flour (*tsamba*) being mixed with it.† These blood puddings were boiled and packed away with the tripe in a small wicker basket for my use on the journey.

It is told of the upper Kangpa-chan valley that it was first peopled by Tibetans, called Sharpa (Easterners), whose original home was in the mountains of Shar Khambu, or Eastern Kirata.‡ Lower down the valley lived the Magar tribe from Nepal, whose chief extended his sway over the Sharpa, and exacted such oppressive taxes from them that they decided to avenge themselves. The Magar chief, going to the village of Kangpa-chan, he and his followers were

* Written, according to Jaeschke, *op. cit.*, *dykar*. The word and the thing are unknown, I believe, in other parts of Tibet.—(W. R.)

† Throughout Tibet and the greater part of Mongolia, the intestines, stuffed with the hashed heart, liver, and lights, compose the first meal made from a freshly killed sheep or kid. The head and pelt are usually given to the person who has sold the sheep, this not being included in the price paid. Cf. *infra*, p. 41.—(W. R.)

‡ The Kirata are well known as a tribe of non-Brahmanical people (*Mlecha*) in the Veda. See Chr. Lassen, 'Indis. Alterthumskunde,' vol. i. p. 78: "The land between the San Roci and Kankaji is approximately the same as that of the Kiratas." A complete discussion on the Kiratas is to be found in 'Zeitschrift für Kunde des Morgenlander,' vol. i. p. 35 ff. See *supra*, p. 3.—(W. R.)

murdered, and their bodies buried. No clue could be had of the missing men, so the chief's wife went herself to Kangpa-chan, but she also failed to discover what had become of them. While going along the river bank, a boulder, undermined by the current, tumbled down, when a swarm of flies flew buzzing out. Attracted by this, the queen had the earth removed, and discovered the bodies of her husband and his followers. Returning home with the chief's body, she ordered great funeral ceremonies to be held at a place some six miles up the river, near the Rapa-chan torrent, midway between the two great villages of the Kangpa-chan valley—Gyunsar and Yarsa,* as being more accessible for the people, for whose entertainment great bowls of wine were to be provided. In the wine poison was mixed; and as soon as the Magars had finished drinking, they passed it to the Kangpa-chan people, who drank deeply, and fell asleep to awake no more. Nearly a thousand people were in this way done to death, and the babies were carried away by the queen's followers. The place where this foul deed was done became known as Tong-shong phug, "the place which witnessed a thousand murders."

The few who escaped carried the news to Tibet, and soon returned with a large army to wage war against the Magars. The queen shut herself up in one of her castles, and, though ill-prepared to stand a siege, she and her people defended it for three months. The Tibetans decided to reduce the place by famine and by cutting off the water-supply. Then the queen, to deceive them, opened the reservoir in the castle and let the water flow towards the Tibetan camp; and the enemy, thinking that she must have a great store of it and that their attempt was vain, raised the siege, and withdrew to a distance. The queen now attacked them in turn, but fell in the first skirmish, fighting valiantly. The Tibetans finally expelled the Magars from the Kangpa-chan and Tambur valleys, and restored them to their former possessors.

It was among the Kangpa-chan tribe that I had found Phurchung, the most devoted and faithful of all the men I ever came across in the Himalayas. Although Ugyen distrusted him, and he abhorred Ugyen, yet I placed implicit confidence in his loyalty and ability, and his devotion and fidelity to me were boundless.

November 26.—We left Kangpa-chan, our party now comprising

* *Yarsa* probably means "upper (*yar*) land (*sa*)." *Yara mara*, or *yarka marka*, meaning "upper and lower," are terms used throughout Tibet.—(W. R.)

four coolies. Phurchung marched along with my gun as a sign of his importance, but its red cloth cover, its principal beauty, had been stolen the night before; his younger brother, Sonam-dorj, carried his pack. Ugyen-gyatso and I rode ponies, hired for eight annas each, to take us halfway up the Nango la. The old women (*ama*) of the village waited our approach at the east end of the bridge to give us the stirrup cup (*chang kyel*) (a custom invariably observed in Tibet at the parting of friends setting out on a long journey), with bowls of wine in their right hand, and plates full of parched barley flour (*tsamba*) in their left. Each of the old women poured a little wine into a china cup, to which a pinch of flour was added, and we were asked to take a sip, with the wish of "May we offer you the like on your return." We thanked them for their kindness, and put a couple of rupees in one of their plates, to be divided amongst them.

We rode slowly on by the bounding river, into which a number of little rills empty, flowing down from behind the monastery, and over which were several prayer-wheels turned by the water. Our way lay amidst thick woods up to Daba ngonpo, where the natives used to get blue clay to make images. This clay they held to be exceptionally good, as it came from the summit of a holy mountain. From this point we followed up the bed of a former glacier, passing Kamai phugpa, and reaching at Khama kang tung, the timber line. A mile beyond the latter place we came to the end of the pasture-lands on this side the Nango la, not far from which we saw a flock of spotted birds, called *sregpa*,* which Ugyen tried, without success, to shoot.

The ascent of the Nango la now began over deep snow, in some places its surface frozen, in others so soft that we sunk knee-deep in it. I soon became so exhausted that I had to get one of the coolies to carry me on his back, and so we reached the summit of the pass.†

Two miles to the west of the pass is Sayong kong, a plateau whence there is a direct road leading to Yangma. A mile below this place is Sayong-hok,‡ where vegetation begins again, and

* *Tetraogallus Tibetanus.*

† Cf. Hooker, *op. cit.*, i. 250–254. He made the altitude of this pass to be 15,770 feet above sea-level.—(W. R.)

‡ *Hok* (or *og*) means "lower," *kong* or *gong* means "upper."—(W. R.)

gradually increases as one advances along the Lungkyong chu. We camped on the river bank under a great boulder, spreading our rugs on beds of long dry grass, which covered, but very imperfectly, the rough, stony soil.

November 27.—We followed down the Lungkyong chu (the only way of communication between Kangpa-chan, Yangma, and Wallung), the mountains on our left nearly hidden in the morning mists. For part of the way our road led along a steep path through thick woods of firs, feathery larches, and deodars, amidst which I saw many pheasants and other kinds of birds, and the coolies told me that musk deer and wild sheep were also found there.

About two miles above the junction of the Yangma with the Lungkyong, we crossed the former stream by a wooden bridge, and finally arrived at the village of Tingugma, where we rested a while and ate a light meal.

Shortly after starting again we met a party of Yangma natives driving before them a few sheep and a dozen yaks laden with blankets, yak hides, barley, and salt. They were going to a village called Chaini, in the Tambur valley, to exchange their goods for rice and Indian corn. Phurchung asked them if the Kangla chen pass was still open. Some said we could easily cross it; others expressed doubts about it, for they said three feet of snow had fallen on it a few days previously.

Passing by Maya phug (a cavern sacred to the goddess Mamo), we crossed a little juniper-covered plateau called Shugpa thang ("Juniper plain"), and after a short but steep climb reached the summit of the pass, from whence I had a most extended and beautiful view of the surrounding country—behind me great reddish granite rocks, looking like the ruins of gigantic ramparts; before me a plain some two miles long, the bed of a former glacier, encircled by snowy mountains rising the one above the other; while to the south-east was the Nango la, and behind it the plain of Sumdongma. Crossing the Djari thang, or "Plain of Gravel," and the Do la, or "Rocky pass" (round the base of which the Yangma flows), I reached by dusk the monastery of Yangma, or Manding gomba, situated on a broad, shrub-covered terrace some 40 to 50 feet above the stream; where Phurchung found me lodgings in a wretched cell, where I settled myself as best I could for the night. He obtained a few eggs and some milk from the lamas; and while one of the nuns (*ani*)

helped Dao Namgyal to cook the food, another blew the bellows. The lamas were engaged in their annual reading of the Kahgyur, which occupied them daily from 5 in the morning to 7.30 p.m., when they retired to their respective cells. There were fifteen monks and seven ani in the lamasery.*

Ugyen had been suffering most of the day with violent pains in the bowels; he now wrapped himself in all the blankets I could spare, and lay groaning and crying, "*Achi-che apa-ouh!*" so that I felt grave apprehensions for him, and feared that his illness might oblige us to stop over in this wretched place.

November 28.—Phurchung had been away on a drunken bout all night, and I arose full of fear lest he might have disclosed our plans to his companions, and Ugyen shared my alarm. After a while Phurchung and Phuntso appeared, and with much salaaming and lolling of the tongue asked me to wait here a day, the latter assuring me that he hoped to obtain, without much difficulty or the payment of custom duty (called *chua* in this part of Nepal), permission for us to proceed on our journey. Shortly after the elders arrived, the richest man among them recognizable by his *tamuski* hat, a long earring, and a deep red serge robe of *purug*.† He had come from the village of Yangma riding a half-breed yak (*jo*), which, with the saddle still on its back, stood tied at the gate of the monastery. I anxiously awaited the result of their conference with my men, and in great anxiety prayed to the Supreme Dispenser of our destinies that nothing might happen unfavourable to ourselves and our enterprise.

The Manding gomba, or Nub Man-ding gomba, "The Western Flying-Medicine Monastery," owes its name to the fact that lama Lha-tsun once lived for three years in a cave close by called the Zimphug, to discover medicines of wonderful potency, and that he there obtained three wonderful pills. One came to him through the air, falling on the spot where the lamasery now stands. The second pill fell a little above the monastery, where the people of the village now burn their dead; and the third alighted on the spot where the great *chorten* now stands.

* See *infra*, p. 37, note 2.

† *Purug* is rather a poor transcription of the word *phrug* (pronounced *truk*), but better known by the Chinese name of *pulo*. *Pulo*, though now a Chinese word, is a borrowed term, probably the Tibetan name. Phrug is native Tibetan cloth made in pieces usually nine or ten fathoms (*damba* in Tibetan) long and about fourteen inches broad.—(W. R.)

Manding gomba is held in great sanctity, for it is one of the first cis-Himalayan lamaseries founded by the great red-hat Lama Lha-tsun; but Wallung ranks first, and Kangpa-chan second, in point of wealth and power. Manding possesses a fine copy of the Kahgyur in 125 volumes.

The *Lha-khang*, or temple, has massive and neatly painted walls and doors, after the manner of the Sikkim *donpa*. The huts or cells of the monks in its immediate vicinity, all painted red with clay obtained from the adjacent mountains, are of irregular and ugly style, the doors, windows, and cornices being roughly made; each house has around it a low stone wall, inside of which the sheep and yak find shelter.

After a little while Phurchung and Puntso came back to me in high spirits over the result of their conference with the village elders. They had told them that I was only a pilgrim (*nakorpa*) who spoke Tibetan and dressed in Tibetan fashion. The head lama said that he knew of no order from the Nepalese Government for stopping pilgrims on their way to Tibet, and that he would certainly not prevent me doing so, as I spoke Tibetan with greater fluency and accuracy than many Nepalese. The headman (*gopa*) asked that Phurchung should give bond, holding himself personally responsible for my character as a traveller, and a custom duty of eight annas a head was levied on our party. Phurchung also told me that the headman and head lama were coming to bid me farewell, and that I must not forget, after exchanging compliments with them, to say *sangpoi ja chog*, "May we meet again next year."

In a little while the big men arrived. The headman, conspicuous by his earring, boots, and red serge robe, nodded to me slightly, and took off his hat. He asked me why I had chosen such a bad season for going to Tibet. I told him that I did so in obedience to the command of our holy and learned chief lama (*Tsawai*), and not by my own wish. His object in coming to see me was to find out if I spoke Tibetan and understood the Buddhist religion. My fluency in Tibetan, and the citing of one or two proverbial sayings in course of conversation, made him form a high opinion of my knowledge of the sacred texts and histories, as well as of my character and holiness. "*Laso, laso*" (yes, yes), he said, and then he apologized for not having brought me some presents; but I answered him that our acquaintance was only just begun, and there would be time in the future to

cultivate it, and, handing him a scarf (*khatag*), I expressed the hope that we might meet the next year (*sangpoi ja chog*). Many of the bystanders made wishes for our welfare, but some one in the crowd said that I was certainly not a Tibetan. Then another swore I was an Indian; and a third said that they would soon have news of me: "That Hindu will surely die in the snows, and his servants will soon return here with the news of his death."

It was past noon when the coolies picked up their loads, and I set out in excellent spirits, having now escaped the much-feared obstruction from the Yangma people, on whose mercy and good-will our success entirely depended.

We passed by some *mendong* and *chorten* at the entrance to the convent, and then followed up the course of the Yangma, passing by a pretty lakelet, the Miza, or "man eating," * now filled with ice, and seeing on the way some very high *chorten*, known as *thongwa kundol*,† "bringing deliverance when seen," which had a few years previously been repaired by the head lama of Wallung. Near these we saw a half-dozen wild sheep (*nao*), but we gave up all idea of shooting them when told that the Yangma people think the gods of the land and mountains (*Shi-bdag, ri-lha*) would be deeply offended if any one molested them.

By 3 p.m. we got sight of the village of Yangma,‡ whose houses could only be distinguished from the boulders everywhere strewing the ground by the smoke issuing from the roofs. There were not more than a hundred houses in the village, and the fields round about were enclosed within low stone walls. Buckwheat, barley, turnips, radishes, and potatoes are grown here, and rice brought from Yang-ku tang and other villages in the warmer valleys is procurable. The village was founded by Tibetans from Tashi-rabka, one of them having discovered the valley and its comparative fertility while hunting for a lost yak calf. The name Yangma was given it on account of the breadth of the valley.§

The male part of the population is idle in the extreme, but the

* *Mi*, "man;" *za*, "to eat."—(W. R.)

† *Mthong-wa*, "seen;" *kun*, "entire;" *grol*, "freedom."—(W. R.)

‡ Also visited by Hooker. He says that it was (in 1848) a miserable collection of 200 to 300 stone huts. Its altitude is about 13,500 feet above sea-level. See Hooker, *op. cit.*, i. 238. On p. 242 of his work is a "diagram of the glacial terraces at the fork of the Yangma valley."—(W. R.)

§ *Yang-ma*, meaning "broad."—(W. R.)

women are correspondingly busy; some I saw were threshing corn, some gathering fuel, others engaged in various kinds of household work.

By 5 p.m. we got off from this wretched valley, where Phurchung and the coolies, by the way, were most desirous to remain to continue drinking *chang*, though Phurchung showed unmistakable signs of having already imbibed too much. After an hour's march we reached Ki phug, where we found, under an overhanging rock, a bit of ground free from snow on which to camp; but Phurchung remained behind in Yangma, in a helplessly drunken condition.

November 29.—The way lay along the Yangma, which was scarcely visible, snow and ice covering entirely its bed. There was nothing to give life to the scenery; the river flowed in a deep gorge, or else opened out into lake-like expanses; on either side the mountains seemed to reach to the sky; not a bird, not even a cloud in the heaven, not a sound save that of our feet crushing the light dry snow. It was 11 a.m. when we came to an unfrozen pool, by which we ate our breakfast of tea and meal. This place, which is in a broad portion of the valley, is a favourite summer pasture-ground (*tser chan*) for the Dokpas, who, from July to September, bring their herds of yaks here.

Po phug was reached after a march of three miles through the snow, then the ascent became steeper and freer from snow, and we came to Luma goma, "Fountain head," the source of the Yangma river; and after an easy ascent of half an hour we arrived at Tsa-tsam, the limit of vegetation.*

Here we began climbing a huge glacier, a quarter of a mile wide and more than three miles long, the Chyang-chub gya-lam, or "Highway to Holiness," over which I was carried on Phurchung's back wherever the snow lay deep. Then we climbed a huge mass of bare black rocks (*Dsama nagmo*), and darkness had overtaken us before we reached the "White Cavern" (*Phugpa karpo*), where we proposed passing the night. The fog added to the obscurity of the night, our feet were benumbed by the cold, and we frequently slipped into crevasses or between the clefts of rocks. Finding it impossible to reach the cavern, we scraped away the snow from between some rocks, and there I sat, my knees drawn up, hugging myself during the long night.

* *Rtsa*, "grass;" *mtsams*, "boundary-line, limit."—(W. R.)

How exhausted we were with the fatigue of the day's journey, how overcome by the rarefication of the air, the intensity of the cold, and how completely prostrated by hunger and thirst, is not easy to describe. The very remembrance of the sufferings of that dreadful night makes me shudder even now, but I quickly recover under the inexpressible delight I feel at the consciousness of my great success. This was the most trying night I ever passed in my life. There was a light breeze blowing, attended with sleet, which fortunately weighed my blankets down and made them cover me closer than they otherwise would have done. And so with neither food nor drink, placed as if in the grim jaws of death in the bleak and dreary regions of snow, where death alone dwells, we spent this most dismal night.

November 30.—The coolies once more picked up their loads, and our guide began in his gravest tones to recite his *Pema-jung-ne samba duba* and other *mantras*. The morning was gloriously radiant, and the great Kangla chen glittered before us, bathed in a glory of golden light. Fortunately for us, there was no fresh snow on the ground; for, had there been any, we could not possibly have advanced. We found that we had stopped not more than a furlong from the Phugpa karpo, which, by the way, is not a cave at all, but only a crevasse between two detached rocks. Our guide, leaving his load in charge of his brother, took the lead, driving his long stick into the snow at each step, and digging footholds in the soft snow. From the White Cavern the top of the pass bore due east, and was distant about two miles. Just at the base of the final ascent there is a little sandy plain, in the middle of which is a huge boulder: this is the "Place of Salvation" (*Tarpa gang*), thus called because, when once this point is reached, travellers may be confident of attaining the summit of the pass.

I steadily followed in the footsteps of the guide, and would not let him take me on his back; for if I succeeded in ascending to the highest summit of Kangla chen without any help, I could look to the achievement with greater pride. Ugyen here gave out, and it was with difficulty that I persuaded Phurchung to carry him on his back, for they were far from being on the best of terms. An hour's hard climbing brought us to the summit of the pass. The sky was cloudless and of the deepest blue; against it a snow-clad world of mountains stood out in bold relief. Far beyond the maze of snow-clad peaks we saw in the north-west the mountains of Pherug,

in Tibet, while those of Shar Khambu stood gloriously out to the west.

The summit of Kangla chen is a plateau, some two miles from east to west, and one mile and a quarter from north-west to north-east; it inclines towards the west, while to the north-west it is bounded by a mountain of considerable height. Our snowshoes (*kyar*) now stood us in good need; unfortunately we had but three pairs, so Phurchung and I had to wade through the deep snow in the footsteps of the others, with many slips and more than one narrow escape from falling into the deep crevasses. On all sides there was nothing visible but an ocean of snow. Innumerable snowy peaks touched with their white heads the pale leaden skies, where stars were shining. The rattling roar of distant avalanches was frequently heard; but, after having succeeded in crossing the loftiest of snowy passes, I felt too transported with joy to be frightened by their thunder.

These splendid scenes of wonderland, the grandest, the most sublime my eyes have ever beheld, which bewildered me so that even now my pen finds no words to describe them, inspired me with feelings of deep gratitude to Heaven, by whose mercy my life had been spared thus far.

We camped on a rock bare of snow, and passed another miserable night with nothing to drink, and but a couple of dry biscuits to stave off our hunger. To add to my misery, Ugyen was still suffering, and I had to give him half my covering, for he had none of his own; and so, with not even enough room to lie down, we passed the night huddled together, the loads placed on the lower side of the rock so as to prevent our falling off in our sleep.

December 1.—'Twas not yet dawn when all were on foot and busy packing up. The track was hardly visible; below our path lay the great glacier, extending for miles, which feeds the Tashi-rabka river. The snowy sides of the mountains beyond this were furrowed by glacial streams, very noticeable in their varied shades of blue and green, and on the surface of the glacier itself rose huge rounded surfaces, or hummocks, evidently produced by boulders concealed under the ice.

Following carefully in the footsteps of Phurchung, we crossed some six spurs of the Dorjetagh range, and then came to an easy path down the central moraine of a former glacier, now only a huge heap of boulders and *débris*. The mountains lost, as we advanced,

the whitish colour peculiar to the Indian ranges, and assumed the blackish or ochre colour distinctive of the Tibetan region. 'Twas with a feeling of intense relief that we finally discerned vegetation and heard the babbling of a little brook, near which flew birds feeding on rhododendron and juniper berries, and a little way off we saw some herds of yaks grazing, and smoke rising from a camp fire. Here we stopped at the foot of a great rock, and enjoyed, after our long fast of two days, a meal of rice and buttered tea.

We continued down the course of the stream, passing with some apprehension near a huge bull-yak or *shalu*, though low stone walls separated us from him and kept him away from the she-yaks (*di*) in the adjacent pasturage. This part of the valley is frequently visited by packs of wolves, which kill large numbers of yaks, but the bulls are able to drive them off with their long sharp horns.

At 3 p.m. we passed Dsongo, the extreme border of the district of Tashi-rabka, and where are the ruins of a stone house built on a huge boulder. This was formerly a stage-house used by the Sikkim Raja's people, when the Yangma and Wallung districts still belonged to him, when going to or returning from Tibet. A little way beyond this point we met some herdsmen, who made inquiries as to whence we came and where we were going. Near by were their tents, where I noticed two swarthy women and a fierce Tibetan mastiff. Phurchung entered one of the tents, sat down to chat and drink a cup of *tara*, a sort of thin curd.*

Ugyen was much preoccupied about our getting by Tashi-rabka and escaping its headman (*Tongzungpa*). At about 6 o'clock we were close to the village, and so we hid till dusk in a gully, where we boiled our tea and ate some *tsamba*. The moon shone out brightly when we resumed our march and passed along a portion of a high stone wall, erected by the Tibetans during the Nepalese war, when, it is said, they put up five miles of it in a day under orders of their general, the Shape Shata.† This wall is carried across the

* *Tara*, or *tarak*, is made of curdled milk slightly cooked and stirred up in the process. It is a favourite dish throughout Tibet and Western Mongolia, in which latter country it is also known as *tarak*. It is generally eaten just before meals. In Eastern Tibet and the Kokonor it is called *djo* (pr. *sho*). It is the same as the *yaurt* of the Turks and the people of the Balkanic States.—(W. R.)

† *Shape* is the colloquial title given to the ministers of State (Kalon) of the Tale lama. The word is possibly *gshags*, "justice;" *dpe*, "model," though it is now written as in the text. See *infra*, p. 174.—(W. R.)

river on a bridge, where it has eight small watch towers. It crosses the whole valley, its ends being high up on the sides of the mountains. On the farther side of the wall is the village. Ugyen and Phurchung stood trembling, not knowing whether to turn back towards the Kangla chen pass or to proceed onward towards the *chorten*, near which the headman resides. Phuntso alone was equal to the occasion. "If the guards are awake, we will sing some of our national Wallung songs, and pass ourselves off for Wallungpa." After a few words of encouragement to the others, we set out. Before we had reached the *chorten*, a voice from a yak-hair tent cried out, "Whence are you, and where are you going?" To which Phuntso replied that we were Wallungpa going to Shigatse, asked them where they were going, and without waiting for a reply we hurried on and passed by the dreaded headman's house without awakening any one, not even the fierce mastiffs tied up in front of the dwelling.

About 30 yards beyond the house we came to the bridge, a rough structure of logs and stone slabs. The Tashi-rabka river was partly frozen, and its swift current was sweeping down blocks of ice. We crossed over unnoticed, and I then broke the silence with thanks to merciful God who had enabled us to overcome this the most dreaded of all difficulties, one which had frightened my staunch friend Phurchung, that the snows of the Kangla chen had not daunted.

We followed the river in an easterly direction, passing on the way two poor traders (*Gyagar Khamba* *) who were going to Wallung to sell a wild sheep (*nao*) they had killed. Then we came to Ri-u, where is a large Nyingma† monastery, and three miles further on to a bridge over the two branches of the river. 'Twas nearly midnight when we reached a sand-covered hillock called Shara, where we halted for the night, and slept in a sheepfold, near which two hunters with a hound (*shyakhi*) were also camped.

December 2.—At sunrise we resumed our journey, and after an hour's march got sight of the village of Guma Shara, at the foot of a range of mountains trending north-west and south-east. Leaving

* *Gyagar Khamba* means "Indian Khamba," the same as probably Hooker's Khumba of Sikkim. See p. 107, note; and Hooker, i. 136.—(W. R.)

† *Nyingma*, or *Nyingma*, the old or red-hat sect of lamas. Their chief stronghold is Ulterior Tibet, Sikkim, and Bhutan.—(W. R.)

this village some miles away (on our right?), we turned a little to the north and made for the Langbu la. There was not a soul to be seen on the vast table-land we were traversing, only a few little birds like swallows twittered on the hillsides by the way, and some kites were soaring in the sky near Guma Shara. We ascended steadily till we came to the foot of the pass, from which point the summit was reached by a zigzag cut in the rocks, the whole surface of which was inscribed with the mystic syllables, *Om mani padmé hum.** I became so fatigued before the summit (some 700 feet above the plateau) was reached, that Phuntso had to carry me up; and Ugyen also made the ascent on Phurchung's back, as he was still feeling very badly and was quite unable to keep up with us. From the summit we could see due north, perched on a lofty peak, the Lhakha of Sakya, and to our west were snow-clad peaks of the lofty Perugh mountains.

On the northern slope of the Langbu we found much drifted sand, and a short distance from the foot of the pass we came to the source of the Ge river,† where we met a party of rice-collectors (*dadubpa*) on their way to Tashi-rabka with a dozen yaks and some donkeys, there to buy rice from the Wallung traders. While Phurchung talked to one of them, a former acquaintance, I slipped by without attracting their attention; for had they spoken to me, they would certainly have detected my nationality by my appearance and speech.

Proceeding onward, we met other parties of swarthy Tibetans, in which the women were conspicuous by their headdress (*patug*). Their dirt-covered faces, their white teeth and eyeballs, made them look exceedingly wild. Crossing the rivulet by a bridge made of two stone slabs, the valley broadened as we advanced, till we found ourselves on a plateau several miles broad, where the rivulet turned to the west, to empty probably farther on into the great Arun. Phurchung here pointed out a place where there is a large underground monastery,‡ the chief temple (*tsugla khang*) of which is cut

* The famous "six-syllable prayer." See my 'Land of the Lamas,' p. 326 *et sqq.*—(W. R.)

† A small stream emptying into the Taya Tsangpo of our maps.—(W. R.)

‡ Ugyen-gyatso visited in 1883 another rock-cut hermitage in this neighbourhood, at a place called Kyil-khor ta dub, some 10 miles from the She-kar gomba, at the foot of the Lama la. It was about a quarter mile long. Padma Sambhava is said to have lived in it. See 'Report on Explorations in Bhutan, etc.,' p. 20, § 20.—(W. R.)

out of the massive rock. There are twenty inmates to this lamasery, and the church furniture and images are said to be of great antiquity.

Fording the little Tibgyu chu, said to rise in the Chabug la, we proceeded in an easterly direction, and passed the little village of Wena, a mile from which stands the village of Chani, where lives the Chyugpo mepang family, or the "rich men who never reply nay." When travellers passing by this way have asked the rich men (*chyugpo* *) if there was such and such a thing to be had at their place, they have never replied in the negative. One day, in the month of August, a traveller who had heard the story concerning this family came to test its truth, and asked the housewife to give him a piece of ice, when she at once produced a piece from the butter-cask. On another occasion a traveller asked for a chile pepper in February, and the mistress of the house gave it to him at once.

December 3.—At about a mile from our camp of last night we came to a rivulet some fifteen feet broad, flowing in a north-easterly direction. We selected a shallow part of it, across which Phurchung waded, carrying me on his back. Irrigation ditches led the water of this stream on to the neighbouring barley-fields. We stopped towards 7 o'clock at the camp (*dok* †) of Pole, situated in the middle of a plain extending from east to west some ten miles, and bounded to the north by the Arun river. There were several sheep-folds with walls of sun-dried bricks six or seven feet high and two feet thick; in the corners of these folds were turret-like houses, in which the shepherds sought shelter from the severity of the weather. Here we hired two yaks for a *tanka* ‡ a-piece to carry us to the village of Tebong, about six or seven miles away. This whole plateau was covered with a species of briar, amidst which grew long fine grass, on which cows and *jo* (half-bred yaks) were feeding, and whence innumerable hares and foxes ran, startled by our approach. Midway between Pole and Tebong, but on the mountain side, lies the village of Mug, with some forty families (*mitsang*). Before reaching Tebong,

* Written *phyug-po*. *Med* (from *me*), "no."—(W. R.)

† Written *hbrog*, and usually pronounced *dru*, *du*, or *do*. The name *dopa* or *drupa* applies equally to all pastoral tribes, and they, when speaking, use it with the acceptation of "house, dwelling, tent, home."—(W. R.)

‡ Three Tibetan tankas are the equivalent of one rupee. There were four varieties of tankas then current in Tibet, two of Nepalese minting, two made at Lhasa, the best being that known as Gadan tanka, and made at the Castle of Gadan.—(W. R.)

which is the first village this way on Tashilhunpo soil, we crossed the dry bed of the Chorten Nyima river, forming the boundary, and which I had already passed over on my first journey to Shigatse in 1879.* Near here we were overtaken by a violent dust-storm, which hid the whole country from our view and forced us for a while to remain motionless.

Once on Tashilhunpo territory, all my fears of being arrested were over, and I walked on to the village of Tanglung† with a light heart. An hour's walk brought us to the door of my old acquaintance, Nabu‡ Wanga, who led me with much ceremony into the best room of his home, apologizing for his not being able to lodge me in his chapel, which was filled with carcasses of sheep and goats drying for winter use.

December 4.—Our host appeared early in the morning to inquire what we required in the way of food for our journey, and Ugyen gave him a list of articles, comprising mutton, barley-meal (*tsamba*§), butter, etc. He also undertook to procure us three ponies, for which I was to pay Rs. 4 each as far as Shigatse. While we were breakfasting a number of old acquaintances came in, bringing me presents of *tsamba*, mutton, butter, and *chang*. One man, a doctor (*amchi*), brought a fox-skin cap of ingenious make, which he offered to sell me. It was so contrived that it protected every part of the head, leaving only the eyes and nose exposed, or it could be turned up and used as an ordinary hat.‖

In the evening Delah Tondub, the head of the militia or village police (*yulmag*¶), received an order from Khamba djong, which he brought me to decipher. It was to the effect that he must hold himself and force in readiness to proceed at once to the Lachan boundary, fully equipped with matchlocks, lances, swords, slings, etc.,

* In 1879 Chandra Das crossed the Chorten nyima la, probably 20 to 30 miles south of the village of Tebong (called then by him Thekong). He followed the Chorten nyima river from its source in the mountain of the same name to near its mouth at Tebong, where his route joined the one described in the present narrative.—(W. R.)

† Or, more correctly, Drang-lung; for he says, in his diary for 1879, that it means "cold valley."—(W. R.)

‡ *Nabu*, or, more correctly, *Nabo*, means "host, landlord."—(W. R.)

§ Called *satu* by Anglo-Indian writers. This word is also found in Georgii, 'Alphabetum Tibetanum' (1762), p. 445: "Hordei farinam in jentaculi, pultisque formam subactam *Satù* communi vocabulo dicunt."—(W. R.)

‖ This is the ordinary style of Mongol fur cap, very generally used in Tibet.—(W. R.)

¶ On this organization, see chap. vii. p. 180.

in view of the fact that a "very important European official, deputy of the Lieut.-Governor of Bengal, was on his way to the Tibetan frontier. This information was communicated by the frontier guards, in consequence of which necessary precautions were urgently needed." I told them that the official referred to was probably Captain Harman of the Survey Department, with whom he was acquainted, having met him the year before at Tangu, near Lachan.

December 5.—Our arrangements being completed and the ponies at the door, we hastened to finish our breakfast. From the sheep-pen close by the house we saw some fifty sheep led to the slaughtering-place behind the village. The butchers mutter some *mantras* over each one before killing it, and they receive as their perquisite the heads.

Following the same route I had taken in 1879, we left the village of Mende * on our left, and, crossing several frozen streams, we came to the village of Targye, where we stopped in the house of an old man, who invited us to be his guests in the hope of getting some medicine for dyspepsia from which he was suffering. He put us up in his storehouse, amidst his barley, yak-hair bags, farming implements, etc. He had manufactured some rugs, and I bought one from him for a couple of rupees. The villagers, hearing of my purchase, brought me a number of their choicest carpets, but the price asked was larger than I cared to give.

December 6.—I learnt with pleasure from my host that the Minister of Temporal Affairs (*Kyab ving* †) of Ulterior Tibet (*Tsang*) was Phendi Khangsar, to whom I was well known. My host and his wife came and begged some medicine, and I prepared for him an effervescent draught, which the old man swallowed with much difficulty. "Oh, sir," he exclaimed, "it boiled and foamed even as it ran down my throat; it must be a medicine of wonderful potency! I never took such a drink in my life, nor heard of its like before!" And the spectators all said, in amazement, "This *amchi* is a miracle-worker (*tulpa*); his medicine boils in cold water." And so my fame was noised abroad.

* In his journey of 1879, he speaks of Mende as "the pretty village of Mende. . . . Facing the village is a flower-garden, in which are also dwarf willows, stunted birch and juniper trees." He also says that Targe (Targye) is on the Yaru-tsang-po (the Taya tsang-po of the maps), probably a local appellation for the upper Arun. Taya tsang-po is probably Targye tsang-po, "the river of the Tar-gye."—(W. R.)

† Probably *Khyab-dvang*, "all-powerful," a title in frequent use in Tibet.—(W. R.)

Crossing the Yaru la, we made for Kurma, before reaching which place we experienced some difficulty in crossing the broad bed of the frozen river.* Near the village we saw in the fields several wild asses (*kyang*), some wild goats (*ragyo*), and wild sheep (*nao*). At Kurma we put up in the house of a doctor, an acquaintance of Phurchung, who had brought him a quantity of medicines the *amchi* had the year past commissioned him to buy at Darjiling. Our

SARAT CHANDRA CROSSING THE DONKHYA PASS.

supply of meat being exhausted, Ugyen bought a sheep's carcass (*pagra*). When the sheep get very fat, the people, for fear of losing any of the fat by skinning them, roast the whole as they would a pig.†

* This river is the Che chu (or Chi chu), the great Arun. Kurma, the author tells us in his journal of 1879, is a "Dokpa town containing about six hundred families. . . . All supplies are brought here from Shigatse."—(W. R.)

† Hence the name *phag*, "pig;" *ra*, "goat." S. C. D. says they roast them alive. This must be a mistake. I never heard of meat being roasted in Tibet. He evidently means that the sheep are cooked without the skin being removed. The Mongols do the same thing, throwing the carcass (some say the live sheep) in boiling water. These

December 7.—Leaving Kurma early in the morning, we arrived at Iago * by 6 p.m., where we got accommodations in the house of a rich farmer, paying him a *tanka* as room-rent (*nala*). I had been feeling very badly all day, but Phurchung whispered to me to let no one know I was ill, as sick men are not admitted into people's dwellings in this country.

December 8.—By 10 a.m. we reached Tamar,† in the valley of the Re chu, here thickly dotted with hamlets. Numerous flocks of pigeons and swallows were picking worms and grain in the fields, and Ugyen told me that the pigeons were a serious nuisance to the people, for they are not allowed to kill them, animal life being held sacred.

We passed the foot of the hill on which the Regyinpai lamasery ‡ is situated, and by 2 p.m. came to Labrang dokpa; but finding all the houses closed, we continued on to the Nambu la,§ crossing which we reached the village of Nambu, where we stopped in the house of a friend of Phurchung.

December 9.—We arose by 3.30 in the morning, and put on our best clothes, for to-day we were to enter Tashilhunpo. Travellers were more numerous now; we met several parties of traders with yaks and donkeys or laden sheep going to or coming from Shigatse. The day was cold, and there was a light wind blowing. I alternately rode and walked, and though I was by this time greatly reduced in flesh by the hardships I had had to encounter, I was in high spirits at the success which had so far attended me. Not so Ugyen: he was ill, and fretted fearfully, his appearance was repulsive, and his language to the Tang-lung men, whose ponies we rode, was most abusive, but they bore patiently with him. At 9 o'clock we passed through Chuta, and an hour later came to the village of Jong Luguri,‖ where I was

carcasses are sold in a frozen state by the Mongols in Peking in winter, and are known as *Tang-yang*, or "scalded sheep," in Chinese. Cf. C. R. Markham's 'Narrative of the Mission of Geo. Bogle,' 86.—(W. R.)

* It is called Ya-go on the maps. S. C. D. says, in the account of his first journey, that this village is on the boundary-line between Lhasa and Ulterior Tibet, belonging to the former country.—(W. R.)

† The Tagmar of our maps. The writer says elsewhere that it has about two hundred houses.—(W. R.)

‡ The Bra-gyin pa gomba of the maps.—(W. R.)

§ The Ngambu dung la of our maps, altitude 14,800 feet; but in the account of his first journey S. C. D. says it is 13,500 feet high. The descent on the north side, he adds, is very steep.—(W. R.)

‖ Or Luguri jong, as he calls it elsewhere.—(W. R.)

most kindly received by my former host of 1879, Lobdon puti. I ate a couple of eggs and drank a few cups of tea; then, reloading our ponies, we paid our bill (*jaltse*) and set out for Tashilhunpo, where we arrived by half-past four, entering it by the small western entrance marked by two *chortens*.*

* S. C. D. reached this city for the first time on July 7, 1879.

TOWN OF SHIGATSE.

EXPLANATION.

8. Norgya khangsar. *The residence of the chief noble of Tashi Lhunpo.*
9. Chinese burial ground.
11. Tondub khangsar. *The residence of Shapeh Rempa.*
12. Panja or gyani khang. *Quarters for the Chinese militia.*
13. Amban's residence. *The house of the Imperial Chinese resident*
20. Jong Samdub-tse. *The fort and court of the Magistrate of Shigatse.*
21. Road to the Tsang po (*River Brahmaputra*).
22. Shigatse. *The town (called Digar che by the Nepalese).*
23. Thom or Market.
24. Tse-yang-tse. *Garden for the Chinese.*
25. Changlo khangsar. *The park belonging to the estate of Changlo char.*
26. Daloyeh Chyangra. *The park for the use of the Commandant of the Chinese militia.*
27. Jah-hu-thang. *The camp and field for exercise.*
28. Kesar Lhakhang. *The Temple of the War god called Kesar.*
29. Pachal-para. *The Northern division of the town of Shigatse.*
30. Cha-c-para. *The Southern division of the town of Shigatse.*
31. Phari-para. *The Central division of the town of Shigatse.*

W. & A.K. Johnston, Limited, Edinburgh & London

Published by the Royal Geographical Society

CHAPTER II.

RESIDENCE AT TASHILHUNPO.

WE entered the monastery of Tashilhunpo by the little western gate, in front of which stand two *chortens*—one very large with a gilt spire, the other smaller but neatly constructed. I walked along the narrow lane, lined on either side by lofty buildings, with the measured steps and grave demeanour which all wearers of the sacred costume are supposed to have. The rays of the setting sun shone on the gilded spires of the houses and tombs in the monastery, and made a most enchanting picture.*

The minister, I learned from his head cook (*Machen* †), whom I now met, had gone to Dongtse, his native town, but he had left instructions that I be lodged in the Targod chyi-khang until his return.

Though the news of the absence of my friend Phendi Khang-sar somewhat damped my spirits, yet the pleasing thought of having been able for the second time to visit Tashilhunpo was a source of infinite gratification. The Machen opened the padlock which closed the great door of the house, and ushered me in with outstretched hands and greetings of "*Pundib la, chyag-pheb nang,*" "Welcome, Mr. Pundit." ‡

The building was a three-storied one, the ground floor, adjoining which were two stables, being used as a godown. The rooms on the first floor were spacious and neat, but very cold on account of the

* "If the magnificence of the place was to be increased by any external cause, none could more superbly have adorned its numerous gilded canopies and turrets than the sun rising in full splendour directly opposite. It presented a view wonderfully beautiful and brilliant; the effect was little short of magic, and it made an impression which no time will ever efface from my mind."—Captain Samuel Turner, 'Embassy to the Court of the Teshu Lama,' 230.

† This word is colloquially used to designate the cook of any dignitary or official.—(W. R.)

‡ Or rather, "Please walk in, Mr. Pundit."—(W. R.)

height of the roof and the absence of sunlight. The third story, though it looked snug, was exposed to the wind, and therefore uninhabitable. The minister's steward (*Nerpa* *), coming in while we were looking over the house, recommended the first floor for our residence, as it would be warm in winter, when much air is not desirable. Having made up my mind to occupy it, he had the rooms dusted, and removed some two hundred volumes, a pile of printing-blocks, boards, and tables with which the rooms were encumbered; and then, some thickly stuffed cushions having been spread, on which our carpets and rugs were placed, he begged us to be seated. Cups were placed on some small tables before us, and tea was brought from the minister's kitchen and served us by the head cook. A few twisted biscuits,† some pieces of mutton and *tsamba* were put before me, and from another teapot tea, of evidently an inferior quality, was served to my companions.

The Nerpa told me that we were to be lodged here by the minister's order, but if we did not like the place we might write to him on the subject, and he would have the letter forwarded to Dongtse. The remoteness of the house, with only that of the minister near it, and, above all, its location near the western gate, gave it peculiar advantages, which appeared to me very essential for my purposes, and we had every reason to be delighted at the forethought of our patron, who had shown himself so anxious about our safe arrival and comfort.

When the Nerpa and Machen had left us, I consulted with Ugyen about making presents to the servants of the minister and to our former acquaintances. Money, being very scarce in Tibet, is valued above all things, so that for the renewal of our former acquaintance we could do nothing better than to make presents of silver coin and scarves (*khatag*).

Later on in the evening we returned the visits of the steward and his comrades, and presented them with rupees, eight-anna or four-anna pieces, according to the importance of their respective offices. With difficulty we persuaded them to accept the presents, for they feared lest the minister might be vexed at their taking money from me.

* Or Nyer-pa (*gnyer-pa*); this word is generally used to designate the procurator or manager of the temporal affairs of a lamasery.—(W. R.)

† Called *ma-hua* by the Chinese; made of thin strips of dough thrown into boiling grease for a minute or two. They are eaten all over China, Mongolia, and Tibet. I do not know the Tibetan name; Mongols call them by the Chinese term of *ma-hua-erh*. —(W. R.)

December 10.—Ugyen and Phurchung were up by daylight, arranging things and buying firewood and other necessaries. Shortly after I had arisen the men we had hired at Tang-lung to lead our ponies came in for their rewards. I gave each of them six *tankas*, and some twisted biscuits to carry home to their children, all of which pleased them greatly. It felt strange to me not to have a day's journey before me, so accustomed had I become to daily travel, instead of which I could sit peacefully reclining on my cushions on the balcony, lighted up by the rays of the morning sun. Phurchung was the only servant I now had to attend on both myself and Ugyen, so it was decided to hire a man to help him in fetching water and in blowing the bellows. We had to wait till the Shigatse market (*tom*) opened at 11 o'clock before we could get any breakfast, for our provisions were exhausted. Both Ugyen and Phurchung went to the market, from which they shortly returned with butter, salt, mutton, *tsamba*, *phing*,* and a few Chinese cakes for me. They had been surrounded on the way by two parties of beggars (*Rogyaba*), who, recognizing Ugyen as a new arrival from Sikkim, had by alternate threats and solicitations succeeded in squeezing from him several silver pieces. They had also seen an altercation between a woman selling salt and some Khamba traders. One of the latter had bought several *seers* of salt from the woman, and had offered her a debased *tanka* in payment, which she had refused. The Khamba would not return the salt or pay in better coin; he called six or seven of his friends to him, threw the salt on the ground, and wanted to beat the woman, whom there was no police to protect. It ended by the savage Khamba walking off unmolested, and the poor woman losing her salt. Ugyen was greatly surprised at the lawlessness of the people in the market, their violence towards the helpless, and the absence of police supervision. I smiled at his fears, and told him to take a hearty breakfast. In the evening I called at the Phuntso Khangsar, and learnt from the steward that Kusho Tung-chen,† the minister's secretary, would be back on the following afternoon.

* This appears to be the Chinese *ping*, meaning "cake or pastry." In North-West China and Szechuan this word designates a thin cake of wheat-flour the size of a plate, cooked on a hot iron or in a shallow dish. In Tibetan it is called *palé*.—(W. R.)

† *Kusho* is the Tibetan equivalent of "Mr."; Tung-chen is *Drung (yig) chen-po*, "chief secretary," not a name, as one might suppose by the way it is used in this narrative. The minister's residence, S. C. D. says elsewhere, was at the northern end of the town. It is a stone building three stories high, the exterior painted yellow.—(W. R.)

December 11.—My breakfast consisted of a cup of broth (*tugpa*), with *tsamba*, radishes, marrow, and minced mutton, a little salt and some dried cheese (*chura*) in it. When it was over Ugyen and Phurchung went to market, and on the way they met Choi-tashi, a Mongol monk, whom I had once helped at Darjiling with food and money. The faithful Mongol had not forgotten my kindness: as soon as he saw Ugyen he threw his arms around him and led him to his home in the lamasery. Ugyen learnt from him of the whereabouts of some of my old acquaintances—Lob-zang Tanzing and other Mongol friends. Lob-zang had failed to pass his final examination for admission into the monastery, in which it is required of candidates to repeat without a single omission or mistake 120 pages of selected sacred texts,* so he had been deprived of subsistence allowances, and had seen his name struck off the roll of monks. He had in consequence left Tashilhunpo four months before my arrival for his native land, proposing to visit Lhasa on the way.

In the market Ugyen met another old acquaintance, the Chinese head of the Shigatse police, who invited him into his house, where his mistress (*ani*) served them *chang* and a dish of vermicelli (*jya tug*).† Then the Chinaman told Ugyen of the recent row in which the junior Amban had been involved, and of his own incredibly swift ride to Lhasa to carry dispatches to the senior Amban. As the senior Amban, together with the Shape Sa-wang rampa and Lhalu, had come to Shigatse to settle the trouble, the head constable claimed for himself no small share in the successful termination of the affair. It was also said that the Shape, together with the Amban, had decided to enforce the circulation of every kind of silver coin, no matter how debased. The distinction made in the Shigatse market between good and bad coin was considered to be productive of much inconvenience to trade, and so they had forbidden it. The same order had been recently enforced at Lhasa, to the great convenience and satisfaction of the people. Secret orders were issued to arrest the few respectable monied men who might offer objections to the enforced circulation of debased coin, by which means all trouble in the matter, it was hoped, would be averted. In consequence of this Ugyen took care not to get into trouble by changing

* Farther on (p. 57) our author says 125 pages.

† Called in Chinese *mien*, and nearly the same as the Italian *spaghetti*. The word is also frequently used for the Chinese *kua-mien*.—(W. R.)

our Indian coins for Tibetan *tanka*, by exchanging them in the monastery itself.

In the market-place my men saw several parties of prisoners loaded with chains weighing twenty pounds and upwards. Some had their hands manacled, others their arms passed through blocks of wood, not a few had their eyes put out. The Government does not provide these miserable wretches with food, but lets them beg their sustenance in the market-place. They are more troublesome than even the Ragyabas, and pour out curses and vile abuse on all who do not at once give them alms. At 4 p.m. I was told that the minister's secretary, the Kusho Tung-chen, had arrived, and wanted to see me; so I dressed myself in my lama costume, and, accompanied by Ugyen carrying a few coins and some *khatag*, I went to the Puntso Khangsar.

Being conducted into his presence, I presented him with a scarf and a couple of rupees, and Ugyen did the same. We were then given fine *khatag*, and asked, with an air of genuine cordiality and kindness which greatly pleased me, to be seated beside him. A stuffed raised seat, covered with a Chinese rug, was given me, and a small table placed before me. Ugyen occupied a lower seat, and the table given him was also lower than mine, to show the difference of rank between us. Plates of dried and boiled mutton, together with bowls of *tsamba*, were served us. An attendant then brought from the minister's shelves handsome china cups, and, filling them with tea, asked me to drink with "*Pundib la, sol-ja-she*" ("Please drink, Mr. Pundit"), at which I drank about a third of the contents; for it is customary in Tibet not to drink more than this at first, while to drink less would be a reflection on the cook or the host. After a short conversation of no importance I returned to my dwelling.

December 12.—The secretary sent to inform us that he would be despatching a messenger to Dongtse in the evening, and that if we had any letters to send they should be ready before noon. We at once applied ourselves to drafting a letter to the minister, which was no easy matter, as the form of the paper, the margin to be left at the top and bottom of the sheet, and the choice of complimentary words at the beginning, had all to be carefully weighed. We tried to convey to the minister how sorry we were in not having had the honour and pleasure of meeting him at Tashilhunpo, and how thankful we felt to him for his great kindness in arranging for our comfort

and accommodation. We begged him, if possible, to return to the capital for the good of all living beings, and particularly for ourselves, who depended solely on his mercy for the security of our lives. We also told him that the lithographic press he had ordered me on my first visit to buy for him in India had arrived at Lachan, where it was held by the prefect of Khamba djong. Ugyen wrote a separate letter to the minister, and then we took them to the secretary, who added a few lines to our notes, asking his master to vouchsafe his sacred protection and mercy to us who had come so far and had encountered such incredible hardships and dangers.

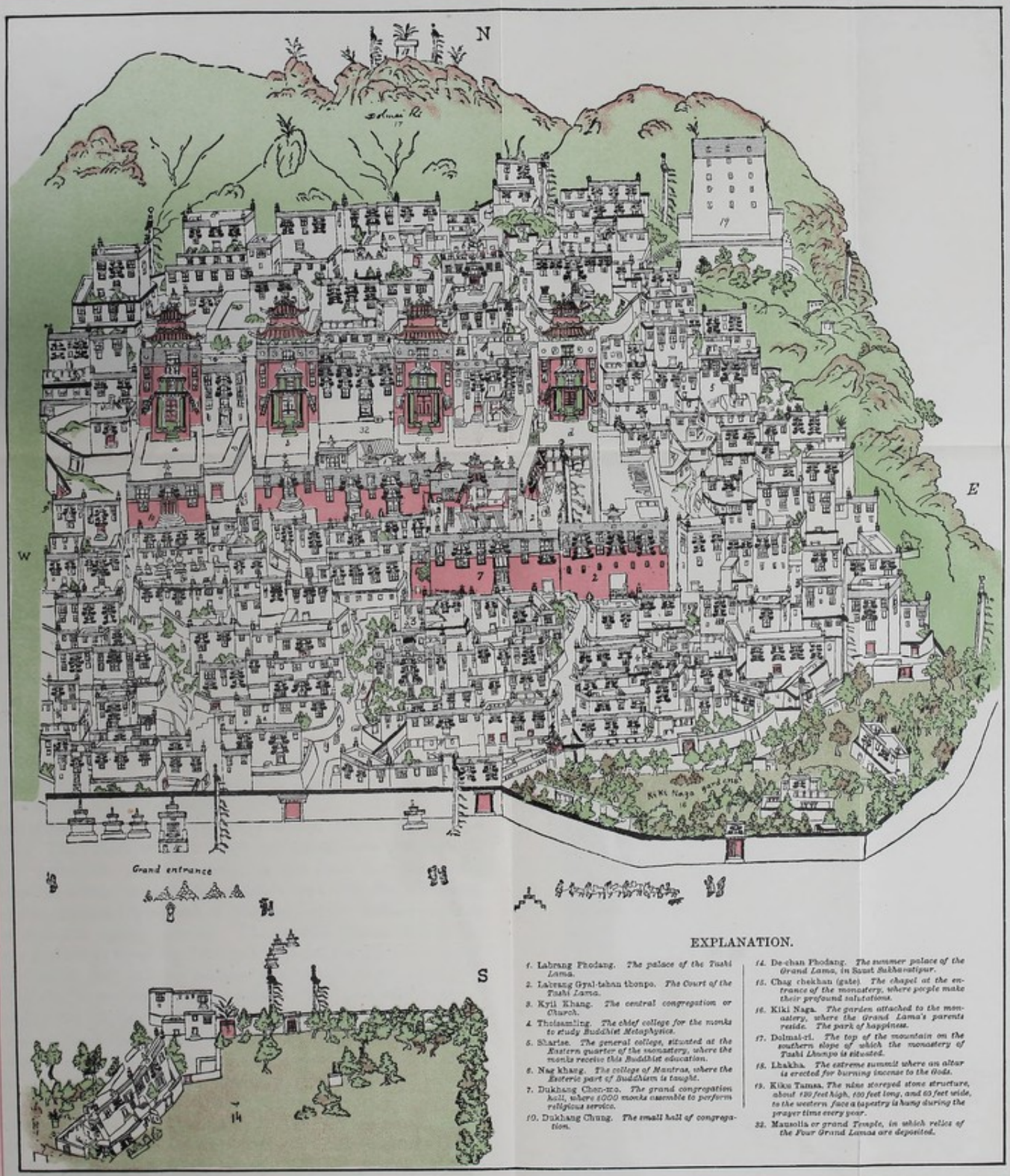
Returning home, I found Lupa gyantsaan (gyaltsan ?), a former acquaintance, awaiting me. He presented me some provisions and other things, and offered his services to buy what I might require, and see that I was not cheated. He also agreed to send me a good servant.

In the evening I called on another old friend, a most respectable man, Kusho Dechang. He was delighted to see me. Rising from his cushion, he begged me come in, saying, "*Chyag-pheb-nang-chig.*" The steward (*solpon* *) then served tea, replenishing my cup from a silver teapot (*chambim*) as soon as it was about a third empty. Kusho Dechang then questioned me concerning the present condition of affairs in Aryavarta (India), and about its government under the *Frang* (Europeans). The conversation then turned on the recent row with the Chinese and its settlement, reached to-day.

The two Chinese Residents at Lhasa inspect each year in turn the Nepal-Tibet frontier, in order to ascertain the discipline of the garrison at Tingri and the state of the defences and military resources of the several frontier posts. As the task is a most tedious and fatiguing one, owing to the desert-like condition of the country, the Ambans draw lots to find out who is to go on the inspection tour. In the latter part of October of this year it fell to the junior Amban's lot to visit Tingri djong and Shigatse. He started accordingly, accompanied by an experienced Tibetan civil officer with the rank of Tsipon (accountant), who was to arrange, as usual, for the transportation of the Amban and his retinue by sending messengers (*ngondo*) ahead to the different stations along the road. The Amban decided to follow the northern road (*chang lam*) *viâ* Toilung Tsorphu.

* Or, more correctly, "the cup-bearer, or teapot-bearer." The Solpon chen-po is one of the great officers of State both at Tashilhunpo and Lhasa.—(W. R.)

THE GRAND MONASTERY OF TASHI-LHUNPO.



EXPLANATION.

1. Labrang Phodang. *The palace of the Tashi Lama.*
2. Labrang Gyal-tshan thonpo. *The Court of the Tashi Lama.*
3. Kyil Khang. *The central congregation or Church.*
4. Thelsamling. *The chief college for the monks to study Buddhist Metaphysics.*
5. Sharlse. *The general college, situated at the Eastern quarter of the monastery, where the monks receive this Buddhist education.*
6. Nag khang. *The college of Mantras, where the Esoteric part of Buddhism is taught.*
7. Dukhang Chen-mo. *The grand congregation hall, where 1000 monks assemble to perform religious service.*
10. Dukhang Chung. *The small hall of congregation.*
14. De-chan Phodang. *The summer palace of the Grand Lama, in Sanat Sukhavatipur.*
15. Chag chekhan (gate). *The chapel at the entrance of the monastery, where people make their profound salutations.*
16. Kiki Naga. *The garden attached to the monastery, where the Grand Lama's parents reside. The park of happiness.*
17. Dolmai-ri. *The top of the mountain on the southern slope of which the monastery of Tashi Lhunpo is situated.*
18. Lhakha. *The extreme summit where an altar is erected for burning incense to the Gods.*
19. Kiku Tamsa. *The nine storeyed stone structure, about 120 feet high, 100 feet long, and 60 feet wide, to the western face a tapestry is hung during the prayer time every year.*
32. Mausolia or grand *Temple, in which relics of the Four Grand Lamas are deposited.*

W. & A. K. Johnston, Limited, Edinburgh & London

Published by the Royal Geographical Society

Now, according to pre-established custom, the Tibetan treasury has to pay the Amban a daily travelling allowance of four *doche*, or Rs. 500; * but the Government of Lhasa, instead of paying it out of the Government treasury, raises it from the people at the time of the Amban's journey and along his route. The obligation of raising the Amban's allowance then devolved on the Tsipon Kong chyang-lochan. On arriving at Shigatse, the Amban demanded six *doches*, or Rs. 750, instead of four. The Tsipon notified the people (*misser*) between Shigatse and Tingri, and when they refused to give this amount, the headmen (*tsog-pon*) were flogged, and their ponies and property sold to make up the amount.

Returning to Shigatse on his way back to Lhasa, the Amban stopped there several days, during which he insisted on a daily allowance of Rs. 750, which, the people protesting they could not pay, the Chinese soldiery, by various oppressive means, tried to squeeze out of them. The Tsipon tried to resign his commission, and then the Amban visited his anger on him. In the mean time the people combined in a body to resist the exaction, and, with the connivance of the two prefects (*Djongpon*) of Shigatse, openly refused payment of the Amban's unjust demands. The Amban, furious, ordered his Chinese soldiers to arrest the Djongpon and put the Tsipon in irons; but the former fled, and the soldiery were stoned by the mob. The next day the Tsipon was tied to a pillar of the Amban's house and flogged. After he had received some fifteen cuts, volleys of stones were thrown, and the Amban severely hurt before he could escape into the house, and he was only saved from the infuriated populace by the prompt arrival of the Tibetan general (*Dah-pon*) with the troops under his command. Then it was that a messenger was sent post-haste to Lhasa, and the senior Amban, the ministers (Shape) Rampa and Lhalu having arrived, formed, with the temporal minister of the Tashi lama (*Kyab-dvang chenpo*) and the paymaster of the forces, a commission to investigate the matter.

Their judgment in the case was made known on the 12th. It bore that the two Djongpon of Shigatse should be degraded from the third to the fourth class of Chinese official rank, losing also their position as Djongpon for that of Djongnyer under new Djongpon;

* *Rdo-tsad*, an ingot of silver weighing fifty Chinese ounces (taels), and also called *yambu* (from the Chinese *yuan-pao*), *tarmima* (*rta-rmig-ma*, also pronounced *tänpema*), or simply *do*. A *do* is usually exchanged for Rs. 160. Turner, 'Embassy,' p. 345, speaks of masses of pure bullion called *Tariema*.—(W. R.)

and that, furthermore, each of them should receive two hundred blows with the bamboo. The village headmen (*tsog-pon*) were to receive four hundred blows with the bamboo, and be imprisoned for two months in the jails of Re and Khamba djong. Eight elders (*gampo*) were to receive fifty blows of the bamboo, and wear the cangue for six months.

As to the junior Amban, it being proven that he had attempted to extort more than his allowance from the people, the Commissioners decided to petition the Court of Peking to no longer allow the payment by the Tibetan people of the Chinese travelling allowance (*jya-tal* *) in such cases, only supplying the usual travelling acilities. To obtain this concession, it is said that two Lhasa Shape paid the Amban fifteen *doche*, or Rs. 1875.

Dechang then inquired what medicines I had brought, as he was suffering from a cold and cough, and I promised to give him some later on. Then, pouring the contents of my cup into the slop-bowl (*shalu* †), as a sign of taking leave, I arose and went home.

December 13.—To-day some 15,000 persons assembled at noon in the market-place to see the arrival of the Kashmir Envoy with his guards and escort in military dress. All the alleys of Shigatse, the courtyard of Kesar Lhakhang, and the adjacent gardens were filled with people all eagerly waiting for the *temo* (sight). There was the Envoy of the Maharaja with some fifty sowars, all in uniform, besides a hundred mounted followers of various nationalities, some Sikhs, Mohammedans with flowing beards and white turbans, Ladakis in clumsy lambskin dresses, Murmis from Nepal, Dokpas from Chang, a few Nepalese, and some Tibetans from Kirong. There were also with the Envoy a number of merchants dressed in princely style, and attended by servants in liveries of silk and broadcloth. Some of their ponies were also richly caparisoned with ornaments of silver and brocade of gold. The Kashmir Government, I learnt, sends an envoy to Lhasa every three years with presents (called tribute) to the Grand Lama. The Tibetan Government, on receiving notice of the proposed setting out of the mission, has relays (*ta-u*) of ponies and mules, about 500 head, and also coolies, prepared at all the towns and post-

* The colloquial name for Chinese in Tibet is *Gya*. In the official language they are called *Gya-nag*.—(W. R.)

† Or *ja-lu* (*ldug*); also called *ja lu-sa*, "bowl (or place) to pour tea in." Usually a cup with a metal cover.—(W. R.)

stations along the road from the Ladak frontier to Lhasa. Although so large a number of ponies and men is hardly necessary for the Envoy, who only brings presents of precious things of little bulk, the party avails itself of the privilege for the carriage of personal property and merchandise to and from Lhasa. As the mission passed by, we heard the people remark that all this splendour and ostentation was at the expense of the Government of Lhasa, and to the ruin of the poor people of Tibet.

The origin of this tribute from Kashmir to Lhasa is as follows: After the conquest of Ladak, Balti, and Skardo, Zorwar Sing, the famous Sikh general of Maharaja Golab Sing, turned his arms against Rudok and Gar in the year 1840–41. These two provinces, which produce the finest wool of Tibet, and contain the wealthiest and most sacred of its monasteries, were held by the great Buddhist ruler of Tibet as his most valued possessions, and the Sikh general, by attempting their conquest, excited the wrath of the Lhasa Government, who, applying to their suzerain, the Emperor of China, was able to put more than 10,000 men in the field. Zorwar Sing, with some 5000 men, invaded these two provinces, and the governor (*garpon*) fled to the Chang tang,* leaving the fort (of Rudok?) and the whole country at the mercy of the enemy. The general established himself near the sacred lake Mapham (Manasarowar), and sent detachments all over the country to pillage and spread desecration in the holiest of Buddhist sanctuaries at Mapham and Kailas; and one body of troops he posted at Purang, near the Nepal frontier, to watch the Lhasa forces. The combined forces of Lhasa and China now marched on Rudok under the leadership of one of the Shape; and Zorwar Sing, whose contempt for the Tibetan soldiery was great, and who underrated the strength of the forces opposed to him, sent some small detachments of his troops to oppose their advance. These were cut to pieces, when he himself, at the head of his troops, advanced to encounter the Lhasa forces. The two armies fought for two days and nights without any decisive result, but on the third day the Sikh general fell, and victory declared itself for the lamas. The defeat was complete, and the number of slain on both sides immense. The victorious troops now threatened Ladak, and the Maharaja sued for peace. A treaty was concluded by the agent of Golab Sing and the Government of Lhasa, of which one of the terms was the payment of a triennial tribute.

* The northern part of Tibet, inhabited by a few pastoral tribes only.—(W. R.)

Talking with the Kusho Tung-chen of the severity of the punishment inflicted yesterday on the Djongpon of Shigatse and the circle headmen (*tsog-pon*), he told me that, besides those mentioned above, the Djongpon had had the flesh and skin stripped off their hands. The tsog-pon had offered to pay the mandarin Rs. 2000 a-piece to escape the 400 blows of the bamboo, but the Chinese had been inexorable.

December 14.—The Tung-chen sent me one of his acquaintances, Norpu Tondub, a Donnyer of Dongtse, with a request that I would let him have some medicine, as he was suffering from dyspepsia. At first I refused, as I had but very few drugs with me, and only in quantity sufficient for myself; but, the Tung-chen insisting, I took my medicine-chest with me and went to his house. Lifting up the lid, I displayed the various bottles with their sparkling contents, the secretary, his friends, and the servants all looking on with amazement, while Norpu Tondub, at the very sight of the bottles, seemed to become certain of recovery, and said he would pay as much money as I might ask. I replied that even then I could not let him have any medicine, as no amount of money could get me a fresh supply of drugs from India once these finished, for the passes were all closed by the Tibetan Government. At this the Tung-chen looked anxious, so I opened one of the bottles and called for a china cup, and three or four persons ran to the kitchen and brought me half a dozen large and small ones. I weighed the medicine in my brass balance; the drams and scruples, which glittered like gold coins, perplexed them much, as they thought I was a miracle-worker who used gold coins for weights. I now told them that the two medicines when mixed would boil. The very announcement of this filled the spectators with mute amazement, and made the patient tremble with fear; he looked at the Tung-chen and then to heaven with anxiety, evidently repenting him for having pressed me for medicine, and seemed anxious to escape from my hands. The secretary, too, looked aghast; but the medicines were mixed, and to his mind they were too valuable to be thrown away; so, having examined if the two mixtures were hot, and finding that they were not, he encouraged the patient, saying that I was a great physician, and he had no cause to apprehend danger from my hands. I told the patient that he could depend on me that I was not going to administer poison to him, and to be ready to take the draught as soon as it frothed up. All waited with eager expectation

to see the phenomenon, when lo! the mixture foamed with a hissing noise, which made the patient shrink back. I told him to dip his finger in the boiling mixture; and when he found it cold he uttered the mystic sentence, "*Om mani padme hum*," and swallowed it, and said it was agreeable and refreshing. He then drew from the breast of his gown a *khatag* and a few coins, and offered them to me, laying the scarf on the ground before me. "Great physician," he said, "accept this little token of my gratitude, though it is not worthy of your acceptance. Considering, however, that you are a pious man to whom money is of no value, I venture to hope you will accept it." I declined the money, but at the request of the Tung-chen accepted the scarf. With looks of open-mouthed astonishment and feelings of endless admiration for the marvellous properties of the medicine and for the wonderful *amchi* (physician) who disdained money, the little circle of spectators returned to their houses and work.

The punishment of the Djongpon had filled the people with fear of the Chinese. They apprehended new insults at the hands of the Chinese swaggering about the streets of Shigatse. People who had come to the market from a distance to sell their goods were packing them up to hurry off home. No provisions could be had, no purchases could be made. Ugyen met some grain-dealers whom he knew, and begged them to sell him some rice, but none would acknowledge even that they had any for sale. An old woman who had sold us rice on our first visit here said, "Do not talk of rice before the Chinese and their friends, for they will come and take what I have away and throw some bad coins in my cloth. Come in an hour or two, when the rascals have gone away, and I will let you have what you want." On one side of the market-place is a large *zakhang*, or restaurant, where Phurchung and Ugyen went to appease their hunger. While they were busy with their chopsticks the proprietor came in. He was a nobleman of Tashilhunpo, head of the Tondub Khangsar family, and held the office of Chyangjob of the Tashi lama. He asked Ugyen whence he had come, where he had put up, and what merchandise (*chong*) he had for sale. The lady, under whose immediate supervision this establishment is, is no less a personage than the wife of this dignitary. Her manners were gentle and dignified, and she spoke in a sweet and polite manner. Her head-dress was covered with innumerable strings of pearls, worth certainly not less than Rs. 3000, and besides these there were on it coral beads, rubies, turquoises, and

other precious stones. Although she belongs to one of the richest and noblest families in Tsang (Ulterior Tibet), besides being connected with the family from which the Tashi lama has sprung, yet she does not feel it beneath her dignity to keep the accounts of the inn and superintend the work of the servants.

December 15.—To-day was the twenty-fifth of the tenth Tibetan moon, and one of the greatest holidays of the Gelugpa Church, being the anniversary of the death of Tsongkhapa. It is known as *Gadan namchoi.* In every chapel new *torma* * of *tsamba* take the place of the old ones, which are now thrown away.

Late in the afternoon the Mongol monk Lobzang tanzing, to whom I have previously referred, came to pay me his respects, and presented me a long *khatag* and the carcass of a large sheep. He had only a few days before been released from a two-months' imprisonment, under suspicion of being implicated in a case of forgery, and had been repeatedly flogged. His tutor had been sentenced to three years of imprisonment, and had been sent to the prison of Khamba djong.

In the evening the monks of Tashilhunpo busied themselves illuminating their chapels. Hundreds of butter-lamps were tastefully placed in rows on the roof of every building in the lamasery. The Government supplies butter to every house in the town and to every resident monk, to enable them to contribute towards the illumination. From the roof of my house I saw the illuminations to great advantage. The fantastic roofs of the four tombs (*gyophig*) of the Tashi lamas were beautifully lit up. The mitre-shaped spires, the upturned eaves of the temple looked most gorgeous, and resembled the illuminated tajiahs in a mohurum procession in India. The great monastery of Tashilhunpo, situated as it is at the foot of a hill, presented a magnificent appearance. For an hour the illumination was beautiful, but towards 7.30 o'clock the wind began to blow a gale, and had soon extinguished all the lights and driven me into my house shivering with cold.

One of the newly incarnated lamas of Tashilhunpo, who had just arrived from the province of Tu-kham, in Eastern Tibet,† took advantage

* A *torma* is a small cone varying in height from a few inches to a foot and more, made of tsamba, butter, sugar, etc. Sometimes the surface is coloured, and some tormas are of great size. They are placed on the front of the altars in rows, and are propitiatory offerings. On the celebration of this feast, cf. *J.R.A.S.*, vol. xxiii. (1891), p. 214.—(W. R.)

† Tu-Kham is probably Stod Khams, or "Upper Khamdo"—in all probability Dérgé is meant.—(W. R.)

of to-day being a holiday to get himself admitted into the tu-kham tsan order of monks. He invited the Panchen from Kun-khyab ling, and presented to 3800 monks a *tanka* each, making also large presents to the Grand Lama (of Lhasa ?), his court, and the College of Incarnate Lamas. At about 8 a.m. his holiness, the Panchen,* arrived, and was received with due honours by the monks and State officials. The road for about 300 yards was lined with red broadcloth and banners. Some old lamas stood in a profoundly reverential attitude on either side of the road, bearing divers sacred objects to receive the Panchen's *chyag-wang* (blessing †). Chinese trumpets, melodious flutes (*gyaling*), and great resounding horns (*dung ch'en*) sounded in his honour. He took his seat on an altar in the grand hall of worship (*Tso khang*), to preside over the inaugural ceremonies. By 10 o'clock the ceremony was over, and we saw the monks returning cheerfully to their cells, each bearing a large flat cake, sticks of candy, and strings of beads. The new incarnation, now admitted as a novice in Tashilhunpo, had gone through the usual course of moral discipline and study like any other monk. Within a year from the date of admission, every monk is required to pass an examination in selections from the sacred books, of which he must repeat from memory, and without a single mistake, 125 leaves. Candidates coming from outside Tibet are generally allowed three years to prepare for their final admission, which gives them the privileges of a resident monk, with an allowance of food. Any one failing to pass the final examination forfeits his rights to residence and his allowances. Once admitted, the monk may rise, by dint of industry and study, to the various degrees of lamahood.‡

* During his first visit to Tashilhunpo, Chandra Das was received by the Panchen rinpoche. He describes him as follows: "The Grand Lama is twenty-six years of age, of a spare frame and middling stature. He has a remarkably broad forehead and large eyes, slightly oblique. The expression of his face, although highly intelligent, is not engaging, and lacks that sympathy and dignity so conspicuous in the minister's countenance. The old monks of Tashilhunpo informed me that, unlike his predecessor, the present Grand Lama was more feared than liked, on account of his cold and self-reliant spirit. He is strict in the observance of ceremonies and in the administration of justice, and slow to forgive." Kun-kyab ling is the name of the residence of the Panchen lama, the great lama of Tashilhunpo.—(W. R.)

† Bogle thus describes the ceremony of blessing by the Panchen rinpoche: "Upon the gylongs, or laymen of very high rank, he lays his palm; the nuns (*anni*) and inferior laymen have a cloth interposed between his hand and their heads; and the lower class of people are touched, as they pass by, with the tassel which he holds in his hands."—C. R. Markham, 'Narrative of the Mission of Geo. Bogle,' p. 85.

‡ For further details on the subject see S. C. D.'s 'Indian Pundits in the Land of Snow,' and Waddell, 'Buddhism of Tibet,' p. 173.

At noon there was a large crowd between Tashilhunpo and the Shigatse *djong* (fort)—men and women in holiday dress, monks from the lamaseries, and not a few Chinese, to witness the annual rope-dancing. A long rope was stretched from the top of the fort to the foot of the lower castle bridge, a distance of 300 feet or more. Then

KANDRO YE-SHES. PADMA SAMBHAVA. LHA-CHAM MANDARASA.

an athlete appeared, a white *khatag* tied around his neck, and took his place at the upper end of the rope. With his face turned upwards, he invoked the gods; then, looking downwards, he invoked the *nagas* of the nether world, raising his voice to its highest pitch, and at times shrieking in a terrific manner. Then he scattered flour on all sides,

and sang a snatch of a song, to which some one in the crowd sang out a laughable reply. He then let himself slide down the rope, exchanging jokes thrice with the crowd on his way down, and finishing with a shriek.*

Phurchung and Ugyen, whom I had sent out to buy books for me, returned towards 2 o'clock with a quantity, and later on, while I was sitting making my choice of volumes, the bookseller's son came in to carry back those I did not require. I had a talk with him about different books, and he gave me some very interesting information.

I engaged also, to-day, a new cook in place of Phurchung, whom I proposed sending to Khamba djong to arrange for the conveyance from the Lachan barrier to Khamba of the lithographic press bought for the minister.

December 16.—Getting up from bed at 7 a.m., I spread two mattresses on the third floor, opened the shutters, and, while basking in the sun and sipping tea placed on a little table before me, began to turn over the leaves of one of my newly purchased volumes. The residents of the neighbouring houses peeped out from their windows to observe my manners and habits. Henceforth I was careful to conduct myself like a good *gelong* (priest). Reading attentively, writing and making notes was the chief occupation of my days. It was not my habit to chant *mantras*, or hymns, or say my beads, for in the former practice I was never proficient, and with my beads I could only separate one bead from another without any knowledge of the prayers meant to accompany that mechanical action.

The new cook has proved no improvement on Phurchung; he is a sloven, and though I promised him a reward for cleanliness, he neither washed his face nor cleaned his teeth,† and always smelled most offensively. Finally I got Phurchung to make him wash his clothes and face. Our breakfast usually consisted of a few pieces of bread, tea, and one or two cups of a thin paste made of boiled *tsamba*, mutton, and dried milk, and called *yatug*. In the evening I met the Tung-chen, the minister's secretary, and talked to him about getting the lithographic press here. Two of his friends were sitting with

* W. Moorcroft, 'Travels in the Himalayan Provinces,' i. 17, describes this feast as witnessed in Kashmir. It is there called *Barat*, and is celebrated to avert impending evil. Chinese authors say it is celebrated at Lhasa a few days after the New Year. See *J.R.A.S.*, vol. xxiii. (1891), p. 209.

† Tibetan cooks have invariably soot-covered faces; this seems as indispensable a part of their make-up as the white cap is to the French *chef*.—(W. R.)

him, one of them engaged in munching a piece of boiled mutton. He told me that the Tung-chen had toothache, caused by worms in the root of a tooth, and could only eat hashed or pounded meat. The secretary showed me the cavities made, he said, by thread-shaped worms (*ringpa*). He had killed several, he added, by inserting red-hot pins in the cavities.*

December 17.—A messenger arrived from Dongtse with a letter from the minister asking Uygen and me to come to Dongtse, a distance of about 40 miles, which town he was unable to leave, for various reasons, for some time to come. Before leaving I was anxious to start off Phurchung for Khamba djong, and also to get winter clothes for myself, as the cold was getting keener every day. Our house, like all houses in Tibet, had no chimney, and as the ceiling was covered with fine Chinese satin, dung-fuel was most objectionable, so I had charcoal burnt in the room in nicely made earthen stoves (*jalang*), paying about a rupee four annas a *maund* weight.

At about noon a great procession arrived from Dechan Phodang † to pay homage before the image of the Emperor of China kept in the monastery. From the roof of the minister's house I commanded an excellent view of the southern and western quarters of the town. The Tung-chen told me that to-day was a Chinese holiday, the anniversary of their present Emperor's accession to the throne, when all Chinese and subjects of the Emperor are required to offer him homage and to pray to Heaven for his long life and prosperity. Within the monastery there exists an image of the Emperor of China, probably Chien-lung, to pay reverence to which the procession I now saw, headed by the Lhasa Shape, the Ambans, the Shape Bora of Tsang, was now advancing. Flag-bearers and a mounted troop came first, then Tibetan officials, in their best apparel of brocaded satin (*kinkab*), painted with the dragon of the Tartars, and Chinese satins of various colours and patterns, riding on richly caparisoned ponies, were marching slowly and solemnly towards the western gate of the monastery. The Chinese were conspicuous by their pigtails and petticoats, and, though very well dressed, were all black and

* This idea is common to Chinese, Mongols, and Tibetans, among whom "A worm has bored a hole in my tooth" is equivalent to "I have a cavity in my tooth." The extraction of the dead nerve confirms them in the idea.—(W. R.)

† In the narrative of his first journey, Chandra Das says this is the Panchen rinpoche's summer residence. There is no image of the Emperor, but an imperial tablet and a throne, or chair of state.—(W. R.)

of villainous appearance, greatly contrasting with the respectable Tibetan gentry, which forced me to think that they were all recruited from low-class people from Western China; and the Tung-chen told me that these men were noted in Tibet for their dissipated and licentious habits.

Some men carried boards about two feet square, on which were written the Amban's titles and his commission to supreme authority over the whole of Tibet.* Some of these inscriptions were in Chinese, and were carried by Chinamen; others, in the Tibetan language, were carried by Tibetans. The Shape also rode, their advance heralded by two men who warned passers-by to keep out of the way. Each was escorted by three mounted men, one on either side of him, and one marching in front, keeping off the crowd with whips, which they freely used, while two grooms ran behind holding his horse's tail. There were about three hundred dignitaries and gentlemen of the provinces of U and Tsang, besides the followers and retainers of the Ambans. The Ambans' sedan chairs were carried by eight Chinese soldiers to each, and some fifty Tibetan soldiers helped to drag them with long cords attached to the bars of the chairs.† After paying homage at the sacred chapels and tombs of the departed saints, the procession came out of the monastery by the eastern gate, and, headed by the Shape Bora, marched across the market-place towards Kun-khyab ling. First came the officers of state, then followed the paymaster's (*Pogpon* ‡) party, then the Chinese officials, followed by the chief Amban in his state chair. The flags, carried in tasteful array, were all of China silk, those at the point of the lances of the guard being of brocade, and inscribed in Chinese and Tibetan. Throughout the march the Tibetans occupied a subordinate position, and the Chinese displayed their superiority in every possible way. Though the crowd had reason to fear a whipping from the Chinese, who ran on all sides, they did not suffer from the Amban's guard. The junior Amban, as he followed on horseback, seemed pleased to

* Such tablets are always carried in official processions in China.—(W. R.)

† This is known in China as *la chiao*, "to drag the chair." It is rather a mark of respect to the official being carried in the chair than assistance to the bearers. It is a form of *corvée* throughout the empire. In Tibet the Emperor's representatives and the Tale lama and Panchen rinpoche alone have the right to be carried in green sedan chairs.—(W. R.)

‡ *Spogs-dpon.* Spogs (pron. *pog*) means "salary of officials," and more especially that allowed lamas by Government or the monastic authorities."—(W. R.)

see the heavily chained prisoners, the recently punished headmen groaning under the weight of their cangues. His sedan chair was carried by the same number of soldiers as that of the senior Amban, and his retinue and followers resembled his. Then came the other Shape with their respective retinues. The guards were all armed with Chinese matchlocks and long spears. Following them came the captains and lieutenants of the army, with a hundred men; and behind these marched the yellow and black turbaned officers of Labrang and the Djong. The Ambans were received by his Holiness, the Panchen, with due honours, and they paid him the reverence due to his exalted position and holy character.

In the evening I saw the Tung-chen, who gave me a very valuable manuscript entitled *Dsamling gyeshe*, or "General account of the world." * I carried it off with me to my house to read.

December 18.—The Tung-chen sent one of his storekeepers, Tsering-tashi by name, to Tondub Khangsar to get a passport (*lam-yig*) to enable me to send Phurchung to Khamba djong and Lachan, to bring here our heavy luggage. The tailor came at 7 o'clock this morning to begin work on my winter clothes. We kept ready for him a kettle of tea on an earthen stove. A cup, a few pieces of boiled mutton, and a wooden bowl filled with tsamba remained all the time before him, and he drank some tea every hour or so, making also three meals a day. His breakfast consisted of mutton, *tsamba*, and tea; at noon we gave him a dish of rice and mutton curry, *tsamba*, and tea; and at 6 o'clock he ate a few balls of *tsamba*, put on his yellow turban (*bakto*), and, making a low bow, walked off towards his home at Tashi-gyantsa. I was much pleased with his steady work, which had earned for him the proud title of Uje chenpo, or "head craftsman," † and secured for him a *tanka* a day wages, exclusive of food.

December 19.—Tsering-tashi was despatched again after the passport. The delay in securing it was occasioned by the Tung-chen not having tipped the clerks and officials who had charge of the

* Chandra Das has given a translation of an extract from this work in the *Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal*, vol. lv. pp. 201–203, and in part vii. of his 'Narrative of a Journey round Lake Yamdo' (Palti), pp. 117–130. Though full of interesting details, it has been thought advisable to omit it from the present work, most of the Tibetan names of places being still unidentified. He says the work is by Lama Tsanpo Nomenkhan, of Amdo.—(W. R.)

† Or rather "master-tailor," *Wu-jé* (*Dwu-rje*) *tsem-po* on Tashi-gyantsa, see *infra*, p. 67.—(W. R.)

matter. The senior Amban started to-day for Lhasa *viâ* Gyantse and Nangartse djong. All the ponies of Shigatse had been requisitioned to supply his numerous retinue with riding and pack animals, so the junior Amban and the Shape could not get off for want of *ula*, and the local authorities of Gyantse were ordered to supply what they could to them as soon as the senior Amban reached their place. In the meanwhile the Chinese were strolling about the Shigatse market, carrying off the best of everything, paying nothing, or only a nominal price for the things they took. People coming into town saw their ponies seized by the *ta-u* officers for the Amban's service, and started off with loads to Gyantse. My men could buy nothing, for most of the people had packed up their wares and fled; but they managed to purchase some mutton and rice inside the monastery, and we found out that good things could be had there at comparatively moderate prices.

December 20.—I passed most of my day reading a collection of hymns, the composition of the second Dalai lama,* which I had bought from a Lhasan bookseller. To-day there arrived five men from Gyantse, whose advent was at once detected by the Rogyabas, for these pests are always on the look-out for new-comers, whom they at once surround with clamorous solicitations for alms. Few can escape from their hands without paying them something. As soon as the Rogyabas saw these Gyantse men, they informed all the fraternity of the new prey, on which vulture-like they pounced. Well do they deserve their name, which means "corpse-vultures," though, to speak the truth, they prey on the living.† These Gyantse men brought news about the orders issued by the Lhasa Government stopping the egress and ingress of all traders at the frontier passes. The two Djongpon of Phagri were busy executing these orders; no one, it was said, had eluded their vigilance and reached Darjiling. Even some Bhutanese traders on their way to Lhasa were stopped at Phagri; but another party of these people had started

* The second Tale lama was known by the name of Gedun-gyatso. Born in 1476.—(W. R.)

† Our author says their name is written Rogyo-pa, meaning "corpse-vulture." According to Jaeschke, the "vulture" is *go-vo*, while *ro* means "corpse." Further on (p. 163) S. C. D. calls them *ragyabas*, and tells us that their houses (at Lhasa at all events) must have walls made of horns. From the fact that "horn" in Tibetan is *ra-cho*, we might suppose that the name of this class of people is *Ra-cho-pa*, "the horny ones." I have never met with the name in writing.—(W. R.)

out, in defiance of the Djongpon, for Lhasa. The Bhutan Government resented such unusual interference on the part of the Tibetans in a trade which had been carried on from ancient times.

December 21.—To-day is the new moon (*nam-gang*, or "full night"), one of the holiest days of the month. The conch-shells called loudly the lamas to prayers. From break of day to an hour after sunset large numbers of men and women circumambulated the monastery, some carrying strings of beads, others prayer-wheels. Early in the morning the Nepalese, beating cymbals and chanting Sanskrit *mantras*, walked around the great monastery.

Towards 10 o'clock my attention was attracted by an unusual scene to the east of the monastery, where the entire space between the great *mendong* of the market-place and the eastern gateway of Tashilhunpo was filled with beggars, both men and women. Among them were people from Amdo and Khams, whose eyes had been put out for crimes such as murdering lamas; some were cripples and walked with crutches, some in heavy chains and drawn on wheelbarrows, some maimed, others deaf and dumb, others, again, still bearing traces of the torture to which they had been subjected—a vast concourse of misery and pain. In their midst stood the well-known Lhagpa-tsering distributing alms, an anna to each one. For ten years past he had done thus on the first of every moon. The circumstances which led this worthy man to undertake giving alms to the indigent is very remarkable and instructive.

Lhagpa-tsering had been a silversmith, and had by patient work amassed such wealth that he established himself as a jeweller and banker. His business prospered; in his shop were all kinds of goods —fine china, besides pearls, coral, turquoises, and jade; and here came all the great men of the country. He became noted also for his munificent gifts to the lamasery of Tashilhunpo. Some ten years ago there lived at Shang a saintly lama called Chyabtam lama; the purity of his life and his vast learning had made him an object of worship for all classes of people in Tsang. The jeweller Lhagpa, believing that if he made offering to so holy a personage his profits in trade would increase a hundred-fold, went to Shang and offered the lama Rs. 1250, besides numerous objects of value. The saint refused them all, telling him that they represented dishonest earnings, and were the property of a dishonest man. "In a previous existence you were a great sinner, and in your next you will be a crocodile."

On the following morning Lhagpa, filled with horror at his impending fate, came and begged the sage to tell him how he might avert the horrible punishment—what acts of charity, what good deeds would save him; but the lama made no reply. Again the next day he came, and the saint looked in his magic mirror, and said, "If henceforth you give alms to the poor and helpless, of whatever station, creed, or country they may be, on every new moon throughout the year till your death, you will surely get immense wealth, as well as escape from rebirth as a crocodile. There are no other means to save you;" and he sent Lhagpa away without accepting his gifts. Since then he has been in the habit of distributing alms on the first day of the moon. His example has produced a wholesome influence on the merchants of Khams, who now show some hesitation in cheating. A trader, when he cheats others, thinks, as a general rule, if he is a Buddhist, that the amount thus gained was due to him in a previous existence. This is a dangerous principle.

Close to the cemetery of Shigatse, called Kega tsal, is the Chinese graveyard, where there are about three hundred tombs of varying size and very rude construction. At a short distance from this is the parade-ground, about half a mile square, called Jah-hu-tang, and touching it a walled enclosure, used for target practice with bow and gun, in the centre of which is a large house used by the Ambans. On the sides are high towers for the drum-beaters and trumpet-blowers. The headmen of the whole country had assembled here to-day to muster the porters and pack-ponies required by the junior Amban and the Tibetan officials returning to Lhasa. Three hundred ponies were ready, and it was decided that one man should accompany each horse. Orders had been given by the Amban to requisition all the ponies in the province, no matter whether they belonged to subjects, traders, or pilgrims.

December 22.—To-day, at 9 a.m., the junior Amban, with a retinue of 300 men on horseback, left for Lhasa. The owners of the relay ponies followed them on foot, keeping pace with the ponies, or if they lagged behind they were whipped by the men on horseback; so that some dropped out and disappeared, abandoning their property to the Chinese rather than undergo their ill treatment. Of the six village headmen exiled to Re and Khamba djong for their share in the recent trouble, I learnt to-day that one had died on the road, and another is hanging between life and death.

December 23.—To-day the Shape Lhalu and 100 followers, all on horseback, left for Lhasa. The ponies and the men who have to accompany them on the *ula* are treated with great hardship. They have to carry their food with them, as well as provender for their beasts. In the present case they had received but short notice, and are ill prepared for the long journey. This forced service is, however, patiently borne by the people, as it is a recognized custom of the country.

The market to-day received a large supply of pottery from the village of Tanag and Lholing, on the Tsang-po, a few miles north-west of Shigatse. In these localities excellent potter's clay is obtainable, and the people carry on a profitable trade in earthenware with the surrounding districts. The Tanag pottery has not only an extensive sale in Tibet, but in the cis-Himalayan countries as well, where most utensils are of untinned copper, and the Sikkim and Darjiling people use them exclusively in preference to the earthenware made by the Nepalese inhabiting the Lower Himalayas. The Tanag earthenware is carried to the banks of the Tsang-po on donkeys, and there transferred to hide-boats (*kodru*), in which it is brought down to the Patama ferry, about four miles to the north-east of Shigatse. The Patama dealers, who, by the way, raise fine crops on the alluvial soil along the river banks, and make a good deal of money by fishing and ferrying, carry the earthenware to Shigatse on donkeys that jog slowly along the road to the jingle of big bells fastened around their necks. The Lholing pottery is brought to Shigatse *viâ* Tanag; this locality manufactures very large vessels for keeping wine or water in, and so heavy that two men can hardly lift them. The Tanag pottery is so highly glazed that it compares favourably with the Chinese and European earthenware sold in the Calcutta shops.*

There were on the market-place many wildly dressed Dokpas of the Chang province. The women wore such heavy and fantastic

* I have never seen pottery made in Tibet, but know that no wheel is used. Capt. R. B. Pemberton, in his 'Report on Bootan' (in 'Political Missions to Bootan,' p. 74), gives a minute description of the mode of making pottery among the Butia. He remarks that "a lump of the compost was placed on a flat board, supported on the top of three sticks, and was kneaded from the centre outwards, until an opening had been effected through the mass; the orifice thus made was gradually enlarged by the person who preserved its circular form by walking round the board on which the mass rested. . . . The mass thus prepared formed the upper section of the vessel; and the lower half being wrought by a similar process, the two parts were united together, and the vessel completed." The whole paragraph is very interesting.—(W. R.)

apparel that one who had not before seen them might well be taken aback. From a distance these savages looked as if they wished to imitate the peacock's gaudy plumes in their costume; they had so many beads of glass, coral, amber, and turquoise suspended from their headdress that one could hardly see their faces.

To-day the tailor finished our winter suits, consisting of a Chinese coat (*kwa-tse*) and trousers (*pishu*).* The lambskin lining in all the suits was quite neatly sewed. I was also furnished with a foxskin (*wapa*) cap, made after the Lhasa fashion. Provided with these, I felt well equipped for my journey to Dongtse. To make the linings of the coat, I had bought about sixty fine lamb-skins at a cost of Rs. 7.8. These skins appeared to have been obtained from very young lambs, which must have died shortly after birth, for the cost of a single piece of skin was not more than three or four annas, and as the live lambs would fetch at least double that price, it is not likely that they had been killed for their skins. It is, however, not unusual for the shepherds to kill ewes for the soft skin of their unborn lambs, for they fetch a high price. The demand from China for this kind of lamb-skin has, however, of late years much decreased, and the practice of killing ewes for the purpose of obtaining them is becoming rare.†

In the evening Tsering-tashi brought us the passport from the Tondub Khangar, to enable us to bring our things from Lachan to Tashilhunpo. Though it is customary to issue passports in open covers, this one was enclosed in a letter to the Djongpon of Khamba, and we were therefore unable to know its wording, but feared from this fact that some orders, probably to examine closely our packages, were contained in it. The Tung-chen, however, did not apprehend that any trouble would arise from this fact, but we could not share his confidence.

December 24.—In the morning, after washing, I went upstairs to sit in the sun. The cook brought tea and placed the pot on the stove before me. I had emptied three or four cups, warming my numbed hands against the warm cup, when Dungyig Phurching, a copyist, arrived, and was shortly followed by the Khamba Dungyig.‡ I

* *Kwa-tse* (or *kua-tzŭ*) is a Chinese term for a short riding-jacket. The Tibetans of the better class have adopted this article of Chinese clothing, and also their name for it. I have never heard trousers called anything but *ma-yo* (*smad-gyogs*).—(W. R.)

† Cf. Sam. Turner, *op. cit.*, p. 303.

‡ Or *drung-yig*, "clerk, secretary." Khamba Tungyig means "the clerk from Khams" (or Eastern Tibet).—(W. R.)

received the first with "*chyag-pheb nang-chig*" ("Please come in"), extending my right hand towards him, and, as an additional mark of respect to the latter, I half raised myself from my seat and placed him on my left hand on the same rug on which I was sitting. After an exchange of the usual compliments, he opened a bundle of papers and showed me an almanac he was engaged in copying for the minister.

He said he was sorry that he was unable to copy the manuscript of the *Dsam-ling-gyeshe*, but recommended Dungyig Phurching; and the latter agreed to do the copying at the rate of six leaves for a *tanka*, exclusive of ink and paper.

To-day news arrived of the death of the Tsopon Shanku, one of the six headmen, and the richest among them, punished on account of the late riot. I saw several monks and laymen carrying from the monastery to Shigatse three huge copper caldrons, about five feet in diameter, and I learnt that tea and *tugpa* (a soup of *tsamba*, minced meat, and radishes) were to be prepared in them for the entertainment of upwards of a thousand beggars in honour of the deceased. The caldrons belong to the lamasery, and were loaned for the occasion.

During market-time Ugyen visited a Nepalese (Balpo) * friend in Shigatse, from whom he learnt that Nepalese trade was suffering greatly by the introduction of Calcutta goods on the Tibetan market. "The Balpo traders," he said, "used to make a hundred per centum profit in former times, but nowadays the introduction of Calcutta goods by shorter routes than the Katmandu one we have to follow has caused a great falling off in our profits and the bulk of our trade."

Later on in the day the Tung-chen's men came and told us of the arrangements made for our journey to Dongtse, and that we were to be ready to start on the following morning. As we would only remain at Dongtse a very short while—for the minister was expected to return in a few days to Tashilhunpo—we were told not to take many things with us, and were not to hire donkeys, as we had intended, to carry our luggage. I passed the evening writing letters to send home by Phurchung, who was to start at the same time as we did for the Sikkim frontier.

* They are usually called Peurbu in Tibetan, and by the Chinese these people are known as *Pe-* (or *Pieh-*) *pung-tzu*. They are not to be confounded with the Gorkhas, who are called *Korhka*. Abbé Huc, 'Souvenirs d'un Voyage, etc.,' ii. 267, calls them Péboun. Speaking of those of Lhasa, he says, "Les Péboun sont les seuls ouvriers métallurgistes de Lha-Ssa. C'est dans leur quartier qu'il faut aller chercher les forgerons, les chaudronniers, les plombiers, les étameurs, les fondeurs, les orfévres, les bijoutiers, les mécaniciens, meme les physiciens et les chimistes."—(W. R.) *Balpo*, or properly Palpa, is the chief district in Western Nepal.

CHAPTER III.

JOURNEY TO DONGTSE.

December 26.—We were up early, finishing our letters and getting Phurchung ready for his journey to the Sikkim frontier. After tea I sent Ugyen to the market to buy provisions for our journey, and he brought back a large quantity of *ping*, a piece of mutton, and vegetables, and also purchased some fresh *gya-tug* (vermicelli), of which I had become very fond. Two strong ponies were waiting saddled for us in charge of a groom at the western gateway (*gyalgo*) of the monastery. Our traps and bags being made over to the charge of the Tung-chen's men, we left Tashilhunpo at 3 p.m., and rode off at a gentle trot towards the village of Tashi-gyantsa. The Tung-chen wore his church raiment, and a silk-lined *chosa*,* or clerical hat, covered his head; but as soon as we had reached this village he changed it for a fox-skin cap lined with brown satin. The view of Tashilhunpo from Tashi-gyantsa was most beautiful, and the four gilded tombs of the former Tashi lamas, situated in the middle of the lamasery, blazed in the rays of the sun.†

One approaches Tashi-gyantsa by a lane cut through a hillock some 20 feet high, on top of which the village stands. The alleys are crooked and dirty, the houses of comfortable appearance, are painted with clay in bands of red, black, and blue colour, and surrounded by walls forming a courtyard in front of each. On the left of the road is a neatly constructed *mendong*. The whole village is inhabited by clerks, copyists, painters, and artisans from Tashilhunpo, most of whom get allowances (*pod*) from Labrang. Cattle (*jo*) are plentiful

* *Chos dja.* Probably the yellow-pointed cloth hat with flaps, and ending in a point on either side in front, the usual head-cover of lamas outside their monasteries. Inside the lamaseries all go bareheaded.—(W. R.)

† In the account of his first journey, he says that these "chaits" are on top of the palace of the Tashi lama.

in the village, and as we passed, a few yaks with pack-saddles on their backs were being led off from the village by two tall, savage-looking men dressed in goatskin gowns (*bokhu*). The old people sat in their doorways, warming themselves in the sun, and a caravan of yaks and donkeys had halted at the *chorten* just outside the village.

We passed by Perong shavea, a group of hamlets, in the midst of which is a little garden and a willow grove; then by the village of Deki-rabdan; and when two miles from Tashi-gyantsa we reached the large village of Khara Tedong, the chief of which is a Dahpon (general), lately dismissed from a command at Gartok, near Rudok. Judging from the outward appearance of the houses, the village is prosperous. Passing the villages of Sunapara and Sarsha, and leaving Doring and Semaron on our right, we came, after two miles, to the Num chu, now a nearly dried-up stream, which comes down from the mountains to the north-west of Nartang, which border the plateau-like valley of Chyugpu shung. A little to the east of this stream is the large village of Gyatso-shar, composed of a dozen hamlets forming two or three groups.

At 5 p.m. we reached the village of Chyang chu, about a quarter of a mile from the Num chu, belonging to our friend the minister. To the east of the hamlet is a little garden, and in it a small house called Lobding; here the minister spends a few days during the autumn holidays, and takes the baths. Chyang chu is the birthplace of the Tung-chen, and we put up in his house, at the gate of which were chained two big mastiffs. Two servants assisted us to alight from our ponies, and two held the dogs back while we walked in. The headman of the village, the Deba Shikha,* received us, and recognized me as an old acquaintance. We were conducted to the central room of the upper story, where we found two stuffed seats (*bu-dan*) spread for us. The room, though spacious, was dark and dusty, and a heap of yak-hair bags, resembling Indian *gunnies*, filled a corner of the room. My servant, Lhagpa-sring, spread my khamba rug on the seats, and busied himself fetching our bags and traps from the courtyard. The Deba presently arrived, and begged us to refresh ourselves with tea and *chang*. Lhagpa, looking with peculiar eagerness at the maid-servant who was pouring *chang* in Ugyen's cup, winked at her to fill his cup from her bowl, but to his disappointment she turned away; but shortly after another maid appeared with a large

* Elsewhere he says that *Shikha* means "bailiff."

bowl, and poured out wine to the servants. Then the Deba's wife, with a very pretty jug in her hand, came to serve me, but I declined. After a few minutes dinner was served in tin-lined copper dishes resembling salad-bowls, the first course consisting of minced mutton and *tsamba*. This was followed by minced mutton and vermicelli, the Deba waiting upon me himself, to show me the attention due to a guest from a distant country.

After dinner the Tung-chen, who had taken his meal in a separate room, led me to his mother's room, where old lady Angla * and the Deba's son, Damdul, were sitting around a blazing fire in a stove (*jalang*). The old lady had seen upwards of eighty summers, and her hair was snowy white. I joined the party, which was shortly added to by the entrance of several other members of the household, and we sat drinking tea and talking of the sacred cities of India, of Vajrashena, Varanasi, and Kapilavastu, and the state of Buddhism in modern India. Angla sighed repeatedly when she heard that all their sacred places in India were now in ruins. I then gave her a short history of ancient India and Tibet, which delighted the whole party, and the Tung-chen expressed himself highly pleased with my narrative. Before taking leave for the night of my kind host, I presented the Tung-chen with a couple of rupees, and his mother with one. They very reluctantly accepted them, saying, however, that as it was their duty to please me, they would not deny me the pleasure of making them presents. Lhagpa led me to my bed, which was spread in a corner of the room where we had dined; and the Deba, coming in to see if I was comfortable, found my wraps rather light, and brought me two thick blankets, in which my servant wrapped me up.

December 26.—The Deba has a dozen *jomo* and cows yielding plenty of milk. A *jomo* yields four times the quantity of milk which a cow or female yak gives. The *di* yak cow, which pastures on mountain-tops, yields ordinarily two *seers* of milk a day, is not much prized, though yak milk is both sweet and wholesome; but the Tibetans value very highly the *jo*, which is, besides a good milker, most useful in husbandry.

* The syllable *la*, here and throughout this narrative, whenever it is a suffix to a name of a person, forms no part of the name, but is only an honorific expletive. It is even used after titles, as Ponbo la, Pundib la, Lhacham la, Kusho la, etc. Chandra Das hardly ever gives the names of the Tibetans he refers to in his narrative, because a person's name is never used when he or she is addressed, nor is it but rarely mentioned. He probably never heard the names of most of the people of whom he speaks.—(W. R.)

The women of the house were up by four and busy milking and churning. The village looked from afar like one big house, but it is in reality composed of a number of houses, each with a courtyard in front. The place is vulgarly called the "Anthill" (*Dog tsang* *), on account of the great number of serfs inhabiting it. After breakfast, which consisted of boiled mutton, minced radish, and *pa-tug*, or balls of flour cooked in mutton broth, we mounted our ponies and started off.

To the south-west of Gyatsho-shar † is the plateau of Chyugpu Shung, dotted with numerous hamlets, chief of which is Lhena djong. About two miles from Chyang chu is Norgya Nangpa, with numerous hamlets surrounding it, and one mile and a half to the east of Norgya, where the valley approaches the edge of the mountains to the south, is Kena,‡ composed of a dozen hamlets. The houses of Kena are well built and prosperous looking, the door-frames and windows showing considerable taste, and the walls of most of them painted with long blue and red stripes, the favourite colours of the Tibetans. From Kena the mountains of Pankor-shornub, § notorious as a lair of brigands, were clearly discernible, and far to the east, across the Nyang chu, we could just discern the village of Sanga-ling. At Kena we crossed, by a culvert some fifteen feet long, an irrigation canal which comes down from Nyang chu. From this point our way lay over a barren plateau more than two miles broad; in the upper part of it are several villages, in the largest of which is the Shalu monastery. A little above the junction of the Shalu with the Nyang chu stands the hamlet of Chuta Chyangma, three or four dilapidated mud hovels, the ground everywhere overgrown with thistles and briars. Here, we were told, the Grand Lama's ‖ camels are pastured in winter. The Nyang chu flows here in several channels, and some cranes were seeking for food in the ice along the banks.

Going south-eastward for nearly two miles and a half, we reached a fertile tract of land, in which stand the villages of Panam-gang, Jorgya, Pishi, Penagangdo, and Natog,¶ which, we were told, belonged

* Written *grog tsang*, or *grog-ma tsang*.—(W. R.)

† Or Eastern (*shar*) gyatso.—(W. R.)

‡ Kye-na of the map.—(W. R.)

§ Probably Shornub is *shar*, "east;" *nub*, "west."—(W. R.)

‖ By "Grand Lama" the author means the Panchen Rinpoche or Teshu lama of Tashilhunpo.

¶ Called on the map Gang, Jor-gya, Patshal, Pen jang. Natog does not appear on it. On p. 74 he calls Penagangdo, Penjang, and Pishi, Patal.—(W. R.)

to Hamdang Kam-tsan of Tashilhunpo. At Jorgya, which belongs to the Djongpon of Pagri, the same who stopped Sir Richard Temple near Chumbi, there is an irrigation canal running from the Nyang chu, and on its bank is a beautiful garden bordered with poplars, willows, and other fine trees. Its walks are tastefully laid out, and the two-storied building in its centre is the finest one this side of Tashilhunpo. In the principal lane of this village is a deep well

CHANG-SA RGYAB-PA, WINE-DRINKING CONCLUDING WEDDING CEREMONIES.

about four or five feet in circumference at the mouth, and a number of women were drawing water from it in sheep's paunches.

A short distance beyond Jorgya we came to Pishi Mani Lhakhang in a grove of poplars and willows, with a large orchard and several hamlets close by. This place, which belongs to the Pishi Deba, is famous for its manufacture of a superior quality of serge and broadcloth called *unam.** At the entrance to the Mani Lhakhang, a

* I have never heard of *unam;* but *gonam* (*sgo snam* ?) is the name generally given to serges and foreign (Russian) broadcloth.—(W. R.)

chorten-shaped edifice, are rows of drum-shaped prayer-wheels.* Five furlongs farther on we passed through Panam-doi,† and two miles beyond this place we came to the village of Taugang (or Tagong). The trail—for there is no regular road—then led by Patsal, Belung, to Penjang, from which village we could see, on the hillside beyond the Nyang chu, the large monastery of Kadong. We were now in the district of Panam,‡ said to be very fertile, and to this the numerous hamlets scattered about give testimony. A mile to the south of Tagong we came to Tashigang, around which there is no vegetation, not a blade of grass nor a tree, nothing but sand and gravel. Here we were to spend the night. We were kindly received by an old lady, Angputi by name, and shown by the servant up a flight of stone steps to the top floor, where rugs were spread for us. Angputi had a headdress (*patug*) studded with flawed turquoises and faded coral; she had worn it, she said, for nearly twenty years, and purposed leaving it as a legacy to her second son. Shortly after we were seated, her daughter, a nun who had lately arrived on leave from her convent, brought us a kettle of tea and two wooden bowls of *tsamba*.§ The Tung-chen was given the room the minister uses when travelling along this road. It was provided with curtains, silk-covered ceiling, some nice tables, and had in it several volumes of *Yum* scriptures,‖ a small chapel, two dozen bells, oblation cups, a sofa-like altar, and a number of pictures. The rugs in this room were made of the finest Panam wool, and were the best articles of furniture in the house. After drinking tea, the hostess brought me some boiled and dried mutton, *tsamba*, and tea. This kind of present is usually offered to guests on their arrival in a house, and is called *solichi*,¶ or "first show."

* A mani lhakhang is usually a *chorten* around which are, under covered galleries, rows of large prayer-wheels, or rather prayer-barrels. I have never seen any temple attached to such structures; but the *chortens* are hollow, with an opening at the base by which clay *tsa-tsa* offerings can be put in the monument.—(W. R.)

† Doi of the maps.—(W. R.)

‡ Penam jong of the maps. Cf. Captain Turner, *op. cit.*, 229 (he calls it Painam), and C. R. Markham, *op. cit.*, 78, where Bogle also refers to it as Painam.—(W. R.)

§ In Tibet a married woman is called *chang-ma*, or "wine companion." One of her principal duties is to present wine to her friends and guests. It is to avoid this duty that many women enter monastic life (S. C. D.). I think S. C. D. was misinformed. A wife is called *chung-ma*, not *chang-ma*. *Chung* means "little," and *ma* "mother." —(W. R.)

‖ The metaphysical portion of the Tibetan Buddhist scriptures, called in Sanskrit Abhidharma.—(W. R.)

¶ Or *gsol gchig*, i.e. "first meal."—(W. R.)

December 27.—Leaving the Tashigang valley, we came to the foot of the range which here borders the left bank of the Nyang. Two and a half miles to the south-west (east ?) there is a precipice called Ritong, where some twenty years ago two generals of Lhasa were murdered by the usurper Gadan Gyahu. At this point we obtained a fine view of the fort of Panam, of Gontai, of Takar, Palri,* and various other monasteries. Up to this point the river banks are overgrown with furze, brambles, and various thorny plants of which it is said camels are very fond.

Two miles to the west (east ?) of this place we came to a large village, called Tsog-chi,† with an imposing castle, formerly the residence of several noted generals, but now the property of one of the chief civil officers (*Dung-khor* ‡) of Lhasa. Close by is Dukpa-nagpa, formerly a town of Sorcerers or Nagpa,§ but now mostly in ruins, and inhabited by only a half-dozen families.

A mile and a half farther on we came to Norpa khyung-djin ("Eagle's Gem" ‖), where there was once an important lamasery of the Karmapa sect. Its ruins crown the hilltop, and the village, of a hundred houses, is scattered along the slope and the base of the hills. Near this place is Nembotong and Pangang.¶

In the upland near Taimen,** a hamlet of three huts, where the wind that sweeps the broad plateau on which this place is built has drifted the sand in long waves, are the villages of Phola and Wangdan. The former place is the birthplace of King Miwang, and the latter is noted for the excellence of its rugs. Due south from Taimen, and at the head of the broad valley which opens between that place and Norpa khyung-djin, is the Gingu la, over which a trail runs to Retoi, or Upper Re, near Iago, and also the fort of Darchung djong.††

A little more than a mile in a southerly direction from Taimen

* Pe li of the maps.—(W. R.)

† Chog-tse of the maps.—(W. R.)

‡ See *J. R. A. S.*, *n.s.*, vol. xxiii. p. 220. The Dung-khors' offices are mostly hereditary. —(W. R.)

§ Nagpa, "enchanters or experts in incantations." See Waddell, *op. cit.*, 475, 483. 'Land of the Lamas,' p. 217.—(W. R.)

‖ Or Norbu khyung hdjin (?), "the precious *garuda*-holder." The garuda (*khyung*) is the king of birds, according to Tibetans.—(W. R.)

¶ Pong kong of the maps.—(W. R.)

** Called Tho-man on the maps.—(W. R.)

†† Ging-gu la, Yá-go, and Tuchung-Jong of the maps.—(W. R.)

brought us to Shar-chyog Aniung, also called Isa.* The poplar and willow groves around it give it a most prosperous appearance. Here we overtook a monk of the Dongtse monastery, sent by the minister to fetch him some books from the Kahdong gomba, near Panam djong. His tall, lithe frame, but poorly covered with torn raiment, his curious boots and headdress, and the bundle of incense-sticks slung like a quiver across his back, evoked smiles from our party as he walked swiftly along, keeping pace with our ponies. Across numerous frozen irrigation ditches, and through various little hamlets of three and four houses, the road led us by Taling, Dao-targe,† and Pangri, to the village of Nesar, where live some twenty families. Just before reaching this place a mad dog ran by, and though it bit an old man and several donkeys, the Tung-chen would not let me shoot it. Nesar has, on the hillside above it, a neatly built temple and a number of small towers, the latter sacred to the sylvan goddesses or Mamos. The images of Shenrezig and Padma Sambhava are painted on the walls of its *mani lhakhang* and on the towers on the hill. A little beyond this village we fell in with four Khambas, each armed with a long, straight sword, who were unquestionably highwaymen. Their dress and features showed them to be natives of Gyarong, in Markham, in the eastern part of Tibet.‡

At 5 o'clock we arrived at Dongtse.§ The monastery where the minister was residing was on a rocky eminence some 300 feet above the village. After walking up several flights of stone steps, we reached the gateway in the now partly ruined wall of the monastery. Near this I was welcomed by the minister's page, and led to the eastern room of his master's apartments, which had been set apart for my use. Before we had finished drinking tea a message came calling me to the minister's presence. With two scarves and a couple of rupees in our hands, we proceeded to the drawing-room, and approached his holiness with profound salutations. He touched

* Called Shar cho ening on the maps. Shar, "east;" chyog (*pyogs*), "quarter." —(W. R.)

† Dowa targya of the map.—(W. R.)

‡ The author is slightly mistaken here. The Gyarong is on the west border of Sze-ch'uan and identical with the Chinese Chin-chuan, while Markham is to the west of the River of Golden Sands (Chin sha chiang), in 29° N. lat., with its capital at Gartok (or Chiang-ka), and is one of the easternmost provinces ruled by Lhasa.—(W. R.)

§ Georgi, 'Alph. Tibet,' p. 450, appears to refer to Dongtse when he says, "Antequam pervenias Kiangse Feudum est Kalonii Prouse, Castellum Vallo minutum, et Aurifodina."—(W. R.)

our heads with his hand, and returned us the scarves we had in the first place presented him, tying them around our necks. His holiness graciously inquired after our health, and asked if we had not suffered great privations and hardships on the way. We gave a brief account of our troubles in the snows and of our miraculous escape at Tashi-rabka. "By the grace of the Three Holies," * I added, "we have overcome all difficulties, and now our delight is boundless in being able to present ourselves at last at your Holiness's feet." The minister expressed his regrets at our sufferings and his pleasure on our safe arrival after an absence of three years. He had to go to prayers, but before leaving he gave orders that all proper attentions be shown us. Large dishes of biscuits, bread, fruit, and meat were then placed before us, and tea was poured into our cups from the minister's own pot, as a mark of his special favour.

December 28.—After we had finished taking tea the page Ka-chan Gopa called us to the minister's presence, to whom we gave a detailed account of our journey. After listening with attention, he observed, "Pundib la, I fail to see why you chose such a dangerous route as that by the Kangla chen and Tashi-rabka, for you had the passport issued to you three years ago by which you were permitted to return to Tsang by way of Khamba djong. Did not the officials at that place treat you well when you passed there on your way back to India?" I replied saying that I had feared that difficulties might have been raised by the Sikkim Durbar at the instance of the Phodang lama, who had of late been making trouble in Sikkim. The minister again remarked that there had been no necessity for our undertaking such a difficult and perilous journey through the Tingri djong country, when we had the Grand Lama's (Panchen Rinpoche's) passport authorizing us to cross the Lachan pass, which was very easy and free from snow. After a short conversation he retired to his contemplation room (oratory).

December 29.—We had an interview with the minister in the *Nihog* † on the roof of the Tsug-la-khang, over which a canopy had

* *Kon-chog sum*, i.e. Buddha, the Law and the Brotherhood (Sangha). Protestant missionaries have, very wrongly, I think, used the word Kon-chog as a translation of our word God, which is as untranslatable into Tibetan as it appears to be into Chinese, unless the Mohammedan expression *Chen chu*, "the real Lord," be used.—(W. R.)

† Or Ngi-hok, an open quadrangle on the roof of a house, enclosed on all sides by walls, in two of which are door-like openings (S. C. D.). Jaeschke explains the word *nyi-yol* by "any screen or shelter from the sun's rays: awning, curtain, parasol, pent-house."

been spread. His holiness said that since last I had been to Tibet he had composed two large volumes on the history of the philosophical schools of Tibet, and that they were now being stereotyped at the Namring monastery. He showed us the manuscript of the second volume, and read us extracts from it.

December 30.—After breakfast Ugyen-gyatso and I went to make obeisance to the deities (*choi jal*), carrying with us a bundle of incense-sticks, two *tankas*' worth of clarified butter, and about a dozen *khatag*, to present as offerings to the gods. Descending a steep ladder, we came to the lobby of the congregation hall (*du-khang*) of the Tsug-la-khang. The portico faced eastward; its painted wooden pillars had capitals most fantastically and picturesquely carved, the walls painted in fresco, with relief images of the sixteen Staviras (*Naten chudug**) gorgeously coloured, but of a much lower style of work than what is seen in India, though the thick coat of varnish which covered them hid their defects, when not examined too closely.

The most remarkable part of the building was the floor made of pebbles, nicely set and smoothly beaten to make a glossy surface.† The *du-khang* is about 25 feet long and 20 broad; the images of the gods were arranged on a beautifully carved wooden and metal altar along the north and south-west side of the building, the principal ones occupying niches. Most of the images were very old, and of gilt-copper, called *ser-zang* ("gilt-copper"), and had been made with much skill. The image of the Lord (*Jovo*) Buddha had been made, the Tung-chen told me, by a great Indian Buddhist in imitation of the great image of Shakya tuba at Lhasa.‡ The founder of the monastery, Je Lha-tsun, once prayed that the gods might send him a skilful artist to make images for the newly built lamasery; and shortly afterwards an Indian visited Dongtse, made this image,

* *Gnas-brtan bchu-drug*, the sixteen highest disciples of the Buddha Gautama.—(W. R.)

† Cf. Captain Sam. Turner, *op. cit.*, 236, and Geo. Bogle (in C. R. Markham's 'Narrative of the Mission, etc.,' 97). Bogle there says, "The floor is of a chalky clay, mixed with small pebbles, and formed into a smooth and very beautiful terrace, which, by the labours of a young gylang, who every morning gets his feet upon two woollen cloths, and exercises himself for three or four hours in skating about the room, will, in the course of fifteen or twenty years, acquire a polish equal to the other floors in the palace, which are not inferior to the finest variegated marble."—(W. R.)

‡ This image is called the Jo-vo. It is in the Lhasa Jokhang, in the centre of the city. See my 'Land of the Lamas,' p. 105, note 2. See also chap. vi. p. 151 of the present narrative.—(W. R.)

and then returned to India. The Tung-chen, when he had told me this, smilingly asked me if I was not a reincarnation of this Indian Buddhist, and I felt proud to hear of my countrymen being so highly admired and venerated. Ugyen-gyatso prostrated himself before every one of the images, and touched with his head their feet or body, and I showed my veneration for these sacred shrines by touching with my head their right hand, to thus receive their *chyag wang* (blessing). My companions muttered *mantras* and made prayers to them, while I felt reverential gratitude to the Supreme Ruler alone, whose merciful providence had brought me safe thus far.

The roof of the *du-khang* is supported by two rows of pillars of wood, on the artistically constructed capitals of which hang shields and quivers full of arrows, the arms of the Dharmaplas,* with which they protect Buddhism against demons and heretics. From the ceiling of the hall hang rich China brocades, with dragons magnificently embroidered on them in gold and silver. Among the various pictures seen here, the most interesting is that of the first Dalai lama, Lobzang-gyatso, in which he is portrayed receiving the kingdom of Tibet from the Mongol conqueror, Gushi Khan. His prime minister, the celebrated Desi Sangye, is seated on his left, and is thanking the magnanimous and liberal prince for his munificent gift on behalf of his thrice holy master. I was also shown the dais reserved for the minister. Opposite it, and at the top of the second row of seats reserved for the monks, is a chair three feet high, on which the head lama of the monastery sits during service. There is accommodation for about eighty monks in this hall, and I was told that service is held in it daily, at which most of the monks are present. They receive a monthly allowance of sixty pounds of barley from the church endowment fund (*labrang gzi*). This they parch and grind themselves, and bring a little supply of it daily with them to the hall in a small bag, to eat with the tea, which is given them three times during each service, and is furnished from the church stores (*labrang djo*). On returning from the *choi jal*, I was called to the minister's, whom I found seated on a satin-covered cushion in the shade of a *nyi-hok* on the roof of the third story of the chief temple of the Tsug-la-khang.

His page (*shabdung*),† Ka-chan Gopa, placed a cup of tea before

* Called in Tibetan Chos-gyong (skyong), "protectors of the doctrine," or Ku na gyalbo, "five great kings." See Emil Schlaginweit, 'Buddhism in Tibet,' p. 157.

† *Dzabs-drung-(pa)*, lit., "one near the feet of." The expression *ku-drung-pa*, "near the body," is also used.—(W. R.)

me, together with some *tsamba*, meat, and twisted sugar-biscuits. The minister raised his cup to his lips, and graciously said, "Drink, Pundit, please" (*Pundib la, sol ja nang*). I at once drank a third of my cup, as etiquette requires, and every time he drank I also took a sip. He made inquiries respecting the lithographic press and the various other articles which I had brought to present to him, and which were now on the way to Tashilhunpo. After dinner he showed me a work he was writing on history, rhetoric, astrology, and photography. The latter section he had composed from notes I had furnished him, in 1879, from Tassinder's 'Manual of Photography,' and I was delighted to see the diagrams he had drawn to represent the various photographic apparatus I had then left with him. He afterwards read to me an account of the ancient controversies between the Brahmans and Buddhists of India.

While we were thus engaged the page informed him that the Dahpon * Phala and Kung Chyang-chan were approaching Dongtse, so we went to the top of the fourth story of the Dongtse choide to see them arrive. The Dahpon being the chief of Dongtse, the monks had to show him due respect. When the party got near the foot of the hill on which the *choide* stands, two monks in full canonicals blew two long copper hautboys (horns?), two others played on a clarionet-like instrument called *gya-ling*; and when the party came to the grove, or *linga*, in front of the castle, the Chya-dso-pa † received them with his band—a gong and two tambourines. The Daphon and his friend rode spirited mules gaudily caparisoned with brocades and tinsel. They were preceded by five sowars, and followed by an equal number, all carrying lances with pennants at their points. The minister told me that of the four Daphons, or commanders of forces in Tsang, two are ordinarily stationed at Shigatse, one at Gyantse, and one at Tengri.

December 31.—I was anxious to take a trip to Gyantse, which Ugyen said was only eight miles distant, and could be reached in two hours. He dissuaded me, however, saying it would not be prudent, as that place is frequented by Bhutia traders from Darjiling and Phagri. At nine I was called in to the minister's, and read a few

* *Mdah-dpon*, "master of the arrow," is a military officer of about the rank of a general; they are given light-blue buttons (4th class) by the Chinese authorities.—(W. R.)

† A Chyan-dso-pa, or Chya-djo-pa (*Phyag-mdjod-pa*), is a civil officer (of 5th class of Chinese official rank) of the treasury.—(W. R.)

sentences of English from the 'Royal Reader No. 1' with him. After this I asked to be allowed to visit the great temple of Gyantse, called the "Palkhor choide." "If you want to visit Gyantse," he replied, "I will arrange it for you; but you must bear in mind that the people of that town are not good. They speak much, and are given to spinning a great deal out of a little. I will have the Tung-chen take you there." Ugyen-gyatso then asked if he might go there, as he wanted to buy me some blankets; and having obtained the minister's authorization, he left at noon.

January 1, 1882.—For about half an hour the minister practised writing the Roman characters on a wooden slate (*chyang-shing*) about two feet long and ten inches broad. A little bag of powdered chalk was tied to it; and when the slate had been washed and dried, the minister rubbed the chalk-bag lightly over the board, and thus covered it with a thin white film. In this he scratched letters with a steel style about a foot long. I told him of the slates we had in India—how much more convenient and neat they were than his rude contrivance. He smiled and said, "My *chyang-shing* is a very nice one; even the great ministers of China use the like;* but they are not clean. And if you can get me a couple of your Indian slates from Calcutta, I shall be much obliged."

January 2.—In the morning preparations were made for a grand reception of the Dahpon Phala and Kung Chyang-chan, the Tsipon.† All the furniture of the room we occupied was replaced by choice articles from the minister's storeroom. Silk drapings and curtains were hung in the waiting-room and lobby, beautiful silk cushions were spread in the minister's drawing-room, and its ceiling made resplendent with a covering of orange-coloured Chinese brocade. Artistically worked dragons appeared everywhere—on the ceiling draperies, on the curtains, and even in the carpets. Handsome dining-tables, three feet by eighteen inches, and two feet high, were placed before each cushioned seat. The minister's seat was placed as usual before a gilt chapel (niche), and three feet above the floor, on his right hand, were seats, two feet high, for his two guests, and to his left two other cushioned seats, about eighteen inches high, for their

* The minister was not correctly informed. So far as I am aware, the Chinese never use this kind of "white board." It is, however, in general use among the Western Mongols, where paper is quite as rare as in most places in Tibet.—(W. R.)

† A Tsípon is an accounting officer, and is assimilated by the Chinese to a 4th class official among them.—(W. R.)

sons. Pretty china cups, painted wooden and gilt metal bowls, were set on the tables, and all the curiosities and ornamental objects the minister had here with him were conspicuously displayed. On the corner of his table was the beautiful stereoscope I had given him in 1879, with some two hundred slides, and in the middle of the table a calendar-watch and some toys I had recently presented him. Different kinds of Tibetan and Chinese dainties were arranged by the head cook, under the Tung-chen's directions, and the minister personally supervised the arrangement of the seats and the decorating of the room. When all was ready I went on to the roof to see the procession arrive. On both the roads leading to the monastery from Dongtse the monks were waiting, bearing a dozen or so flags and musical instruments—two flageolets, a pair of brass hautboys (horns ?), or *dungchen*, two tambourine-like drums, the same number of bells, and a gong.

At 1 o'clock the Dahpon and his friend, the Tsipon, together with their sons, arrived at the Dongtse choide, escorted by the Chya-dso-pa. They were very simply dressed in silk robes, Chinese jackets, soft yellow woollen hats, velvet boots, and silk trousers; from their right (left ?) ear hung long earrings.* The Dahpon appeared to be about thirty years old, the Tsipon a little older.

Arriving before the minister, they thrice prostrated themselves, each time touching their foreheads with their joined palms. The minister touched their heads with the palm of his hand and blessed them, and then they presented him with two pieces of red English broadcloth and a handful of silver coins each.

I was surprised to see such powerful and wealthy chiefs kotow before the minister; but great is the triumph in this country of the Church over the laity, and the greatest ministers of state fall down at the feet of the incarnate lamas!

Dinner was served with great ceremony. As soon as the minister had said grace, all fell to with chopsticks and spoon, and partook of each succeeding course in profound silence. After dinner, tea was served, when at last the silence was broken, conversation began, and the guests were shown the minister's curios, the watches and the stereoscopic views especially interesting them.

In the evening there was a review in the pleasure grove, or *linga*,

* One of these earrings is figured in Hooker's 'Himalayan Journals,' ii. 271. Tibetan men always, I believe, wear their earring in the left ear.—(W. R.)

by the commander of the militia, when exercise in musketry, running, archery, etc., took place in the presence of the two dignitaries.

January 3.—After tea I was asked to read English with the minister. He transliterated the English words phonetically, but did not take the trouble of spelling them, observing that his ordinary duties left him hardly any time to devote to study. He intended asking the Grand Lama to relieve him for a time from his numerous duties in connection with the Church, when he hoped to be able to apply himself assiduously to the study of English.

Breakfast was now brought in, and consisted of a kind of pot-herb, called *pa-tsal*,* cured in the cold draught, potatoes, and radishes, which had been kept in sand underground. I asked the minister if I might go to visit the Palkhor choide of Gyantse with the Tung-chen on the morrow; and having obtained his consent, two ponies were ordered to be ready for an early start.

January 4.—The ponies were ready at an early hour, and after receiving from the minister a few *khatag* to present to the deities of the Palkhor choide, the Tung-chen and I rode off.

Our way lay across fields watered by the Nyang chu. The Nyang chu valley is one of the richest in Tibet, and extends from Shigatse to about 15 miles beyond Gyantse, a distance of from 60 to 70 miles, and has an average breadth of 10, every inch of which is cultivated. Its great natural fertility, and its being so very favourable for the growth of different kinds of millet and pulses, has given the whole district the name of *Nyang*, or "land of delicacies," and the river which fertilizes it has been called Nyang chu,† or "the river of delicious water."

Flocks of wild geese and ducks were swimming on the river, near the bank of which our road now and then led us, and long-billed cranes were stalking along searching for food. From the bushes of furze and other thorny plants with which the river banks were overgrown, hares ‡ leaped out and made off towards the mountain recesses,

* I think the author means *pé-tsé*, the usual Tibetan pronunciation of the Chinese *pai-ts'ai*, and meaning "cabbage." "Cured in the cold draught" is a culinary preparation unknown to me. White potatoes are used all over Tibet; they were introduced into Bhutan in 1774 by Mr. Bogle (see Markham's 'Tibet,' p. 19). Radishes, or rather turnips (*la-pug*, from the Chinese *lo-po*), are usually eaten raw; they are also dried for winter use.—(W. R.)

† A. K. calls it Pena Nang Chu river.—(W. R.)

‡ The Tibetans neither kill nor will they eat hares. All wild fowl are equally safe from their guns.—(W. R.)

and beautiful little birds, probably a variety of kingfisher, were seen fishing in the stream—but the Tung-chen said that though the bird was pretty to look at, it emitted a most offensive odour from its body.

Passing a few villages, we came to a stream flowing into the Nyang chu from the south. Here were two flour-mills, of which we had seen at least a dozen since leaving Shigatse. They were very large, and the stones four times the size of our ordinary millstones in India. In the village of Gyabshi the people seemed very industrious, the women engaged with their looms or spinning, the men tending sheep or collecting fuel from the fields.

When we came within two miles of Gyantse, our attention was attracted by the Tse-chan monastery, the entire north-eastern slope of a hill being closely covered by its whitewashed houses, so that it looked like a great castle of towering height. The Tung-chen told me that this lamasery was nearly eight hundred years old, and that the great reformer Tsong-khapa had spent several years here in the study of metaphysics (*tsan-nyid*). I was also shown the Tinkar la, by which herdsmen travel to the foot of the Lachan pass of Sikkim, this being the shortest route between Gyantse and the latter country.

A few minutes' ride brought us to the bridge over the Nyang chu, a light temporary wooden structure, about twenty feet long and six feet broad, built on the ice which covered the stream.

We entered the town of Gyantse,* passing beside a long *mendong*, on either side of which were dwellings, and by a narrow lane reached the gate of the Gandan Chakhang on the left side of the main street, and facing the great *chorten* of the Palkhor choide.

The Kunyer, or priest, of the Gandan Chakhang, an acquaintance of the Tung-chen, greeted him, and, showing him to a seat, had tea served us. We sent the groom, Lhagpa-rida, to the market to buy arrack, and he there met Ugyen, and told him of our arrival.

* A. K. says of this place (which he reached on August 21, 1878): "Giangche, a small town on the right bank of the Pena Nang Chu river. The town is situated about two small hills which lie east and west, and are united by a saddle; the western hill is further connected with the chain of mountains to the north. On the eastern hill, which is about 600 feet above the surrounding plain, is a large fort, . . . and on the western hill a Gomba inhabited by five hundred Dabas. In this Gomba there is a Chiorten, called Pangon Chiorten, which is considered by the Tibetans a most holy place. Besides the fort and temple, there are about one thousand dwelling-houses on three sides of the double hill. Woollen cloth called Nhambu is manufactured. There is a large market; and traders from Nepal and China reside here." See 'Report on the Explorations in Great Tibet,' by A. K., p. 31.

As we were eating our meal several pilgrims chanting sacred hymns entered the chapel of the Lhakhang, and added some spoonfuls of butter to the lamps. Some of them stared at Ugyen and me, observing to one another that we were strangers from beyond the Himalayas, taking Ugyen for a Sikkimese, but not being able to decide whether I was from Ladak or Besahir.

Ugyen told me of his movements since leaving me at Dongtse on December 31.

He had left Dongtse at noon on December 31, riding one of the Tung-chen's ponies. On the road he met some of the muleteers of the Dongtse Dahpon Phala, who were proceeding to Lhasa with barley, butter, and meat for the use of Bangye-shag, Phala's residence.

Ugyen inquired of them about the state of the road to Lhasa, and the best time to make the journey there. They told him that winter was the best season to travel to Lhasa, for then there was no rain, and one could easily ford the streams and get across the Tsang-po; moreover, feed was cheap, and meat, barley, and wine obtainable everywhere.

The following day (January 1, 1882) Ugyen visited the Gyantse *tom*. This market and the town generally are inferior to Shigatse in importance and in the variety of articles for sale. There were people selling Calcutta and Chinese goods of very inferior quality. He saw fifteen or twenty Nepalese shops and half a dozen pastry shops kept by Chinese. The *tom* (or market-place) is the property of the Palkhor choide, the great monastery of Gyantse, and contributes largely to its maintenance. The monastic authorities also collect rents from the shops in the vicinity of the *tom*, which do not belong to either the Government or landholders (*gerpas*). The barley for sale was inferior to that of Shigatse, as was also the *chang*, which was, however, cheaper than there; and butter and mutton were in larger quantities than at the latter place.

The market only lasts for three hours daily, opening at 10 a.m. Ugyen here saw, for the first time, women selling fresh meat and dried carcasses of sheep and yaks. At Shigatse they never take part with the men in this business.* Some of these women have amassed much wealth by this profession, and wear rich headdresses (*patug*) thickly studded with pearls, amber, and turquoises.

* But women throughout Tibet do most of the selling in the shops and the markets.—(W. R.)

Returning to his lodgings, Ugyen made the acquaintance of a lieutenant, or Dingpon, named Nyima tsering, who was putting up in the same house. Ugyen plied him with *chang*, and when he had become very jolly over it, he questioned him about the military arrangements of Gyantse. The Dingpon stated that there were ordinarily 500 Tibetan soldiers stationed here. This force was divided into two battalions under two Rupon. Under each Rupon were two captains (Gyapon) and four lieutenants, or Dingpon. The commander, or Dahpon, of the Gyantse troops was Tedingpa. Besides these troops there are 50 Chinese soldiers under a Chinese official called *Da-loye*,* and the native militia. The troops both at Gyantse and Shigatse are under the inspection of the Chinese paymaster (*Pogpon*) of Shigatse. Nyima tsering told Ugyen that the Tibetan soldiers were very poorly paid by the Government. The Emperor of China contributes towards their maintenance five rupees per man a year, and the Government of Tibet gives them forty pounds of barley per man a month, but no pay in money, on the ground that they are furnished by the landholders at the rate of one soldier for every *kang* † of land.

The Dingpon and Gyapon receive pay at the rate of thirteen *srang* and twenty-five *srang* a year from the imperial treasury, but no more rations from the Tibetan Government than the soldiers.

The Emperor allows Chinese soldiers serving in Tibet a family allowance of six *srang* a month and sixty pounds of rice per head as subsistence allowance, in addition to their monthly pay of six *srang*.‡ On the next day (January 2) Ugyen surveyed the town and its great monastery, the Palkhor choide. A stone wall nearly two miles and a half long surrounds the town. He estimated its length, by means of his prayer-beads, to be 4500 paces.§ At each pace he dropped a bead

* *Ta Laoyeh* is the honorific appellation claimed by all subordinate Chinese officers in Tibet, from the rank of Pa-tsung (sergeant) to that of Shou-pei, or major. The Chinese officer in command of the post of Gyantse is, I believe, a Chien-tsung, or lieutenant. On the Tibetan military organization, see chap. vii. p. 180.—(W. R.)

† The ordinary *kang* is a measure of land in which about 400 lbs. of seed-grain can be sown. The State tax on each kang is 50 *srang* (or ounces of silver) a year.—(S. C. D.)

‡ On the pay and allowances of the Chinese troops in Tibet, see *J. R. A. S.*, *n.s.* xxiii., p. 276–278. In many places along the route between Lhasa and Tachienlu the Chinese soldiers are never paid in cash, but only receive brick-tea, the value of which is arbitrarily fixed by the paymaster, who cheats the poor devils most disgracefully. A *srang* is an ounce of silver, the chinese *tael*.—(W. R.)

§ Georgi, *op. cit.*, p. 451, says of this town, *Kiangse:* "Civitas præclara et planire ad radius montium. Ad Urbis, præsidium Arx est inædificata rupi, musis, et fossis aquæ

and muttered *om mani padme hum*, and the good people of Gyantse who accompanied him in his circumambulation (*lingkor*) little suspected the nature of the work he was doing. When he reached the foot of a *mendong* called Gojogs, and situated to the north of the Djong, he took the bearing of the Tse-chan monastery, one of the most ancient religious establishments of Tibet. It bore south-west, and was nearly three miles from him. To the north of Gyantse he saw Ritoi gomba, a cloistered lamasery with five or six long houses, each with a large number of cells. To the south-south-east of Gyantse djong is the road to Pagri, in the direction of the Nia-ni monastery and the Niru chu, one of the principal feeders of the Nyang chu, which drains the northern glacier of the Chumo-lha ri mountain. To the north-east of Gyantse the Nyang chu is visible for a great distance, and Ugyen conjectured from its course that it came from the snow-clad Nui-jin kang-sang mountains, which stretch out to the north and north-east. On the uplands to the north of Gyantse, and some three miles away, is the Choilung gomba.

The Chinese cemetery Ugyen found situate at the foot of the hill on which the Djong stands, a little above the high-road to Lhasa, and some three miles from the town. He counted three hundred tombs, some of which appeared very old and dilapidated, but a few quite new.

The castle or Djong of Gyantse stands on the top of a hill nearly 500 feet above the town. It is very strong, and was built by the famous Choigyal rabtan who ruled in the fourteenth century over the province of Nyang, of which Gyantse was the capital. This province was a part of the domain of the Sakhya hierarchs. He had built a long stone-covered way running from the Djong to the foot of the hill, by which he meant to secure a supply of water in time of siege from the three deep wells at the foot of the hill. Ugyen visited these wells, where water-carriers were drawing water in hide buckets attached to a rope about 150 feet long passing over a pulley.

The landlord of the Litophug sub-division of Gyantse told Ugyen that about eighteen years ago the ex-Dewan of Sikkim had come here on some State business, and had put up in the same house in which he was now stopping. One night about fifty sinister-looking Khamba traders suddenly broke into the house, beat him with clubs, tore his earring out of his ear, stripped him of his clothing, carried off

vivæ circumvallata. Cœnobium vero adeo vastum, et magnificum, ut quum millia aliquot Xacaitarum contineat, alterius cujusdam civitatis speciem præreferre videatur."

all his property, and thrashed his servants and forced them to run for their lives. Some of the robbers ran away from Gyantse, taking the Dewan's property, his mules and ponies; but on the following morning, when the matter was brought to the notice of the Djongpon, the chief of the robbers, who had stayed behind, was apprehended. He said that a year previously the Dewan had treated him and his accomplices most harshly during their stay at Chumbi on their way to Darjiling, exacting from them the last *pice* they had in their purses, besides depriving them of all their property to the value of upwards of Rs. 500. The Dewan lost, in his turn, over Rs. 1000 in cash, besides jewellery, clothes, etc.

A well-informed Nyingma lama, the manager of Palri kusho's (an incarnate lama) estate near Panam Jong, came and put up at the house where Ugyen was stopping. He was on his way back from Lhasa, where he had stayed for two or three months after a pilgrimage to the Tsari country. His master was studying sacred literature at Lhasa. He promised to let Ugyen see the books of the Palri library, and to lend them to him on the surety of the minister or his Chyag-dso-pa. He told him, furthermore, that there existed two printed volumes about Choigyal rabtan, the famous king who had founded the Palkhor choide of Gyantse, but that these works and the history of Gyantse were now kept as sealed works (*terchoi*) by the Lhasa Government. Ugyen also learnt from the lama that in the recluses' monastery of Lhari-zim-phug, situated on a wild mountain to the east of Panam djong, there was a complete account of the life and writings of Lama Lha-tsun chenpo, who had introduced Buddhism into Sikkim.*

At this season of the year the climate of Gyantse is very bad, high winds blowing daily, raising dense clouds of dust. The inhabitants spend this time of the year in idleness, having but little to do besides weaving and spinning.

Such was the information that Ugyen gave me to-day.

When we had finished our breakfast we went with the Kunyer of Gandan Lhakhang to perform *choi-jal* at the different shrines of Gyantse. The *chorten* is a splendid edifice of an unique style of architecture. Hitherto I had been under the impression that *chorten* were nothing more than tombs intended solely to contain the remains of departed saints, but now my views became entirely changed. This *chorten* is a lofty temple nine stories high. Ugyen, I, the

* Born in A.D. 1595 in S.E. Tibet (see Waddell, *op. cit.*, p. 4).—(W. R.)

Kunyer, Lhapa-rida, and our servant, Lhagpa-sring, went into the enclosure and entered the shrine with a number of pilgrims and travellers, most of whom seemed to be from Ladak or the Chang-tang. In the service hall, where the priests were assembled for religious service, hundreds of lamps were burning, and incense-sticks were smoking so as to nearly darken the room. We ascended at once to the top story, but the other visitors began their circumambulation from the bottom upwards—the usual practice, though many become so wearied going round and round that they do not reach the uppermost story. The *chorten* is about 100 to 120 feet high, the top covered by a gilt dome, the gilded copper plates of which are so thick that they have withstood centuries of exposure to the weather. The base of this sacred edifice is, we found by actual count, 50 paces square. From the cupola (*pumpa*), immediately under the gilt dome, I had a magnificent view of the town and monasteries and the surrounding hills and distant mountains; their black surface, broken here and there by some white-walled monastery, offered a singularly wild aspect.

There were inside the *chorten* innumerable niches filled with images of Buddhas and saints, and in visiting the various chapels we were required to do so walking from left to right, for this is the Buddhist usage.

On the first floor we were shown the statue of Choigyal rabtan, under whose benign rule Gyantse became famous, and who gave a fresh impulse to Buddhism and literature. The Kunyer of the *chorten* touched our heads with the sword of this illustrious monarch, and said that by his blessing (*jin-lab*) we could triumph over our enemies and enjoy longevity and prosperity in this world.

We were also shown two images of Dorje chang, the supreme Buddha of the Gelupa sect,* one of which was very old and of small size, the other large and very highly burnished. Once on a time, the Grand Lama of Tashilhunpo, visiting the *chorten*, touched the breast of the former image to see if it was warm and full of life, as was popularly said. He soon repented him of his sacrilegious act, confessed his sin, and, to atone for his wrong-doing, had made the large gilt image, which was placed beside the old one.

Returning to the Gandan Lhakhang, we were refreshing ourselves with copious draughts of tea, when the abbot of the Palkhor choide,

* Probably an error for Dorje chyak, *Vadjrapani*.—(W. R.)

with half a dozen disciples, came to make reverence to the great image of the Buddha in the shrine, on whose right and left were images of Tsong-khapa and Maitreya.

The Kunyer remarked to me that I was peculiarly fortunate in having come to Gyantse to-day, as it was the full moon, a sacred day with Buddhists, on which day, and on the day of the new moon, the doors of all the shrines and of the great *chorten* were thrown open to the public.

After an hour's rest I went with the Tung-chen and Ugyen to visit the Palkhor choide. Its grand "temple of learning" (*tsug-la khang*) is a splendid and lofty edifice, the hall lighted by one thousand lamps. On three sides—the north, east, and west—are high niches, in which are huge images of the Buddha and Bodhisattvas. The image of the Buddha is made of copper, heavily gilt. Five hundred monks were engaged in divine service, and some two hundred more were occupied reading the sacred scriptures. No one lifted his eyes to look at us, so strict is the discipline observed here. We were conducted to the great library, the very sight of which filled my mind with feelings of awe and reverence. The books were all old, broad-leaved, and some two to four feet long. I was shown the sacred scriptures, all written in letters of gold.

With what assiduity and devotion the Buddhists perform the sacred duties of their religion, the deep interest they take in the collecting of sacred books and images, and their zealous care in preserving them, can only be realized by visiting such places as this. I was shown some sculptures executed by Indian Buddhists, and some stone images similar to what I had seen at Buddhagaya. The gilt, Indian-made images of the Sravakas, of Saripu, Mudgalputra, Ananda, Kashyapa, and other arhats were of exceeding interest. On each side of the image of Shakya Buddha were four rows of monks, of twenty each, and in front of them burned hundreds of butter-fed lamps. Behind the seats of the monks were drums, each with a long handle; these the monks beat at intervals, and to the accompaniment also of cymbals, brass hautboys (*dung chen*), and clarionets (*gyaling*), they chanted hymns in deep sonorous voices.

When exhausted by continual repetitions of *mantras*, they refreshed themselves with tea. Wine is not brought within the precincts of these Gelugpa monasteries; and, in fact, all drinkers of wine among the monks are expelled from the Gelugpa Church.

In the lobby of the monastery I found a grand collection of stuffed animals, such as the snow-leopard, wild sheep, goat, yak, stag, mastiff, etc., and a Bengal tiger.*

Returning to the Gandan Lhakhang, we visited the second and third floors of that building, where several recluses were reading the sacred books. I was told that when the Tashi lama visited the Palkhor choide, he puts up in this building, and I was shown the raised seat he occupies when here. I also learnt that successful students among the monks of Tashilhunpo are sent here to complete their course of study for the degree of *tom-ram-pa* † (bachelor of sacred literature), which this lamasery alone has the right to confer.

In the portico of the building and underneath its eaves I noticed several sorts of flowering plants in bloom.

At 3 p.m. we left for Dongtse, where we arrived before dusk. The minister's page met me at the foot of the hill, and led me to his master, who made many kind inquiries about my trip. I told him how greatly I had enjoyed it, and that, as it was a holiday, all the buildings, the great *chorten* and the temples, had been open to me. "I rejoice at it," he replied; "and I must say the gods have shown you the way [*lha lam tan song*], for it did not strike me at the time that to-day was a holiday. If you should have put it off till to-morrow, you would have seen but very little."

January 5.—I called on the minister, and talked to him of my visit to Gyantse. He told me that there were half a dozen *chorten* in Tibet like the one I had seen there. There were now, he said, about six hundred monks in the Palkhor choide, and an equal number in the adjacent lamaseries, but in former times there were three thousand monks on the register of the college.

Ugyen-gyatso returned to-day from Gyantse, and told the minister of his experiences there. He had been lodged in Litophug

* In the Lhobrak country lama Ugyen-gyatso visited the celebrated shrine of Seh Guru Chhoi wang, built after the model of the famous monastery of Nalendra, in Magadha. "The shrine . . . contains some important relics, among others a stuffed horse of great sanctity (belonging to the Great Guru), which is called Jamling ninkhore, or 'the horse that can go round the world in a day.' Observing that the horse was bereft of his left leg, U. G. inquired the cause, and was told how the leg had been stolen by a Khamba pilgrim with a view of enchanting the ponies of Kham." See 'Report of Explorations from 1856–86,' p. 23. Probably the objects seen at Gyantse by our author were originally votive offerings, and now simply curios.—(W. R.)

† Probably written *Ston ran-pa*, "one who may teach; a doctor." See 'Indian Pundits in the Land of Snow?' It is probably the same degree as Ge-she.—(W. R.).

in a priest's house, where the master (*nabo*) and mistress (*namo*) showed him great courtesy. Ugyen presented the minister a dozen oranges he had bought in the Gyantse market for one anna each. I told the minister that these oranges came from Sikkim. "Oh, indeed!" he said. "It must be a happy land. In Tibet no oranges mature; at Lhasa there are orange trees producing small fruit, which do not, however, ripen."

In the evening Ugyen told me a tale he had heard from the Chyag-dso-pa of the Palri monastery.

Once on a time Dugpa-kunleg, a famous but eccentric saint of the red-hat school, was staying at Khang-toi shikha, in Lhasa. He saw the wife of his host stealing a piece of amber from the bag of a beggar who was stopping in the house, and putting an apple in its stead into his wallet. The saint told her it was both sinful and criminal to act thus, and related to her the following tale by way of instruction.

In ancient India there lived two friends. One, a highlander, was a dishonest man; the other, a lowlander, was upright and honest. One day the two, while walking in a valley, found a bowl of gold. The lowlander said, "Well, now that fortune has favoured us with a treasure, let us first return thanks to the local divinities, and then divide the gold between us." The other rejoined, "Friend, the day is far advanced; we can do all this to-morrow; let us rather take the bowl home now."

To this the lowlander agreed. The next morning when he called at his friend's house, he found him in a corner wailing and shedding tears. "Ah, friend," he exclaimed, "my heart is filled with grief and shame. How can I tell you! The bowl of gold has been miraculously changed, for this morning I found but sawdust in it. The gods alone know what has become of the treasure! This, I am grieved to say, will put an end to our friendship, for it will create in your mind a suspicion against me." So saying he began weeping afresh.

The other, perceiving his design, said, with wonderful calmness, "Friend, you need not cry. The loss of the treasure is not the greatest mishap which might befall us. If we two continue friends, we should hold ourselves very happy. Chance brought the treasure; chance has taken it away; crying will not bring it back."

The false friend, thinking he had gained his end, soon dried his

tears. Before leaving for his home, the lowlander said, "Friend, I have not mentioned something to you. In my orchard most delicious mangoes and other fruits are now ripe. I have no children to eat them; let your two sons come home with me that I may regale them with the luscious fruits."

To this the other assented, and the two boys accompanied the lowlander home. On his return to his home he bought two monkeys, to which he gave the same names as the boys, and trained them to come when called by their names.

After a while the false friend came to take his boys home, when the other came out crying in a loud and pitiful voice, "Friend, my heart bleeds to have to tell you of the misfortune which has befallen you. Your two darlings have been changed into monkeys!" "How can I believe such a story?" the other replied. "If you doubt it, call your sons, and you will see." So the father called his older son by name, and a monkey came leaping forth, and sat upon his lap, fondling him and chattering to him as if he were an old friend. Filled with surprise, he called his second son, when out came the other monkey, and climbed into his lap also.

After a while the lowlander asked his friend, "How can this have come about? Tell me how it was that the gold was changed into sawdust; it may help to explain this new wonder." The other, fearing lest his sons had been transformed into monkeys by the incantations of the friend he had deceived, replied, "Friend, I deceived you when I said the gold had been turned into sawdust. I have got it with me; we will divide it equally between us. Is it true, my much injured friend, that my sons have been transformed into monkeys?" "Oh no. How could men become monkeys? Your sons are in excellent health, and are now in one of my distant orchards." So the two returned to their houses with their respective treasures—the one with his children, the other with his gold.

Years passed by, and the two friends were finally summoned to the court of the Lord of death, there to have their good and bad acts weighed. Their moral merits and their prayers were also weighed, and the balance turned in their favour. A game of chess was then played by the gods and the demon, in which, by means of casting dice, the merits and demerits of gods and men are determined. In the mirror of *karma* (mundane actions) the two friends saw and blushed for the evil deeds they had done—the gold turned into

sawdust, and the boys into monkeys. The Lord of death decreed that the uplander should pass five hundred years in hell, and that the other should for five hundred existences be born a monkey. The punishment of the latter was the severer in that he had stolen human beings, and said that they had been transformed into monkeys; but because he had desired to make offerings to the gods when the treasure had been found, the gods had pleaded for him.

Having finished his tale, Dugpa kunleg exhorted the woman to keep from stealing, and threatened her with such-like dire punishment if she did not desist. The woman put the amber back in the beggar's bag, and the saint left her house and returned to Lhobrag.

Ugyen also heard at Gyantse that much was to be learnt concerning the ancient history of that place in a work called '*Nyang choi jung Nyimai odser.*' He furthermore told me that he had heard that last year a mendicant from Gyantse visiting Sikkim gave out there that he was one of the discoverers of sacred books of which the Nyingma history of Sikkim makes mention. He showed what he claimed was a very ancient manuscript volume on the propitiatory ritual of Guru Thag-mar, a fearful deity of the Ningma pantheon. The Sikkam rajah gave him a very warm welcome, and, in consultation with the chief lama of his Durbar, arranged to have block prints made of the text. Recently this impostor had returned to Gyantse, bringing with him many valuable copper and brass articles, silk gowns, and coined money.

January 6.—The minister's mother, accompanied by a maid-servant, came to pay reverence to her saintly son while I was seated with him. I could not believe that she was his mother when I saw her make three profound salutations before the minister, touching the ground with her forehead and receiving his blessing. She then presented him with a few balls of butter and a *khatag;* and when his holiness said he would leave for Tashilhunpo in three days, she wept bitterly.

January 7.—Early in the morning we received a message from the minister asking us to postpone our departure for Tashilhunpo, as the Chyag-dso-pa much wished me to accompany the minister to his house at Kye-pa Khangsar, where he proposed staying three days.

The parents of the minister, accompanied by their youngest boy, came again to pay their respects. The father, a quiet, respectable-

looking, elderly man, saluted me by taking off his yellow felt turban and inquiring after my health. They kotowed before the minister, who gave them his blessing by touching the crowns of their heads with his hand.

At 2 o'clock the minister, dressed like a Buddhist cardinal, and accompanied by the Tung-chen, ourselves, and his domestics, entered the grand hall of worship (*du-kang*), the Tung-chen carrying a bundle of incense-sticks and some *khatag*. The head lama threw some grains of barley towards the images of the deities, and recited some *mantras;* then the minister, standing, recited a short prayer, and approaching the image of the Buddha, took off his mitre and placed a *khatag* on it. Then the head lama took the other *khatag* which the Tung-chen had brought with him, and flung them one by one at the other images, while the monks who accompanied him scattered flowers before them.

After this we circumambulated the monastery, and descended to the foot of the hill, where the son of the Chyag-dso-pa, dressed in a rich Mongol costume, was awaiting us with two spirited and richly caparisoned ponies held by grooms, one of which the minister mounted, while we walked the short distance which separated us from the gateway of Kye-pa Khangsar. A band of drums, hautboys, bells, gongs, and fifes marched before us, playing as we went through the lay town (*sho*) and along a broad road lined with poplars to the gate of the Khangsar, where the Chyag-dso-pa was standing to receive the minister. He was dressed in a rich scarlet satin robe girded by a yellow scarf, a yellow woollen turban, and a pair of Tartar velvet boots. His tall stature, graceful looks, broad forehead, and uncommonly well-shaped nose, gave him a commanding appearance. He greeted the minister with a profound bow, and presented him a *khatag*, and received a blessing (*chyag wang*) from the latter, who afterwards dismounted, putting his foot on a velvet-covered stool placed here for the purpose.

The Chyag-dso-pa salaamed to Ugyen, whom he took for me; and the latter, not taking off his hat to return his salutation (or pay his *chyam-bu*, as it is called), was reminded of it in a whisper by the Tung-chen.

We then ascended a flight of steps and entered the building. The minister was conducted by the host to his drawing-room, while we were led by his third son, Phuntso Yu-gyal, in company of the

Tung-chen, to the chapel, the central room on the first floor. The house was very neatly built, with solid rubble walls and beautifully carved beams of old poplar. There was a skylight in the centre of the roof; thick cushions covered with Khamba rugs were placed around, and on these we took our seats. A collation was served on little tables consisting of Chinese cakes, buckwheat cakes, twisted sweet biscuits, and *tsamba* and tea was given us by the Chyag-dso-pa's page Pinu. After a little while we were led into the Chyag-dso-pa's presence, when we presented him *khatag* and a few rupees, also a *khatag* to his wife, Ama Tung-la, and his daughter-in-law, Rinpoche. After dinner we were conducted to a dormitory on the south side of the chapel, where we found three bedsteads, and after a cup of tea we retired to rest.

January 8.—Early in the morning we asked our host's leave to start for Tashilhunpo, but he was most reluctant to let us go, and, having obtained the minister's sanction to our remaining here two days more, we postponed our departure.

Breakfast was served by a maid-servant (*shetama*) and our host's daughter-in-law (*patsa*), Rinpoche, the only wife of his two sons. She is entitled to be addressed as *Chyam Kusho,* though it is seldom used in speaking to her. She is a young lady of about twenty, of modest manners and intelligent looks. She lingered about until the servants and other guests had left, with the evident intention of conversing with us.

Ugyen-gyatso opened the conversation by asking her to what family of Tibet she belonged. She replied by asking him if he had ever heard of Kusho Mankipa of Tanag. "Yes," replied he, "if you speak of Manki, who is the maternal uncle of the Rajah of Sikkim." "'Tis he," she said; "and he died last year without my seeing him. Are you a subject of my cousin Den Jong gyalpo [the chief of Sikkim]? Oh, how I long to see my aunt!" And she began to weep. "It is now full three years since I came here, and never in that time have I been allowed to visit my fatherland. Oh, I am miserable! I have to work continuously at the loom, supervise the workwomen, attend to the kitchen, and serve the meals. My mother-in-law is without mercy. She thinks my frame is made of iron. Though this family is rich, they work like ploughmen."

She then begged Ugyen to inform the Sikkim rajah's mother, Lha-yum Kusho, of her trouble, and to persuade her, if possible, to

take her to Chumbi for a couple of months. I told her, by way of consoling her, that she was a most accomplished person, married into one of the richest families of Tsang, and might hope to soon be a mother, so she must not consider herself miserable. "Do you know palmistry?"* she suddenly asked; and placing her right hand on the table, she desired me to tell her fortune by the lines on her hand (*lag-ri*). I was much embarrassed, and told her that I understood very little of this art. Fortunately just then a servant came and called us to the presence of the Chyag-dso-pa.

I took a seat on his right hand, and his wife, Ama Tung-la, occupied one on his left, while Ugyen, seated a little distance off, acted as my interpreter. The Chyag-dso Kusho began with: "In the sacred books we find mention of Indian Punditas who laboured for the diffusion of the enlightened religion. If you be a Pundita, as I hear from the minister that you are, we are most fortunate to have you among us. I also learn that you know about medicines, and I will later on avail myself of your knowledge." Then, calling his son, Phunsho Yugyal, he desired me, to my great embarrassment, to foretell his fortune by the lines on his hand. Being considered a Pundit, it was impossible for me to say that I did not know such an essential science as palmistry. After mature reflection I told him that although I had studied a little palmistry, I never attached much importance to explanations it afforded of men's fortunes. The science was very little understood, anyhow, and, in my opinion, it did not deserve any more attention than it had received: nothing could be more unpleasant than a foreknowledge of one's misery. Human life was, albeit, full of trouble; it was for deliverance from its recurrence that the Buddha has expounded the doctrine of *nirvana*.

He listened attentively to me, and seemed to think very highly of me. He said that if he but knew how long he and his son would live, he could devise means of preventing accidents in consultation with the minister, for in the sacred books one is told of religious remedies by the use of which calamities caused by devils (*dé*) can be averted. He pressed me to examine his palm, and stretched it out toward me. How could I refuse, and how could I predict falsely? So I told him that there are certain figures and lines in the palm of the hand from which experts in palmistry can draw indications of a

* Both Bogle (*op. cit.*, p. 107) and Captain Turner (*op. cit.*, p. 284) mention the fondness of the Tibetans of Shigatse for palmistry.—(W. R.)

long or short life. In his palm the line of life was very long; and as to fortune, it was well known that he was favoured by the gods.

Ama Tung-la then showed me her hand, and I said, "Ama-la, you are very fortunate. The mother of three sons, all of them grown up and accomplished men; the wife of a great man. What more can you want of the gods?" She smiled at this, and said that for some days past she had been suffering from a cough; could I give her some medicine that would relieve her? I asked for some black pepper and rock-candy, and prepared a powder for her.

At noon we dined with the minister and the Chyag-dso Kusho. The dishes were prepared and served in the Chinese fashion. Chopsticks and spoons were used. The first course was *gya-tug*, a tape-like preparation of wheat-flour and eggs, cooked with minced mutton, and soup. The minister did not eat it, as he had, in common with all lamas, taken the vow of abstaining from eggs. The second course was rice and half a dozen preparations of mutton curry, rice, mutton with preserved vegetables, white and black mushrooms, Chinese green grass, vermicelli, potatoes, and fresh shoots of peas.* The third course (*leu*, literally, "chapter") was buttered and sweetened rice; the fourth, and last, boiled mutton, *tsamba*, and tea. The Tung-chen told me that at sumptuous entertainments thirteen courses are usually served.

About an hour after dinner we visited Jerung la, the second son of the Chyag-dso Kusho, who is a monk in the castle of Diba Dongtse. This building, about six hundred years old, is built of stone of the best quality; it faces south, and has balconies (*rab-sal*) provided with shutters along each of its five stories. It is of a partly Indian, partly Tibetan style of architecture, with a central courtyard about 100 feet broad and 200 long. Around this, on the sides, the building is 40 feet high, and has three stories, along the outer edge of which, on the courtyard side, are rows of drum-shaped prayer-wheels two feet high, and as much in diameter, that take the place of railings. There are some three hundred of these prayer-barrels on the stories of the three sides. The main building is on the north side of the court, and is some 60 to 70 feet high. We ascended to the top story by a steep ladder, and were there shown the *gonkhang*,† the shrine of the guardian deities—terrible figures,

* All these are Chinese dishes.—(W. R.)

† *Gong khang* means "upper house."—(W. R.)

among which I noticed three of *Mamos*, resembling Jaganath, Balavendra, and Subhadra, of the Hindus.

There were several chapels, in each of which was a resident priest called *am-choi*. On the balconies of the wings three or four old women were weaving blankets, and at the entrance to the building a huge mastiff was chained, who made furious attempts to rush at us as we passed.

One hundred yards south of the castle is a garden (*linga*) with tall poplars—some 80 to 100 feet high, and four other kinds of trees planted in rows along its four walks, in the middle of which is a tastefully built summer-house, its cornice and external decorations remarkably pretty. One hundred yards away from it is a target for musket and bow practice.

While we visited the *linga* a greyhound * was running about it, but he paid no attention to us. On our way homeward we passed through the village where, under some tall poplars, tradesmen were displaying pottery for sale. We also saw four yellow-turbaned men, who, we were told, were the tax-collector's understrappers.

January 9.—While we were breakfasting Rinpoche came in, and again spoke of her hard work and of the merciless treatment of her mother-in-law. I asked her if her husband was not fond of her. "Oh, sir," she said, "we two are like one soul and body; but he is most of the time at Shigatse, where he is the Dahpon's steward" (*Nyerpa* †). She told me that she had just heard that her cousin, the Rajah of Sikkim, was coming to Tibet to get married. If his mother came with him, she could surely persuade her to take her with her to Chumbi for a couple of months. She also said to me that her mother-in-law ought not to have given her such a high sounding name as Rinpoche ("the Jewel"), for it is a name given to incarnate lamas and chiefs; but I answered, to her evident pleasure, that Rinpoche was a most appropriate name for handsome and accomplished women.

After this I went to the minister's apartment for dinner. Before it was served we washed our hands. A large copper bowl, or *katora*, was placed for the purpose before the minister, who, in washing his

* Most likely imported into the country by some Chinese. I have never seen a greyhound in Tibet, and they are rare even in China and Mongolia.—(W. R.)

† Apparently we should read "husbands," for the author has told us that this accomplished young woman was the wife of the two sons of the Chyag-dso-pa.—(W. R.)

hands, rubbed them with a kind of wood dust called *sugpa*,* obtained from a plant growing in Tibet, and used instead of soap.

After dinner the Chyag-dso-pa made presents to the minister, consisting of blankets, Tibetan serge (*pulo*), three pieces of red, scarlet, and yellow English broadcloth, Gyantse rugs of superior quality, Khamba rugs, Chinese brocaded satin, spotted woollen chintz, about two bushels of *tsamba*, a large quantity of buckwheat cakes, twisted sugar cakes, loaves of bread, and three hundred *tankas*. The presentation of these gifts he accompanied by profound salutations, and the minister gave him his blessing, when he begged him to pray to the gods to make him prosperous and happy. After this he gave presents of about half the value to the Tung-chen, and so on, less and less, according to each one's rank; to me he gave two Gyantse rugs, two pieces of spotted *pulo*, and a *khatag*. Alms were also distributed among the monks and the minister's menials.

When the Chyag-dso Kusho had finished making all these presents he returned to the minister's room, where we were with him. In course of conversation he suggested the propriety of my presenting the Tashi lama with an elephant. He said that two had recently been sent by the Rajah of Sikkim to Lhasa, to be presented to the Dalai lama, one of which had died on the way.† He also spoke of the superiority of Indian metal images over those made in Tibet, and said that those made in Magadha, and called *jai-khim*, were very rare in this country. "If you had brought some of these, or of *shar-li* [Bengal bell-metal], or *nub-li* [lower Indus valley],‡ and presented them to the minister, he would have been infinitely more pleased than with glass and other fragile and useless toys."

In the evening it was settled that the minister should start for Tashilhunpo on the morrow, and that Kusho Jambala, the Chyag-dso-pa's elder brother, who was suffering from ophthalmia, should accompany him, to submit there to my medical treatment.

* Jaeschke, 'Tib.-Engl. Dict.' s.v., *oug-pa*, says this word is used to designate a medicinal plant. It usually, however, means "hand." Soap is known and occasionally used in Tibet, though not manufactured there. It is usually called *langle* (written "*glang-glad*") It is brought there from India or China, the former kind being the best.—(W. R.)

† See chap. vii. p. 171.

‡ *Shar-li* means, literally, "Eastern bell-metal;" and *Nub-li*, "Western bell-metal." —(W. R.)

January 10.—We were up early, and got ready to leave for Tashilhunpo. The Tung-chen advised me to start ahead of the minister, who would overtake me on the road, as he travelled very rapidly, and he furthermore let me pick out for my use the quietest pony in the stable. We had not gone four miles when the minister and four attendants caught up with us. We rode on together some six miles, and when we reached the bed of the stream, now dry, which empties into the Nyang chu, we all alighted. The minister ordered his page to bring him a basketful of earth from a spot he pointed out. This was placed before him as he sat cross-legged on a rug, when he muttered some *mantras* and made an oblation of *tsamba* and water. The Tung-chen informed me that on the last journey the minister had made this way he had at this spot fallen from his pony, and it was supposed that some evil spirit haunting this spot was desirous of hurting him, and so this ceremony was performed to drive it away.

When it was over we had a light collation, the minister giving me some dried dates and Cabul fruits, while the Tung-chen gave the others treacle, biscuits, and tsamba.

At 4 o'clock we reached Tashi-gang. After partaking of refreshments the minister took his seat on the roof of Ang-putta's second story. He called me and Ugyen up, and asked us to teach him the foreign system of land surveying. Ugyen showed him his prismatic compass with attached clinometer. We explained the use of these instruments, and expressed regrets that we had no tape-measure or chain with which we could take measurements, carefully abstaining from mentioning measuring distances by pacing, lest he might suspect us of being surveyors, and withdraw his protection.

He then spoke of his desire to have a sextant, various mathematical instruments, a chest of medicines, and an illustrated work on astronomy. Ugyen expressed his willingness to go to Calcutta to purchase them, were it not that he could not leave me here alone, and with my desire to see Lhasa unfulfilled. The minister replied, "That is easily provided for. I will look after the Pundit; and as to his going to Lhasa, why, there is every probability that the Tashi lama will go there to ordain the Dalai lama in the fourth month (June), when it will be possible to arrange for the Pundit's going there also. The Shape Rampa, and Phala are my friends; they will help him. However, we will think of all this later on at Tashilhunpo."

He then said there were five persons in Tsang who took interest in science and study—the Shape Porapa, the Chief Secretary (*Dung-yig chenpo*) Ka-chan Dao, the Donyer, and himself. "There are," he added, "many other learned men at Tashilhunpo and in various other monasteries of Tsang, but they only interest themselves in sacred literature; they do not care to know of the science and civilization of other great countries such as that of the *Phyling* (foreigners) and India."

The minister finally informed me that to-morrow he would visit the Kyi-phug nunnery, about three miles off in the hills behind Tashi-gang. The Lady Superior and her nuns (*tsun-mo*) had repeatedly begged him to visit their convent, but he had been so pressed for time that he had only been able to do so once in the last six years.

January 11.—The minister and his party left for the Kyi-phug convent at 7 a.m., and we set off for Tashilhunpo after breakfast. Old Kusho Jambala was unable to keep up with us. As he followed slowly the minister's muleteers, his yellow-satin mitre, his spectacles, his manner of sitting on his pony, and his tall lank figure recalled to my mind the renowned knight of La Mancha. With his leave we rode ahead. We saw on the way a woman sweeping the ground, and on inquiry she told us that she was removing the thick grime which covered the ground so that her cattle might the more easily pick up the grass. Many sheep, we were told, die in winter on account of the ice crust which covers the grass. At 4 p.m. we arrived at Chyang chu, where we were most kindly received by the Deba Shikha, and lodged in the same quarters we had previously occupied.

January 12.—After breakfast we strolled about the *linga* in front of the minister's bathing-house (*cham chu*). It is surrounded by a wall of sun-dried bricks, stones, and turf seven feet high. In the south-east corner is the snug little two-storied house where the minister passes a few days in October. The cooking and bathing is done under yak-hair tents pitched in the western avenue of the grove.

At 9 o'clock we set out, and were at Tashilhunpo by noon, and there found Phurchung, who had arrived the day before from Khamba jong. The Djongpon, who knew him, had told him that unless he came bearing a passport from the Tashi lama or the Commander

of Shigatse, he could not let him pass the frontier. There were formal orders from the Lhasa Government not to let any one cross the frontier, even if bearing letters from the high officials of Labrang, who are not, however, in charge of frontier affairs. So Rinzing Namgyal had to leave our luggage with the Pipon of Lachan, and had gone back to Darjiling.

CHAPTER IV.

RESIDENCE AT TASHILHUNPO, AND PREPARATIONS FOR JOURNEY TO LHASA.

January 13.—The money we had brought from Darjiling being almost expended, we were now in the necessity of selling the pearls and gold we had brought with us. I therefore sent Ugyen to the market to inquire of Lupa gyaltsan, with whom we had left some *tolas* of pearls for sale, if he had been able to dispose of them. Lupa gyaltsan told him that he had shown the pearls to a Lhasa merchant, who had not offered more than cost price for them. The market for pearls, he added, was very poor, and we must not expect to realize much profit out of ours for some months to come.

He also told Ugyen that great preparations were being made for the Grand Lama's visit to Lhasa in May, for the ordination of the Dalai lama.* On that occasion the Tashi would have to make return presents and give rewards in money to the various officials and chiefs of Tibet, for which robes, boots, etc., were now being made in great numbers.

January 14.—On the way to the market to-day Ugyen met Lupa gyaltsan, who informed him that some traders from Phagri, Chumbi,

* On July 31, 1879, the thirteenth incarnation of the Dalai lama was placed on the throne of Lhasa. Chandra Das speaks of this event in the following terms: "The princely infant, into whose person the spirit of the late Dalai had passed, had been brought up till now in a small palace of Gyal-kup, near Lhasa. Last year the Tashi lama, at the invitation of the Emperor of China and the high officials of Tibet, had gone to Lhasa to examine the infant Dalai, and report if the spirit of the last Dalai had really passed into his person. For several days oracles were consulted, the result being to establish beyond doubt that the infant was the incarnate Shenrazig, the patron of Tibet. On the day when he pronounced the infant's claim to the pontifical throne to be good and valid, a magnificent rainbow is said to have appeared over the palace of Potala. The Tashi lama had fixed July 31 for the Dalai's accession to the throne" (see 'Narrative of a Journey to Tashilhunpo,' p. 25).

and Rin-chen-gang had just arrived, and that, to judge from their conversation, they were not well disposed towards us. He therefore cautioned Ugyen, so that he might not meet them unprepared. Ugyen, in consequence, first went to the police station and learnt from his friend, the Chinese havildar of Shigatse, who the new-comers were; then he looked them up, and questioned them about the passes to India. They told him they had been able to get here through the Lhasa Government having declared the Phagri pass open. As to the Sikkim rajah coming here, they could give no definite information, though they said there was much talk about his marrying the daughter of a great man of Lhasa.

In the afternoon the minister sent for me, and told me that the boxes containing the lithographic press sent him some months ago had not been opened for fear of small-pox. "I thought the cases contained some miraculous remedies which could neutralize small-pox. One night I smelt some gaseous emanations coming out from the boxes, which I thought contained the germs of small-pox; so I could not sleep that night, so troubled was my mind lest small-pox should attack us." We laughed heartily at his holiness's fancies, and I told him that the vaccine he had asked for was among the things still at the Lachan pass. At last he was convinced of the groundlessness of his fears, and joined with us in laughing at them.

January 15.—After breakfast we unpacked in the minister's library the lithographic press, and set it up, the minister taking great interest in the work and assisting me himself.

January 16.—After breakfast, which we took with the minister in the west drawing-room of the Phuntso khangsar, he told me that he was most anxious to get the things I had at Lachan. Phurchung was not intelligent enough to get around the Djongpon of Khamba, even if he were provided with the best of passports. He thought it indispensable for Ugyen to undertake the journey to Lachan, especially as he had relatives there, a circumstance which would greatly facilitate the accomplishment of his mission.

Ugyen objected to start on such a difficult journey at a season of the year when the cold would be intense and the Kangra lamo pass would be blocked with snow; but he felt, nevertheless, called upon to comply with the minister's request, if he provided him with a proper passport. Not only did the minister promise to give him an excellent passport, but he also said that he would propitiate the gods to the end

that they would protect him from dangers from man, beast, or disease, till the first of the third Tibetan moon (end of April, 1882).

When this was settled Ugyen begged the minister to look after me in his absence, and not to allow any injury to be done me on the ground that I was a foreigner. He asked him to give him a letter stating, first, that he (the minister) would see to my welfare, and that I would be in no way molested; second, that on Ugyen-gyatso's return he and I might go on a pilgrimage to Central Tibet; third, that we should be protected in any difficulty which might arise on the score of our being foreigners.

Besides the great importance of obtaining these written assurances from the minister, the production of such a letter by Ugyen, in case of my death during his absence, would relieve him of all responsibility towards our Government.

The minister promised to keep me in his house as a member of his family, to defray all my expenses, and to send me to Lhasa in May with the Tashi lama's party. Should, however, neither the Grand Lama nor himself go to Lhasa, he would make other arrangements for our pilgrimage there. As to the third point mentioned in the above agreement, he said that he was fully aware when he invited us to come to Tashilhunpo of the responsibility he assumed towards us, and that he would not allow us to be molested by any one during our stay in Tibet.

January 17.—The minister went in the morning to Shigatse, to grant absolution to the departed soul of Shang-po, one of the six Tso-pon who had been so severely punished by the Chinese authorities on the 13th of December last, and who had died from the effects of the flogging then received. We devoted the whole day to the setting up of the lithographic press.

January 18.—The minister told Ugyen that Kusho Badur-la, the head of the transportation department, wished to see the pearls we had brought with us. Ugyen did not find him at home, but conversed with his wife, whom he at once recognized, having seen her at Tumlung and Chumbi, she being the elder sister of the present Rajah of Sikkim. She gave him a very kind reception, and talked to him for nearly an hour, treating him to tea and *gya-tug* (vermicelli).

January 19.—To-day being the day of the new moon, nearly a thousand beggars lined the road leading from Tashilhunpo to Shigatse, where Lhagpa tsering was distributing alms to them.

At noon Ugyen visited the market-place, where he witnessed a quarrel between a woman and a Khamba over a *tanka's* worth of *tsamba*, in the course of which the woman challenged the man to take an oath very common in Tibet, namely, that if he told an untruth, he might never see the Grand Lama's face. The people of Khams are a fierce race who infest the solitudes of Tibet, and generally carry on depredations on the isolated villages north of Lhasa. They are a dangerous class.*

January 20.—Early in the morning we received an invitation to dine with our acquaintance, Lupa gyaltsan. We were told that to-day was the New Year's Day of the working class, and was so observed by all the people of Tibet, with the exception of the clergy.

After breakfast we went to the minister's, and told him the press was ready for working. I asked him to print a very auspicious hymn, that the first fruit of our labour might be a sacred composition. He at once ran to his study and brought a stanza, or *stotra*, composed by the present Grand Lama (of Tashilhunpo?) in honour and praise of the minister. This he copied himself on the transfer paper, and we obtained excellent impressions of it, much to his delight. The "stone press" (*do par*) was forthwith given the name of the "miraculous press" (*tul par*).

At three in the afternoon we asked leave to go to Lupa gyaltsan's house, where I had a most hearty reception, he and his wife coming to help me dismount from my pony. We were ushered into a newly finished room on the first floor, where was also his chapel. First *chang* was served, then tea was brought by his daughter, a girl of ten, and the wife placed a wooden bowl filled with *tsamba* and some pieces of boiled mutton on a little table before us. Then Lupa gyaltsan, taking off his turban, asked me to take *sol ja* and consider that I was dining in my own house. Shortly after, Ugyen, in accordance with Tibetan custom, made a short speech exhorting Lupa to always inquire after my health during his absence from Tashilhunpo, and to get for me all such articles of food, etc., that I might want. He thanked him for his kindness, and added that, as Lupa and I were old acquaintances, we should behave to each other as

* The Khamba are much dreaded throughout Tibet; frequent mentions are made in the narratives of the Indian explorers of their lawless ways. For fuller particulars regarding them and their country, I must refer the reader to my 'Land of the Lamas' and to the narrative of A. K.'s journey.—(W. R.)

brothers born of the same mother. So saying, he presented him and his wife with a rupee and a *khatag* each, putting the coins in their hands and the scarfs round their necks. Ugyen then put a *khatag* around my servant Lhagpa's neck, telling him to serve me ever faithfully. Lupa's daughter, having dressed herself in her gala dress, danced for us and sang a song, first in the Tibetan way, then in the Chinese; she sang also a Chinese song, Lupa accompanying her on the flute (*ling-bu*). After this Lupa's wife sang a song, and then wished us a happy new year. We then took leave of our hosts, wishing them also a happy new year.

Having inquired if the observance of this day was a purely Tibetan custom, I gathered from their reply that this was the New Year's Day according to the Tibetan custom of the pre-Buddhist period. It is the only remnant of ancient Tibetan custom, as far as I know, which has not been displaced by Buddhism.

January 21.—This day was also observed as a holiday by the laity. There were so few persons in the market-place that Ugyen could buy no provisions. The minister graciously insisted that I should take up my quarters in his residence, Puntso khangsar, where he offered me the library with an attached waiting-room and bath-room.

In the evening Nyima-dorje, the oldest son of the Chyag-dso-pa of Dongtse, came and consulted me about his eyes. On the right one I found that a cataract had formed. I told him I was exceedingly sorry I had no medicines with me to suit his case, but that Ugyen was going to Calcutta as soon as he had obtained a passport, and that he would bring back some drugs with him. He then said that it was this passport that had brought him here to speak to the minister about, and that he believed it would be ready in a day or two.

January 22.—I resumed reading English and working sums in arithmetic with the minister. After reading a few lines he turned over the pages of Ganot's 'Physics,' and asked me to explain the diagrams on telegraphy and the camera obscura. He wanted everything explained to him; but, unfortunately for me, I was not myself acquainted with most of the subjects which excited his curiosity. Not prepared to expose my ignorance, I dwelt longer on such questions as I could best explain, and with which I was most familiar; but in spite of all my attempts to evade his inquisitiveness, the shrewd minister gauged me well, and expressed his earnest

desire to meet such men as I had described to him, Dr. Sircar and my brother, Navin Chandra, to be.

In the afternoon Nyima-dorje brought the *lam-yig* (passport), and presented it to the minister. We were called in and shown it; but Ugyen disapproved of it, as nothing was said in it of his return journey here, so it was sent back for correction.

January 23.—Crowds of visitors came to receive the minister's blessing (*chyag-wang*); among them were many Khalkhas and other Mongols from remote sections of that country. The Khalkhas were introduced by Lobzang Arya, my cook during my first sojourn at Tashilhunpo in 1879, and now a man of standing and elder (*gyer-gyan*) of the Khalkha Kham-tsan. The minister talked with him in Mongolian, after receiving the pilgrims with much kindness.

January 24.—Early in the morning I was called by the minister, and found a young monk of the Nyagpa Ta-tsang (a Tantrik school) * sitting with him. The minister asked me to examine his eyes, which were a little swollen, telling me at the same time that this young man had served him devotedly during his residence at the Nyag-khang, and was deserving of my care. I gave him a few doses of alum lotion to wash his eyes with, and made him promise to walk round the monastery several times a day whenever it was fair weather.

In the afternoon I lunched with the Tung-chen, and we conversed about the high winds which at this season blow every afternoon. He spoke also of the Phagri pass, and told me that the collector of customs (Serpon) there was a friend of his, and that if Ugyen went to Darjiling by the Phagri pass, he could give him a letter of introduction to that officer. I thanked him for his kindness, adding that Ugyen preferred the Lachan pass, as he had a passport from the commander of Shigatse which did not extend to Phagri djong.

January 25.—The minister told me that in certain stellar maps he had examined he saw that figures were given the different constellations, and that he understood these figures really existed in the sky; so, wishing to see them, he had bought a large telescope at much cost. He did not know, however, how to use it, and was most anxious to have a well-illustrated work on astronomy, that he might know what to look for and where to look for it. He also remembered my saying that the regions of the moon, Saturn, and even of the sun, were visible through the telescope, and he was curious to know what

* See *supra*, p. 75.

these luminaries contained, for he had hitherto been under the impression that these celestial bodies were angelic luminaries who, for the excellence of their moral merits, had been promoted to celestial mansions of different heights, thence to shed on us their radiant lustre, and thereby guide all living beings of the earth in the path of *dharma*.

While we were thus talking Nyima-dorje arrived, and presented the passport to his holiness. After perusing it he handed it to me, and I passed it to Ugyen. We found that the commanders of Shigatse (*Dahpon*), in order to prevent the introduction of small-pox, had instructed in it the Djongpon of Khamba to examine the contents of our boxes, to prevent contagion being brought into the country in them. This would put the Djongpon in a position to exact from Ugyen any amount of money he might choose; but as it would be inconvenient to wait longer for a corrected *lam-yig*, the minister advised Ugyen to be satisfied with the present one, and to do the best he could with it.

January 26.—Ugyen declared that Phurchung's services were absolutely necessary to him, and asked that he be lent to him for six months, adding that without him he would not start on the journey. After breakfast the minister consulted with the Tung-chen and Gopa about keeping me with him. Arrangements were soon made; but they all objected to my keeping Lhagpa as my servant, telling me that a Shigatse man could not be trusted, as they were cunning, deceitful, and faithless. He added that, as he had undertaken to look to my wants and comforts, there was not the least necessity for my keeping a servant at my own expense. Fearing lest he should suspect me of ulterior designs, I at once accepted his decision, though I had hoped, by means of Lhagpa, to keep myself informed of what was going on in the monastery and the town, I myself being practically confined within the walls of the minister's residence, as I was required, according to custom, to wait upon his holiness.

January 27.—Ugyen and Phurchung busied themselves in preparing for the journey. The former took a pair of Gyantse blankets and a suit of lambskin clothes, and I gave Phurchung a pair of my own blankets for his use during the journey. They purchased a large quantity of sheep's fat to distribute among the Sikkimese on the way. Dried mutton, *tsamba*, and sheep's fat are the dainties the Sikkimese esteem above all others. They hired four ponies to ride and carry their luggage.

In the evening we were invited to take tea with the minister, when Ugyen took formal leave, making three profound bows to his holiness, and praying that his blessing might always be on him, and that, by the mercy of the sacred Buddhas, he might reach his destination safely.

January 28.—To-day, the 10th of the 12th moon, was considered a highly auspicious day on which to start for India. At 6 o'clock Ugyen, Phurchung, and I went to the minister's apartment, when his holiness, after a short prayer, wished them a safe and pleasant journey, and placed *khatag* on their necks. At Ugyen's special request I desired Phurchung in a short speech to serve Ugyen as he would serve me, to which he answered, "*La laso, laso*" (yes, sir, yes). Then we returned to the Torgod chyi-khang, our lodging, where, after breakfast, I presented parting *khatag* to my faithful companions. The scene was extremely touching, and they shed tears at leaving me alone. I, too, could not suppress my feelings as I exhorted them to take care of themselves in the snows, and to be prepared for heavy snowfalls. They both rode off in high spirits towards Delel.*

Shortly after I sent Wang-chyug gyalpo and the minister's page to fetch my clothes, utensils, etc., to my new quarters. They brought some, and told me that my trusted servant, Lhagpa, was quietly carrying off my kettles and plates. I immediately went to the Torgod chyi-khang, and asked him to give up the missing articles, but he denied any knowledge of them, though we could see the breast of his gown stuffed out with them, and he insisted the devils (*de*) must have carried them off. I at once sent for the Nyerpa and the Tung-chen. It was impossible, however, to search Lhagpa, so we had to confine ourselves to drawing up a list of the things missing and of the things I had with me; and then, locking the door of my lodgings, the Tung-chen told Lhagpa to return quietly to his house. The Tung-chen smiled at the roguery of my trusted servant, and made me understand that I knew very little about Tibetans, and that I should not have trusted Shigatse people.

January 29.—The minister came to my rooms, and insisted on nailing up a curtain, so as to divide the room in two, the books in the northern part, and my seat and bedstead in the southern half of it. He said that such an arrangement was necessary, as the books were of arsenical paper, and I would fall ill if I continually breathed the air of this place. Underneath my room was the cook-room

* De-le of our maps.—(W. R.)

(*sol-tab*), the heat from which kept the library dry and warm. There was but one window, about four feet square, in my room, through which I could see the Nartang hills.

At 9 o'clock breakfast was announced, when the Nyerpa conducted me to the minister's presence. Tea was served me in a pretty china cup, and Kachan gopa brought me a bowl of *tsamba* and a few slices of boiled mutton, and, noticing my difficulty in making dough of the *tsamba* and tea after the Tibetan fashion, took it from me and mixed it himself, twirling the cup on the palm of his hand, and mixing the flour and tea with his forefinger.

In the dining-room there was a parrot lately presented to the minister by the Chyan-dso shar of Tashilhunpo, and a small saffron plant raised from some seed brought from Kashmir. This plant throve well, I was told, but yielded no saffron.

After breakfast I returned to my studies, and, with the permission of the minister, commenced a search for Sanskrit books in his library. At noon the cook placed on an earthenware stove near me a pot of steaming tea, and in the afternoon he filled it again. I was told it was injurious to drink cold water; Tibetans very seldom drink it; the laymen quench their thirst with draughts of cold fermented barley liquor (*chang*), and lamas with hot tea.

As the minister, on account of his vows, was debarred from eating in the afternoon, evening, or night, he desired me to take my supper with the secretary; so when the lamp was lighted I went downstairs, and sat gossiping in the kitchen with him.

January 30.—To-day I discovered three Sanskrit works written in the Tibetan character. They were the *Kavyadarsha*, by Acharya Sri Dandi; the *Chandra Vyakarana*, by Chandra Gomi; and the *Svarasvat Vyakarana*, by Acharya Ami. I was transported with joy when I saw that they contained explanations in Tibetan.

In the afternoon I showed Sri Dandi's work to the minister, who, to my surprise, was able to give me more information concerning him than I had expected, and he had committed the entire work to memory. "Dandi," he said, "must have lived a thousand and more years ago, for this work was translated into Tibetan by one of the Sakya hierarchs who lived about six hundred years ago, and it is probable that the work was not very new when it came to be known in this country."

January 31.—Preparations for the new year's ceremonies now

occupy the attention of all classes. Large numbers of men are coming to take the first vows of monkhood, and Kachan Shabdung introduced to-day a number of them to his holiness. The minister's time was largely taken up with these religious duties, and I could not see him for more than ten or twelve minutes. When I withdrew to my room, the astrologer, Lobzang, came to see me; he was busy with the almanac for the new year, and kept turning over its pages to see if there were any mistakes. The minister also had to examine it before submitting it to the Grand Lama.

Lobzang, seeing the lithographic press, was curious to know what "those stones and wheeled apparatus," as he put it, were meant for. He begged me to explain the process of printing, but I evaded his questions, as I had been told not to talk of the press to outsiders.

In the evening the Deba Shika arrived with a large supply of butter and *tsamba*, evidently to be used in the new year's ceremonies.

From this time on I devoted myself to the study of the sacred books and histories of Tibet, and ceased to keep a regular diary, noting only such things concerning the customs and manners of the country as seemed interesting. When I felt tired of Tibetan I refreshed my mind with the melodious verses of Dandi's *Kavyadarsha*, both in the original and the Tibetan translation, and during my leisure hours I conversed with the Tung-chen, the Nyerpa, and other well-informed men.

The first part of February was very cold; the north wind blew daily, raising clouds of dust in the plain to the west and south of the city. People, however, were busily engaged out-of-doors, gathering fuel and tending cattle; in fact, this is the busiest season of the year, a period of universal merry-making, and also of great activity in trade.

The Tibetans, whether monks or laymen, are very early risers. In the monastery the great trumpet (*dung chen*) summoned the monks to the congregation hall for prayers at three in the morning, and those who failed to be present were punished at the Tsog-chen; for, though there is no roll call, yet the absence of a single monk is surely remarked by the provost.

The minister, who frequently peeped into my room to see whether I was studying or no, excused me from early rising on the ground that he often found me up with my books at midnight.

On the 16th I was asked by the Deba Shika to go with him

the following day to see the Grand Lama dance, or *cham*.* On my observing that I feared the whips of the stage guards (*djim-gag-pa*) if I mixed with the crowd, he promised to have seats reserved for our party.

Early the next morning men and women dressed in their best began streaming into the monastery to see the *cham*. Accompanied by the Tung-chen, the Deba Shika, and a lama friend, we went our way towards the Nyag-khang, in the courtyard of the Tsug-la khang, in which the dances were to begin. On the way we stopped to visit an old chapel containing several inscriptions relating to Gedun-dub, the founder of Tashilhunpo, and the mark of a horse's hoof impressed on a rock, which passers-by touch with their heads.†

Then we took our seats on the balcony of the second floor of the Nyag-khang building, and watched the preparations for the dance. Twenty-four sacred flags of satin, with embroidered figures of dragons and other monsters worked in threads of gold, were first unfurled at the top of long and slender poplar poles, and square parti-coloured flags were also hung all around the Tsug-la khang. About a dozen monks wearing coats of mail had masks which, for the most part, represented eagles' heads. The dancers entered one after the other, and then followed the abbot of the Nyag-pa Ta-tsan, Kusho Yon-djin Lhopa by name, holding a *dorje* in his right hand, and a bell in his left. He wore a yellow mitre-shaped cap, with lappets covering his ears and hanging down to his breast. He was tall and fair; he looked intelligent, his manners were most dignified, and he performed his part most cleverly.

After a while the flag-bearers, the masked monks, and all the *cortége* repaired to the great Tsug-la khang of Tashilhunpo, which is about 300 yards long and 150 feet broad. Round this courtyard are

* Speaking of the dances of Tibet, our author says elsewhere that Padma Sambhava, in the eighth century, A.D., is the reputed originator of religious dances in Tibet. He introduced the war-dance and the famous masqued dance, or *bag chams* (*hbag hchams*), the former being but a modification of the latter. At present the great religious dance of Tibet is the black-hat dance (*Dza nag cham*), which was introduced in the eleventh century, A.D., to commemorate the assassination of the iconoclast King Langdarma by Lama Lhalun Paldor, the murderer having disguised himself in black when seeking to approach the king. The ordinary dance of Tibet (*dzabs bro*) is performed by men and women on all or any occasion of rejoicing. Sometimes they dance in pairs, sometimes in a ring, and at others the women hand-in-hand on one side, the men in like fashion on the other. (S. C. D.). Cf. Markham, 'Tibet,' p. 92; E. F. Knight, 'Where Three Empires Meet,' p. 202 *et sqq.*; Waddell, 'Buddhism of Tibet,' pp. 34, 477, 515 *et sqq.*

† Cf. *infra*, p. 116.

four-storied buildings with handsome pillared balconies, the Grand Lama's seat being on the western side. The long balconies on the east and south were occupied by the nobility of Tsang, and those on the north by Mongol pilgrims and a number of Shigatse merchants. The abbots of the four Ta-tsan had seats just above the Nyag-pa, who, to the number of fifty odd, and assisted by their Om-dse * and

BLACK-HAT DANCE (SHANAG CHAM).

the Dorje Lopon, these holding in their hands cymbals and tambourines, went through a short religious service under the direction of the Kusho Yon-djin Lhopa. This latter made during this service peculiar motions with his hands, in which he held, as I have said, a *dorje* and a bell.

When this was over a figure with a dark-coloured mask, and representing the Hoshang Dharma-tala,† advanced, and the spectators

* The office here mentioned is well known in Sikhim. See the *Sikhim Gazetteer*, p. 304, vi. The amged, as colloquially pronounced, is the active ruler of the monastery, and often a very important person.

† This Chinese Buddhist monk (or *ho-shang*) came to Tibet in the reign of King Srong-btsan gambo (A.D. 629–698). He is usually called Mahadeva, not Dharmatala. —(W. R.)

flung him *khatags*, which his two yellow-faced wives picked up. When these three had left the scene, the four kings of the four cardinal points appeared, dressed in all the wild and barbaric splendour in which such monarchs could indulge. Then came the sons of the gods, some sixty in number, dressed in beautiful silk robes glittering with gold embroideries and precious stones. These were followed by Indian *atsaras*, whose black and bearded faces and uncouth dress excited loud laughter among the crowd. Then appeared four guardians of the graves, whose skeleton-like appearance was meant to remind the spectators of the terrors of death. After this the devil was burnt in effigy on a pile of dry sedge, and with this the *cham* came to an end.* While it was in progress incense was burnt on Mount Dolma (Dolmai-ri), behind the monastery, and on all the other neighbouring mountain-tops. I learnt from the Tung-chen that there were several books on the subject of these religious dances and music.

The following day (February 18) I went with the Tung-chen for a walk. Proceeding about 300 paces, we came to a flight of stone steps below the western gateway. This latter, which is some twelve feet high and eight wide, has massive doors, which are closed between sunset and sunrise; it is the principal entrance of the monastery. About fifty feet beyond this gate, and on a line with the gilt mausolea of the grand lamas (*gya-phig*), we came to another flight of steps, some of them cut in the rock, which led us to the north-western corner of the monastery and well up the slope of the Dolmai-ri, whence we obtained a good view of the whole of Tashilhunpo monastery, the adjacent villages and mountains.

We now turned to the north-east along a narrow rocky path, which brought us behind the Nyag-khang. I was surprised to notice among the rocks some willows (*chyang-ma*) in flower, and we saw also the impress of hoofs on the rocks, left there, the Tung-chen said, by the chargers of some Bodhisattvas; *rang chyung*, or "naturally produced," the Tibetans say of such marvels. There were several half-starved pariah dogs lying about, who looked at us with sleepy

* Geo. Bogle, *op. cit.*, p. 106, witnessed a somewhat similar dance at Tashilhunpo on New Year's Day. An effigy of the devil was likewise burnt. Tibetans use the word *atsara* much as the Chinese do *yang kuei-tzŭ*, or "foreign devils," though it was originally the name given to learned Indian pilgrims. The word is Sanskrit, *acharya*. —(W. R.)

eyes, and the Tung-chen remarked that in all probability they had been sinful *gelong* (monks) in some former existence, and were now expiating their evil deeds. He much regretted that we had not brought some balls of *tsamba* for them.

Some 200 paces farther on in the same direction we came to a huge stone building called Kiku-tamsa. It is about 60 paces in length and 30 in breadth, and I counted nine stories in it. Though it is upwards of two hundred years old, it is still in excellent repair. Captain Turner made a sketch of it in 1783,* but he mistook it for "a religious edifice." It is at present used as a godown for dried carcasses of yaks, sheep, and goats. Every year, in the latter part of November, all the sacred pictures of the Labrang are hung up on this building for the benefit of the people, who, by touching these paintings with their foreheads, receive the blessings of the gods they represent.†

On our way down to the eastern gateway of Tashilhunpo we met two Ladaki Tibetans, who told us that they had just come from the Chang-tang, or the desert in the north-western part of Tibet.‡

The Tung-chen showed me the Dongtse Kham-tsan, where the people of Dongtse and neighbourhood put up. We also saw a juniper bush planted by Gedun-dub, the founder of Tashilhunpo, in which that saintly lama's hair is said to still exist.§ I had pointed out to me, as we walked along the spacious buildings of the Taisamling college, the Kyil khang Ta-tsan and the Shartse college.

The descent to the foot of the hill proved very steep, but all along it we found rows of prayer-wheels, which we put in motion as we passed; near the gateway, and beside a *mendong*, there were two dozen of them together.

Passing by the main Mani lha-khang, we reached the eastern gateway of Tashilhunpo. Over it is a notice forbidding smoking within the monastery, for both the red and yellow-hat schools of lamaism strongly denounce tobacco-smoking by monks.

* See Captain Samuel Turner, 'Embassy,' p. 314.

† According to Chinese authorities, this, or a similar feast, is celebrated at Lhasa in the second moon of the year. Another analogous festival is held on the 30th day of the sixth moon. See *J.R.A.S.*, xxiii. pp. 212, 213.—(W. R.)

‡ The Chang-tang is not an uninhabited desert, for numerous tribes of Drupa pasture their herds there the year long, and keep up a considerable trade with Lhasa and Shigatse, which they supply with salt. It has been repeatedly crossed by European explorers.—(W. R.)

§ Cf. the legend of the miraculous tree sprung from the hair of Tsongkhapa, and still growing in the courtyard of Kumbum gomba. 'The Land of the Lamas,' pp. 67, 68.

From this gateway a road leads south to the Kiki-naga, where the Grand Lama's mother resides, while another runs westward to the court of the Tashi lama, or Labrang gyal-tsan tonpo.

It was dusk when we had finished our walk around the monastery, and lamps were already burning in many of the houses to bid farewell to the old year.

February 19, New Year's Day.*—The preparations for the day's celebration commenced before dawn, and the noise of the blowing of the kitchen fires never ceased, as there were many dishes and dainties to be got ready for the dinner the minister was to give to a large party of nobles and incarnate lamas.

When the minister came back from visiting the Grand Lama, he told me that the latter had inquired about me, as he had some translation into Sanskrit which he desired I should make for him. "His holiness," the minister said, "has given me a hundred and twenty titles of chapters of a work he has written, and wishes you to put them into Sanskrit for him." The minister further said that when I had finished this work he would present me to the Grand Lama.

The next day the minister was called to Dongtse by the illness of the Dahpon Phala's wife; his prayers, it was hoped, would restore her to health. About a week after his departure he was suddenly recalled by the Grand Lama, with whom he had, on March 3, a long conference. The Dalai lama's Government had protested against the Tashi lama having taken the vows of monkhood from the Sakhya Pan-chen, a red-hat lama, the hierarch of the Sakhya school. The Dalai lama charged him with encouraging heresy, if not with being a heretic himself. It was for this reason that the Tashi lama had not been invited to ordain the supreme ruler of Tibet, for, belonging to the Gelugpa or yellow-hat school, the Dalai lama could have no connection with the school of which the Sakhya Pan-chen was the chief.

On March 4 the minister ordained some forty monks *gelong*. Formerly the Grand Lama used to perform this ceremony himself, but he has now delegated a large portion of his religious duties, including ordination, to the minister.†

Two days after this the minister was again asked to go to Dongtse, as the wife of the Dahpon was still ill, and he (the Dahpon) had

* On the new year festivities, see Waddell, *op. cit.*, p. 513.

† On lamaist monachism, see Sarat Chandra Das's 'Indian Pundits in the Land of Snow,' and Waddell, *op. cit.*, pp. 169 *et sqq.*

orders to proceed at once to Lhasa. The minister asked me if I would accompany him, and I readily assented, as it would enable me to make arrangements for my journey to Lhasa during the next summer.

On March 7 we started, and reached Tashigang the same day. Some of the people we passed were already ploughing, and the trees showed signs of budding.

The next day we reached Dongtse by 4 o'clock in the afternoon. We found the Dahpon's wife, a lady of about thirty, and his sister, Je-tsun Kusho, in the central room of the fifth floor of the castle (*phodrang*).

The Lhacham was dressed in a Mongol robe; on her head was a crown-shaped ornament studded with precious stones and pearls of every size. Pearl necklaces, strings of amber and coral hung over her breast, and her clothes were of the richest Chinese satin brocades and the finest native cloth.* The Je-tsun Kusho, an elderly woman and a nun, was dressed very plainly; but, though nuns all shave their heads, she wore all her hair. She belonged, it appears, to the Nyingma school, which allows nuns certain privileges, this one among others.†

The following day I prescribed some medicines for Je-tsun Kusho, who was suffering from bronchitis, and four days later I administered some to the Dahpon's wife, who had had until then a lama from the Tse-chan monastery attending her. My medicines did her no good, and at this the minister appeared much concerned. I tried a second dose, but with like absence of effect. In fact, the Lhacham felt worse, and said that evil stars were in the ascendant in her quarter of the sky (*khams*), and would work her ruin. Some people, she said, insisted she was being persecuted by evil spirits who had followed her here from Tingri (Djong), but she did not believe it; it was the stars which were against her. The minister looked at me and asked me how it was

* In the narrative of his journey in 1879 (p. 26), S. C. D. thus describes the headdress of the ladies of wealth and fashion at a festival at Tashilhunpo: "Their headdresses struck me much. The prevailing form consisted of two, or sometimes three, circular bands of plaited hair placed across the head and richly studded with pearls, cat's-eyes, small rubies, emeralds, diamonds, coral and turquoise beads as large as hens' eggs, pearl drops, and various sorts of amber and jade encircled their heads, like the halo of light round the heads of goddesses. These circles were attached to a circular headband, from which six or eight short strings of pearls and regularly shaped pieces of turquoise and other precious stones hung down over the forehead."

† Farther on (p. 138), our author tells us that the incarnate goddess Dorje phagmo also wore her hair long.

that my medicines were unavailing in the Lhacham's case. In the midst of a dead silence I told him that all the medicines which different persons had administered to the patient were affecting her nervous system, each in a different way. I had heard her say that she had first taken those of a Chinese quack, then those of a Nepalese

A LHACHAM, OR LADY OF RANK.

physician, and lastly the medicines of several learned lama doctors. Under the circumstances I should not have prescribed for her at all, but that as every one had expected me to do something for her, I had ceded to their wishes. It was, however, my opinion that if the Lhacham would be cured, the only medicine she required was no medicine at all.

Under this new treatment, which she promptly adopted, there was a marked improvement in the Lhacham's health within the next ten days. I used frequently to talk with her, and she seemed to entertain a kind regard for me. One day the minister suggested in her presence that it would be a good thing if I could be sent to Lhasa to see the Lord Buddha, the incarnate Shenrezig, the Dalai lama. The Lhacham approved the suggestion, and promised to have me lodged in her residence at Lhasa, and to take me under her protection while there.

On March 23 I left Dongtse for Tashilhunpo. On the way to Tashigang we saw lambs picking the young shoots of grass, and the country folk were busy in the fields with their yaks, which were decorated with red, yellow, blue, and green hair tassels, and collars of coloured wool, and cowries. The farmers hold certain religious ceremonies on beginning ploughing and on first putting the yokes (*nya-shing*) on their yaks. They also have at this time most amusing ploughing races.

Beyond Norbu khyung-djin we saw, as we rode along, afar off on a slope of rock, incised in gigantic characters, the sacred formulæ, *Om vajra pani hum, om wagishvari hum, om ah hum*, etc.

The next day, at 3 p.m., just as we reached the house of the Deba Shika, there was quite a heavy fall of snow. On the 25th we arrived at Tashilhunpo, and I once more took up my interrupted historical studies.

CHAPTER V.

FROM TASHILHUNPO TO YAMDO SAMDING, AND THENCE TO LHASA.

On Wednesday, April 26, 1882, being the eighth day of the third moon of the water-horse year of the Tibetan cycle, I left Tashilhunpo for Dongtse, there to make my final arrangements for the journey to Lhasa.

The cook, Dao-sring, nicknamed Aku chya-rog, or "Uncle Daw," on account of the dirt and soot which always covered his face, now turned out with well-washed face and hands, in new leather boots and fur cap, and helped me to mount my pony.

Tsering-tashi, who had been designated to accompany me, had procured all that was necessary for a long journey—butter, meat, pounded dry mutton, spices, rice, a copper kettle, an iron pan, flint stones, tinder, and a bellows, and the Tung-chen had presented me with *tsamba*, *chura*, and pea-flour for the use of the servants, and peas for the ponies. Of all the articles Tsering-tashi had brought, the one which he valued the most was a bamboo tea-churn,* which he thought the most beautiful and useful of all our belongings.

I tied up my medicine-case in one of my saddle-bags, and in the other I put my clothes, and at 2 o'clock we started. There were five of us in the party, all mounted, and riding in single file: first came the Tung-chen, then I, then came Tsering-tashi, and the cook and a groom brought up the rear. We followed the same road I had already gone over on several occasions, and stopped the first night at Chyang-chu, where we put up in the house of our friend the Deba Shikha.

April 27.—About two inches of snow had fallen in the night, and there was a slight fog when we got up in the morning. In front of the house I noticed some men and women digged a kind of root called

* See my 'Diary of a Journey through Mongolia and Tibet,' p. 256, where two such tea-churns are shown.—(W. R.)

rampa. This underground grass acquires, in some places, a length of five or six feet, and in the early spring, when vegetables and forage are scarce, it is dug up. The people know where to dig for it by the little shoots which rise above the ground.*

We were detained at Chyang-chu all day, waiting for Tsering-tashi, who had been obliged to stop over at Tashi-gyantse to make some purchases.

In the evening tea was served by Po-ka-chan, a grey-haired monk who works on the estates of the minister at Tanag. He had travelled much in Kongpo, Naga, and among the Mishmis, and in Tsari. He related how the savage Lhokabra † harassed the Tibetan pilgrims, and how the Tsang-po river entered the country of defiles in Eastern Bhutan, rushing in a tremendous waterfall over the top of a gigantic precipice called the "Lion's Face," or Sing-dong.

April 28.—The villagers had all assembled to bid us farewell, and the Tung-chen's sister presented me with a "scarf for good luck" (*tashi khatag*). We saw as we rode along numerous flocks of cranes (*tontong*), and brown ducks with red necks were swimming in the river and the irrigation ditches. We stopped for the night at Pishi Mani lhakhang, where Angputti received us with the same kindness she had shown us on my former visits. Snow fell during the night, but our hostess's servants watched over our ponies, and stabled them under the roof of the *okhang*,‡ or godown, on the ground floor.

We reached Dongtse at 4 p.m. on the 29th, and took up our lodgings in the Choide; but in the evening the Deba Chola came and invited us to put up at the castle, where the minister was still staying.

* I think our author was misinformed. Rampa (*Polygonum viviparum*, L.) does not grow as described here. Rampa seed is eaten, after being parched and ground, mixed with *tsamba*. Choma (*Potentilla anserina*), also eaten all over Tibet wherever it occurs, is dug out of the ground; it is not a grain, however, but a small root. I think Chandra Das must refer to *choma*, though it is a small tuber not over 1½ inches long.—(W. R.)

† Lama Serap gyatsho says there are three different kinds of Lobas, viz. Lo Karpo, Lo Nagpo, and Lo Tawa, or Lo Khabta. The Lo Karpo means "white, and little civilized." The Lo Nagpo means "black, and little civilized." The Lo Tawas, or stripped Lobas, meaning "quite barbarous Lobas," live on the lower part of the Tsangpo, on the east bank. They are said to kill the mother of the bride in performing their marriage ceremony, when they do not find any wild men, and eat her flesh. Report on Explorations, etc., p. 7. See also ibid., pp. 16, 17; and Pundit Nain Singh's Journey, in *Jour. Roy. Geo. Soc.*, vol. xlvii. p. 120.

‡ *Og khang* means "lower house," as opposed to *Gong khang*, "upper house, or story."—(W. R.)

The Tung-chen took an early opportunity to inform the minister that his presence was anxiously expected at Tashilhunpo, where hundreds of lamas were awaiting his return to be ordained *gelong* (priests). He also told him that the Mirkan Pandita, a Mongol Kutuketu who had come to Tibet for the sole purpose of studying under the minister, now intended coming to Dongtse, and had begged that arrangements might be made for his accommodation in the minister's residence. While the minister recognized the necessity for his returning to Tashilhunpo, he said he could not leave until the services for the propitiation of the Lord of death, Dorje jig-je, to be undertaken for the recovery of the Dahpon's wife, were finished.

May 2.—The monks of Dongtse, headed by a learned old lama named Punlo, arrived at the castle to commence reading the Kahgyur. Arrangements were made in the *nyihok* for the worship of Dorje jig-je. *Torma* offerings * were placed on the terrace on the top of the castle, and rugs were spread on the floor of the little glazed room (*nyihok*) on it for the accommodation of the lamas. In the house was a raised seat for the minister, and in a corner of the room a little chapel, with all the necessary church furniture, among which the *tsegi bumba*, or "bowl of life," of Tse-pamed was conspicuous.† This propitiatory ceremony occupied three days.

May 8.—News arrived to-day that small-pox was raging at Lhasa and other places of Central Tibet. Several persons had also died of it at Gyantse, and three or four localities between that town and Lhasa were infected. The Lhacham was in so great dread of the disease that she confined herself to her sitting-room, refusing to see any one.

On May 9 the Lhacham left for Lhasa, after confiding to the minister's care Ane, her third son, a boy of ten, who was destined for the Church. The Lhacham and her two other sons, Lhasre ‡ and Kundi, made their devotions at the different chapels of the castle, which it took them nearly an hour to accomplish, and then returned to the fifth story of the building to receive the minister's blessing, after which they took their leave.

* *Torma* offerings are cones made of *tsamba*, butter, treacle, and sugar, and not unfrequently of cardboard, and sometimes painted red, blue, or green. They are placed in front of the images of malignant gods as propitiatory offerings. See Waddell, *op. cit.*, 297. On the word *nyihok*, see *supra*, p. 77.—(W.R.)

† One of these libation bowls is represented on p. 90 of 'Land of the Lamas.'—(W. R.)

‡ *Lha-sre* is the usual title of sons of very high officials. It means, literally, "son of a god," but may be conveniently translated by "prince."—(W. R.)

At the foot of the ladder in the courtyard a white pony, with handsome housings of embroidered cloth and a Tartar saddle, awaited the Lhacham. With her pearl-studded headdress, her gold and ruby charm-boxes, her necklaces of coral and amber, and her clothes of satin and *kinkab*, she looked like a heroine of romance or a goddess.

On the following day I went with the minister and the Kusho Ane, and took up my residence in the Dongtse Choide. Here

TIBETAN NOBLEMAN.

I witnessed the opening ceremonies connected with the Kalachakra *mandala* worship. The Om-dse,* or high priest of the Choide, with the help of two assistants, had described with coloured *tsamba* a circle about 20 feet in diameter on the floor of the northern room on the third floor of the Tsug-la khang. Within this *mandala* were drawn the entrance, spires, doors, and domes of the Kalachakra mansion. The presiding deity was tall, many-armed, and had several heads; his attendants were of the tantrik order of deities, and all these

* See note 1, p. 115.

paintings were made in coloured powders and *tsamba.** The minister highly praised the work, and gave as a gratuity to each of the eighty monks of the monastery half a *tanka*, and an entertainment of tea and *tsamba*.

May 11.—A messenger arrived to-day to inform us that the Lhacham would leave Gyantse the next morning, and that we would do well to see her at Gyankhar before she started; so, though I was feeling very poorly, I made up my mind to start at once.

My ponies were brought inside the monastery by Pador, a stalwart young fellow who had been several times to Lhasa, and who had been chosen by the Chyag-dso-pa † to accompany me, and I got ready to leave early on the morrow.

At an early hour the next day I went with Tsering-tashi to see the minister, ask his protection (*kyab ju*), and beg to be favoured with his advice as to the conduct of our journey, or *sung-ta*, as it is called.

As is usual on such occasions, each of us presented him with a *khatag*, in the corner of which were tied up a few *tankas* in a bit of paper, on which was written our request.

After a hurried breakfast, while the servants were engaged in saddling the ponies and packing, I went and kotowed to the Buddha in the temple, placed *khatag* on the sacred images, and distributed alms to the monks assembled in the courtyard to offer prayers for my safe journey. Then I returned to my room, picked out the handsomest *khatag* I possessed, and presented it to the minister. His holiness graciously touched my head with his palms, and in solemn tones said, "Sarat Chandra, Lhasa is not a good place. The people there are not like those you meet here. The Lhasa people are suspicious and insincere. You do not know, and, in fact, you cannot read their character. I advise you not to stay long in one place there. The Lhacham Kusho is a powerful personage in Lhasa; she will protect you, but you should so behave as rarely to require her protection. Stay not long in the vicinity of the Dabung or Sera monasteries. If you intend to make a long stay at Lhasa, choose your residence in a garden or village in the suburbs. You

* The "presiding deity" was probably Dorje sempa or Vajrasattva. The Kala Chakra mysticism and its standard work in the Tibetan Tanjur, called 'Dus-gi khorlo,' which I once tried to read, have remained beyond my comprehension. Emil Schlaginweit, 'Buddhism in Tibet,' pp. 46–57, and p. 242 *et sqq.*, gives many details on the subject. See also Waddell, *op. cit.*, 15, 144, 397.—(W. R.)

† This official is referred to, p. 94.—(W. R.)

have chosen a very bad time for your pilgrimage, as small-pox is raging all over Central Tibet; but you will return safely, though the journey will be trying and fraught with immense difficulties." * Then, turning to Tsering-tashi, around whose neck the minister's page put a *khatag*, he said to him, "Tsing-ta, I believe you know whom you are accompanying. You should serve him as you would serve me; your relations with him must be those of a son with his parents."

After saying good-bye to the members of the minister's household, presenting and receiving *khatag* and various other little presents, and drinking tea, I mounted my pony and set out for Gyantse. Thus did I start on a journey to a hostile, inhospitable, and unknown country with only two men as my companions, and they strangers to me.

At a huge willow stump I waited a while for Tsering-tashi to join me, for Pador, with the pack-pony, had gone to his home to get his lance. As Tsering-tashi came up, he was delighted to see water flowing from a pool in the direction we were to follow; this he took for a most auspicious sign. On reaching *chorten*, about a mile from the town, we alighted and waited for Pador, who shortly after made his appearance with a lance full 12 feet long in his hand.

By noon we reached Gyantse, and, passing rapidly through the market-place, where I feared to be recognized, we entered the Gyan-khar, or castle of Gyantse.

At 1 p.m. the Lhacham and her sons started for Lhasa, and as she passed by me she told me to meet her at Gobshi that evening.

I was now surrounded by the Chyag-dso-pa and his family, all curious to see the Indian physician of whom they had heard so much of late. From what the Chyag-dso-pa told me, I concluded he had chronic bronchitis, which might end in consumption. I gave him a few grains of quinine and some doses of elixir of paregoric, and directed him also as to his diet.

After partaking of some *gyatug*, rice, and boiled mutton with the family, I asked permission to leave, and was escorted to the gate, where, mounting my pony, I bade them farewell.

The Lhasa high-road I found very similar to a rough Indian cross-road; in some places it is more than 20 feet wide, in others a mere trail, while in many places, where it runs between fields, it is also made to serve the purpose of an irrigation ditch. The Tibetan

* Chandra Das's experience recalls to my mind the prophecy made me in 1889 by an incarnate lama in the Tsaidam. 'Land of the Lamas,' pp. 164, 165.

Government pays very little, if any, attention to road-making, though, in such a dry climate, it would be easy to construct good ones, and it would be little trouble to keep them in repair. Thus far on my travels in Tibet I had seen no wheeled conveyances, and I now learnt that such things are unknown throughout the country.

Shortly after starting it began snowing heavily. As we rode on along the bank of the Nyang chu, Tsering-tashi pointed out to me the road to Phagri, the monastery of Na-ning, the ruins of Gyang-to, both formerly places of importance. Then we entered the *rong*, or defiles,* where used to live three tribes of herdsmen, the Gyangro, Ning-ro, and Gang-ro, who carried on a thriving trade in yak-tails (*chowries*), felt hats, felt, and blankets.

Crossing the river at Kudung zampa, we reached by dusk the village of Gobshi,† where the Lhacham had only preceded us a little. I found her very gloomy, for she had just learnt that there were in the house where she was now stopping five small-pox patients. I was asked to vaccinate her and her whole party; but, unfortunately, the lymph which I had asked for in India had not reached me before leaving Tashilhunpo; it was still at the Lachan barrier with Ugyen-gyatso.

May 13.—Gobshi, or "four gates," is a large village of about fifty houses, half of it belonging to the Lhacham's father-in-law. There are a few poplar and pollard willow trees growing in front of the village, and terraced fields planted with barley extend along the river banks. A little to the east of the village, in the hills beyond the confluence of the Nyang and Niro chu, there is a very ancient Bonbo lamasery, called Khyung-nag, or "Black Eagle" monastery, which in the fifteenth century was a place of pilgrimage famous throughout Tibet.

After leaving Gobshi, we passed by Kavo gomba, a Ningma religious establishment, and Tsering-tashi called my attention to the blue and red bands painted on the walls of the temple and dwellings of the lamas, telling me that these coloured stripes are characteristic of this sect.

Pushing on through a number of small villages, the road in some places extremely difficult and even dangerous, we forded the Nyang chu

* *Rong* usually means a fertile valley where cultivation is possible, or which is cultivated.—(W. R.)

† Gab zi on the maps. It must be the same as A. K.'s Upsi village, where, he says, there is a large Chinese stage-house.—(W. R.)

at Shetoi,* took a short cut to the Ralung zamba, and by 3 p.m. reached the village of Ralung chong-doi, crossing once more the river by a wooden bridge before entering it.

Ralung † is one of the most sacred places in Tibet, for it is here that the great Dugpa school of red-hat monks originated, a school still influential with numerous adherents in Southern, Northern, and Eastern Tibet, and in Bhutan, which latter country is, in fact, called Dugpa owing to the preponderance of this sect. The Ralung-til, the head monastery of the Dugpa, is to the south-east of this village. This monastery owes its name to the fact that it is surrounded by mountains as the heart (*mt'il*) of a lotus is by the corolla.

May 14.—We left without even waiting for a cup of tea, as the Lhacham was desirous of reaching Nangartse the same day, and, in spite of my enfeebled condition, I was anxious to keep up with her party, for the country we had to traverse is infested by brigands.

After following up the river for a while, we ascended the Karo la,‡ a lofty plateau from which we could distinguish to the north-east the snow-covered slopes of the Noijin kang-zang (or Noijin norpa zang-po and Kang zang-po). The plateau of the Karo la is called Oma tang, or "milky plain," § as is also the little hamlet near the summit of the pass. On this plateau, which is about five miles broad where we traversed it, there is fine grazing, and we saw numerous herds of yaks by the sides of the little streamlets which meander over its surface, the one flowing westward becoming the Nyang chu; the other flows to the east, and is called the Kharnang-phu chu, and along this the road led. On the summit of the pass I noticed a species of thorny shrub, the like of which I had not seen in any other part of Tibet; the thorns were quite long, and the stem and leaves of the plant of an ash grey colour.

A short way down the other side of the pass we came to a little hut made of loose stones, where we rested and partook of some

* Called Shetot on the map.—(W. R.)

† A. K. says that there is also at this village a large Chinese post station. These post stations are called *tang* in Chinese; the building itself is a *kung kuan*. On the Dugpa sect, see Waddell, *op. cit.* He says it originated in the XIIth century.—(W. R.)

‡ Also known as Ralung la, according to A. K.—(W. R.)

§ Jaeschke, Dict., *s.v. o-ma.*, says that this name designates the plain on which Lhasa stands. Georgi, *op. cit.*, p. 451, mentions between Gyantse and Nangartse, Lhomar and Lhamentung. The first place I do not find on any maps at my disposal. The latter, however, corresponds with the Langma of the maps. According to the maps, the Karo la is 16,600 feet high.—(W. R.)

refreshments. In conversation with the Lhacham, I mentioned the superiority of sedan chairs (*shing-chyam*) over saddle-horses, especially for women when travelling. But she held that it was degrading men to make them serve as beasts of burden, and that if it should be tried in Tibet the people would certainly resent it as an indignity. "There are only the two Great Lamas, the Amban and the Regent, who are allowed to use sedan chairs in Tibet," she went on to say; "no other persons, however great they may be, can make use of them."

About six miles down the valley we came to the hamlet of Ring-la, where the Kharnang-phu chu turns north to empty into the Yamdo-yum-tso. At this village the Nangartse plain begins, and the monastery of Samding becomes faintly visible.

The road now became good, and the ponies quickened their pace, and by 5 o'clock we came in view of the town of Nangartse.

The houses of the fishermen and common people (*misser*) are perched on the hillside overlooking the prefect's house (*djong*), and the broad blue expanse of Lake Palti's waters spreads out beyond. The party stopped, and the Lhacham changed her garments for finer ones, and put on her jewelled headdress (*patug*). On arriving at the gate of the house where we were to stop, there was a raised platform covered with soft blankets; here the Lhacham alighted, while her sons and the rest of the party got down near by.

The brother and nephew of the host were laid up with small-pox (*lhan-dum*), and in a corner of the house some lamas were reading the holy books to bring about their speedy recovery.* In the court-yard lay another man lately arrived from Lhasa, and suffering from the same disease, and near him were two lamas chanting *mantras* to the discordant accompaniment of a bell and a *damaru* (hand drum).

I passed a miserable night, with a raging fever and violent cough racking my whole frame. My two companions sat beside me and did what they could, but concluded that it was impossible in my present state for me to keep up with the Lhacham's party all the way to Lhasa.

The next morning I was no better, the fits of coughing were more violent. The sons of the Lhacham and her attendants came to see me, and expressed their sorrow at having to leave me. The host said that the best thing for me to do was to go to the Samding

* On such religious services, see Waddell, *op. cit.*, 353, 494 *et sqq.*—(W. R.)

monastery, where there were two skilful physicians who had recently successfully treated a case similar to mine. Hearing this, one of the Lhacham's maids suggested that her mistress might give me a letter of introduction to the lady abbess of this convent, the Dorje Phagmo, with whom she was related and on the most friendly terms; the only danger was that she might not allow me to enter her convent, as, on account of the epidemic of small-pox, she had closed it to pilgrims.

I followed the advice of those around me, and the Lhacham kindly wrote to the Dorje Phagmo to take care of me and look to my wants; and after taking an affectionate farewell, and telling me to come straight to her house at Lhasa as soon as I recovered, she recommended me to the people of the house and rode off.

After taking a little breakfast, I made up my mind to go at once to the Samding gomba, which I learnt could be reached in two hours' ride.

My companions wrapped me in woollens and blankets, and with a turban round my head they set me on my horse. About two miles from town we came to the river (the same we had followed since crossing the Kharo la), and found it teeming with a small variety of fish. After crossing several rivulets we came to the foot of the hill, on the top of which stands Samding lamasery.* A flight of stone steps led up to the monastery, and I looked at the long steep ascent with dismay, for I did not see how I would ever be able to climb it in my present condition. Taking a rest at every turn in the steps, I managed finally to reach the top, some 300 feet above the plain. We had not, however, arrived at the convent; a narrow pathway led up to the gateway, near which were chained two fierce watch-dogs (*do khyi*), who barked furiously and strained at their chains as we passed. The Yamdo dogs, I had heard, were famous throughout Tibet for their size and fierceness, and these certainly justified the reputation given them.

I sat down on a stone near the gateway to wait until Tsering-tashi had looked up the physicians. After an hour he returned and informed me that one of the *Amchi* (physicians) was in the lamasery, and he led me to his house, at the top of which I waited his coming. After a little while the doctor made his appearance. He was a man of about seventy years of age, but still sturdy, of middle stature, with

* The name is written Bsam-lding, meaning, apparently, "fancy floating." It was founded, according to Chandra Das's authorities, by Shon-nu drupa.—(W. R.)

an agreeable face, broad forehead, and dignified appearance. He asked me a few questions, examined my eyes and tongue, and then led the way into his house. We ascended two ladders, and thus reached the portico of his apartment. The old man sat for a while turning his prayer-wheel, and taking frequent pinches of snuff while he scrutinized me closely.* Then he gave me a powder to be taken in a little warm water, and ordered his cook to give me some weak tea (*cha t'ang*), after which, bearing the Lhacham's letter in his hand, he went with Tsering-tashi to present it to the Khyabgong Dorje Phagmo.†

In the evening I was led to a house in the western end of the lamasery belonging to a monk called Gelegs namgyal, where I had to accommodate myself as best I could under the portico.

Tsing-ta, as Tsering-tashi was usually called, told me that he had asked the Dorje Phagmo to tell my fortune, and that she had made out that my illness would prove very severe but not fatal, but the performance of certain religious ceremonies was most urgently needed to hasten my recovery. She sent me word that, in view of the letter of introduction from the Lhacham I had brought with me, she would shortly be pleased to see me, and that we might have all we required while stopping in Samding.

The next day my companions asked me to give a "general tea" (*mang ja*) to the eighty odd monks of the convent, and to distribute alms to them at the rate of a *karma* (two annas) a head. I gave my consent, and at the same time my companions made, in my name, presents to the Dorje Phagmo and to the deities that were pointed out to them as best able to drive away the fiends of disease which surrounded me.

The Dorje Phagmo gave Tsing-ta a sacred pill (*rinsel*) containing a particle of Kashyapa Buddha's relics, and the latter hastened to bring it to me, and insisted on my swallowing it forthwith.‡

* Tibetan, Mongol, and Chinese doctors ask their patients but few, if any, questions. They are supposed to diagnose the disease by the general appearance of the patient and by his pulse and the condition of his urine.—(W. R.)

† Khyab-gong and Khyab-gong rinpoche are titles given all the higher incarnate lamas. The word means "protector."—(W. R.)

‡ Such pills are usually called *mani rilbu*. On the ceremonies performed in making them, I must refer the reader to my paper on the subject in *Proceedings of the American Oriental Society*, October, 1888, p. xxii. On the subject of "general teas," see Huc., Souvenirs,' vol. ii. p. 122; 'Land of the Lamas,' p. 104; and Waddell, 'Buddhism of Tibet,' p. 191.—(W. R.)

The Amchi advised me to carefully abstain from drinking cold water, especially as the water of the lake was injurious to many persons even when in good health. He also forbade me drinking buttered tea.

By agreeing to pay my host a daily sum of four annas, I managed to rent his two miserable rooms. They were about six feet by eight, and six feet high. In the bedroom were a couple of little tables, half a dozen books, and a couple of boxes; in a corner there was a little altar and two images of gods.

The next day there was a new moon, and the monks assembled early in the congregation hall to perform religious services, as on the morrow began the fourth month (*saga dao*),* the holiest of the year.

At the conclusion of the ceremonies Tsing-ta again saw the Dorje Phagmo, and, presenting her with a *khatag* and a couple of *tanka*, obtained another sacred pill. The doctor and his assistant impressed upon me the importance of only taking such medicines as experience had shown were efficacious in the Yamdo country. They also insisted that it was essential to my recovery that I should not sleep in the daytime. I felt so weak and ill that towards midnight I called my companions to my side, and wrote my will in my notebook. Later on some medicine given me by the doctor's assistant, Jerung, brought me some relief.

May 18.—Tsing-ta again gave the lamas a *mang ja* and money to read the sacred books to my intent, and got still another sacred pill from the Dorje Phagmo. On his way back to our quarters he saw the ex-incarnate lama of the Tse-chog ling of Lhasa. He had been degraded for having committed adultery.

Seeing no pronounced improvement in my condition, my faithful follower went again in the afternoon to see the Dorje Phagmo, presented her a *khatag* and ten *tanka*, and got her to perform the ceremony known as "propitiating the gods of life" (*tse dub*). She also gave him a long list of religious rites, which, according to her, it was imperative that I should immediately get learned lamas to perform to insure my speedy recovery.

These rites were the following: 1. Reading the Pradjna paramita in 8000 shlokas, together with its supplements—twelve monks could

* *Sa-ga* is the name of the 15th lunar mansion (*gyu-kar*), and also of a month of the year. Dao is *Da-wa*, "a month." On the new moon festivals, see Waddell, *op. cit.*, 501.

do this in two days. 2. Making the three portion (*cha gsum*) offerings, these consisting in painted wafers of *tsamba* and butter. One-third is offered to the ten guardians, Gya-ljin (Indra), the god of fire, the ruler of Hades, the god of wind, etc.; another portion is offered to the spirits, and the third to the demi-gods. 3. *Gyal-gsol*, or propitiating certain genii to the end that the patient's mind may be at rest and he enjoy peaceful dreams. 4. Libations to the gods or Gser-skyems. This is held to be one of the most efficacious ways of propitiating the gods. 5. "To deceive death" (*hchi-slu*), by offering an image of the sick person, together with some of his clothes, and food to the Lord of death, and beseeching him to accept it instead of the person it represents. This means is resorted to after all others have failed. 6. "To deceive life" (*srog-slu*), by saving from death animals about to be killed. This is also known as "life-saving charity." The saving of the lives of men, beasts, and particularly fishes, is calculated to insure life.* When Tsing-ta proposed this to me, I at once agreed to save five hundred fish. The old doctor said he would go to the fishermen's village, some three miles away, buy the fish, and set them free for me, if I would but lend him a pony. He came back in the evening, and reported that he had successfully accomplished this most important mission, by which much merit would come to me.

In spite of all these rites and observances, for some days my illness showed no signs of improvement, and so at last, on May 22, Tsing-ta went once more to the Dorje Phagmo, and, making her a present of five *tanka* and a *khatag*, asked her to find out by her divine knowledge if the old Amchi was the right man to attend to me. She threw dice (*sho-mon*),† and then said that the two physicians could be depended on.

Accordingly, I sent for the physicians, gave them each a present, and begged them to prepare some new and energetic remedy for me. In the evening Jerung brought me some pills, which smelt strongly of musk, and some powders, probably those known as *gurkum chusum*.‡ After having taken some of each I felt somewhat better.

By the following morning there was a marked improvement in

* This custom prevails in China, where it is called *fang sheng*, "to let go living creatures."—(W. R.)

† See 'Land of the Lamas,' p. 164.

‡ *Gurkum* is saffron. *Chusum* may be rhubarb.—(W. R.)

my condition, and I was able to sit propped up on my blankets. The news of the favourable change was at once reported to the Dorje Phagmo, who advised Tsing-ta to have performed the ceremony for propitiating Tamdrin, Dorje Phagmo, and Khyung-mo (the Garuda); especially of the first-named. Tsing-ta made her a further present of seven *tanka* and a *khatag*, and she agreed to perform these ceremonies herself.

May 24.—Early this morning the old doctor visited me. "The danger is over," he said; "the fatal stage is passed; you can take a little food, some *tsamba*, a little soup and meat." In truth, I felt so much better to-day that I took some exercise, and the fresh, bracing air did me a world of good.

The next day I was able to visit the shrines of Samding, on which tour my two companions accompanied me, carrying a bowl of butter, a bundle of incense-sticks, and about fifty *khatag*.

We first went to visit the kind old physician and his assistant, and I was much struck by the neat appearance of the floors of his rooms, made of pebbles very evenly laid in mortar, and beautifully polished. In the doctor's sitting-room the walls were frescoed with Buddhist symbols, trees, and hideous figures of guardian deities. The furniture comprised of four painted chests of drawers, half a dozen small low tables, some painted bowls for *tsamba*, two little wooden altars covered with images of gods, and some rugs spread on the top of large mattresses. On the walls hung some religious pictures covered with silk curtains, and in a corner there were a sword and shield.

On leaving the physician's house I entered the courtyard of the monastery, which I found more than 150 feet long, and 100 broad. There were buildings on three sides, and broad ladders, each step covered with brass and iron plates, leading to the main floor; the middle ladder is used by the Dorje Phagmo alone. On inquiring for her holiness, we learnt that she was engaged in certain religious duties, and would see me later.

In the meanwhile I visited various chapels and shrines. In the *gong-khang* (upper rooms) are lodged the most terrifying of the demons and genii; their appearance is so awful that they are usually kept veiled. Almost all the images were dressed in armour, and held various weapons in their hands. To each of the images Tsing-ta presented a *khatag* and a stick of incense, and Pador poured a little butter in the brass or silver lamps kept continually burning before them.

It is due, by the way, to the Dorje Phagmo's spiritual influence that the waters of the inner lake or Dumo tso ("Demons' Lake"), of the Yamdo tso, are held in bounds, for otherwise they would overflow and inundate the whole of Tibet. 'Twas for this that the Samding lamasery was originally built.

In the largest room on the same floor are the mausolea of the

NAM TOS-SRAS (VAISRAVANA), THE GUARDIAN KING OF THE NORTH.

former incarnations of Dorje Phagmo. The first is made of silver gilt, and was built in honour of Je-tsun Tinlas-tsomo,* the founder of the monastery. The whole surface of the monument is studded over with large turquoises, coral beads, rubies, emeralds, and pearls.

* Cf., however, note, p. 131, where he says that the founder of this lamasery was Shon-nu drupa.—(W. R.)

In shape it resembles a *chorten*, six to seven feet square at the base. Inside of it, on a slab of stone, is an impress of the foot of the illustrious deceased. The second monument is also of silver, and in shape like the preceding, but I could not ascertain the name of the incarnation in whose honour it had been erected. The third, also of silver, is that of Nag-wang kun-bzang, the predecessor last but one of the present incarnation, and has around it, placed there as great curios, some pieces of European chinaware and some toys. The upper part of the monument is most tastefully decorated with gold and precious stones. This work, I believe, has been done by Nepalese, though some persons said it is of native workmanship.

In another room, not open to the public, however, are the mortal remains of the former incarnations of Dorje Phagmo. I was told that each incarnation of this goddess visits this hall once in her life to make obeisance to the remains of her predecessors.

After visiting all the shrines we returned to the Dorje Phagmo's apartments, where I was most kindly received. She occupied a raised seat, and I was given a place on her left, while the ex-incarnate lama, of whom I have previously spoken, occupied one a little behind her, but his seat was higher than mine. The ceremony of propitiating Tamdrin (Hayagriva) was proceeding, and twelve lamas in full canonicals were acting as assistants. A number of respectably dressed men and women who had come to be blessed were also seated about on rugs.

The service lasted about two hours. Every now and then the Dorje Phagmo used an aspergill, with an end of peacock feathers and kusha grass,* to sprinkle saffron water taken from a "bowl of life," most of it, much to my annoyance, for I feared catching cold, falling on me, but it was a much envied token of her special favour. I could not catch the words of the charms (*mantras*) she uttered, as she spoke very rapidly, so as to get through the services as quickly as she could.

At the termination of the service sugared *tsamba* balls, about the size of bullets, most of them painted red, were distributed among those present. Before each person received any he prostrated himself before her holiness, who then gave them to him.

When all the spectators had left, the Dorje Phagmo told me that she took great interest in my recovery on account of the Lhacham, who

* See 'Land of the Lamas,' p. 106. On Tamdrin, see Waddell, *op. cit.*, 62 and 364.

was not only her friend, but her half-sister. I besought her to allow me to proceed on my journey to Lhasa, as I was most desirous of reaching the sacred city by the 15th of the present moon (June 1), the birthday of the Buddha, and she graciously gave me leave to start as soon as I was strong enough to bear the fatigue of travelling.

On taking leave, she gave me three more sacred pills, and directed her valet (*gzim-dpon*) to show me through her residence, where there was great store of handsomely carved and painted furniture, images of gold, silver, and copper neatly arranged on little altars. There was also a library with about 3000 volumes of printed and manuscript books. One work, in 118 volumes, was by Podong-chogleg namgyal, the founder of the sect to which the Dorje Phagmo belongs.

The present incarnation of the divine Dorje Phagmo is a lady of twenty-six, Nag-wang rinchen kunzang wangmo by name. She wears her hair long; her face is agreeable, her manners dignified, and somewhat resembling those of the Lhacham, though she is much less prepossessing than she. It is required of her that she never take her rest lying down; in the daytime she may recline on cushions or in a chair, but during the night she sits in the position prescribed for meditation.*

I learnt that the Dorje Phagmo, or the "Diamond Sow," is an incarnation of Dolma (Tara), the divine consort of Shenrezig. In days of old, before the time when the Buddha Gautama appeared, there was a hideous monster called Matrankaru, who spread ruin and terror over all the world. He was the chief of all the legions of demons, goblins, and other evil spirits; even the devils (*raksha*) of Ceylon had to become his subjects. He subdued to his rule not only this world, but the eight planets, the twenty-four constellations, the eight Nagas, and the gods. By his miraculous power he could lift Mount Rirab (Sumeru) on the end of his thumb.

* Georgi, 'Alph. Tibet,' p. 451 says, "In Australi eorum (montium) latere Monasterium, et Sedes est Magnæ Renatæ Lhamissæ Turcepamò. Eam Indi quoque Nekpallenses, tanquam ipsissimam Deam Bavani venerantur et colunt." Mr. Geo. Bogle visited her at Tashilhunpo in 1775: "The mother went with me into the apartment of Durjay Paumo, who was attired in a gylong's dress, her arms bare from the shoulders, and sitting cross-legged upon a low cushion. She is also the daughter of the lama's brother, but by a different wife. She is about seven and twenty, with small Chinese features, delicate, though not regular, fine eyes and teeth. . . . She wears her hair—a privilege granted to no other vestal I have seen; it is combed back, without any ornaments, and falls in tresses upon her shoulders. . . . I never visited her but this time. Mr. Hamilton used to be there almost every day." Markham, 'Tibet,' pp. 105, 108, 109.

Finally the Buddha and gods held council to compass about Matrankaru's destruction, and it was decided that Shenrezig should take the form of Tamdrin ("Horse-neck"), and his consort, Dolma, that of Dorje Phagmo ("the Diamond Sow"). When the two had assumed these forms they went to the summit of the Malaya mountains, and Tamdrin neighed three times, to fill the demon with terror, and Dorje Phagmo grunted five times, to strike terror into the heart of Matrankaru's wife, and soon both were lying prostrate at the feet of the two divinities. But their lives were spared them, and Matrankaru became a devout follower of the Buddha, a defender of the faith (*chos gyong*), and was given the name of Mahakala.

In 1716, when the Jungar invaders of Tibet came to Nangartse, their chief sent word to Samding to the Dorjo Phagmo to appear before him, that he might see if she really had, as reported, a pig's head. A mild answer was returned him; but, incensed at her refusing to obey his summons, he tore down the walls of the monastery of Samding, and broke into the sanctuary. He found it deserted, not a human being in it, only eighty pigs and as many sows grunting in the congregation hall under the lead of a big sow, and he dared not sack a place belonging to pigs.

When the Jungars had given up all idea of sacking Samding, suddenly the pigs disappeared to become venerable-looking lamas and nuns, with the saintly Dorje Phagmo at their head. Filled with astonishment and veneration for the sacred character of the lady abbess, the chief made immense presents to her lamasery.

May 26.—To-day we made our preparations for the journey to Lhasa, and as food of all kinds was very scarce at Samding, the Dorje Phagmo was so kind as to supply us with all the necessary provisions. The old doctor presented me with a basket of dried apricots and some rice, and our landlord brought us some wild goose eggs.

May 27.—We left to-day for Lhasa. From a little hillock behind our lodgings I cast a last glance towards the lake and the dark hills around it, behind which rose the snow-covered mountains. My eyes fell on the Dumo tso, and on the place where the dead are thrown into the lake, and I shuddered as I thought that this had come near being my fate. Dead bodies throughout Tibet are cut up and fed to vultures and dogs, but on the shores of Lake Yamdo the people throw their dead into the lake. It is generally believed that a number of Lu (serpent demi-gods) live in Lake Yamdo, and

that they keep the keys of heaven. In a palace of crystal in the deep recesses of the lake lives their king, and the people think that by throwing their dead into the lake there is a chance for them of reaching heaven by serving the king of the Lu during the period intervening between death and regeneration. *Bardo* this time is called.

Passing through cultivated fields, where the ponies sank up to their knees in mud, we came to a broad steppe where wild goats

THE DISPOSAL OF THE DEAD (BY CUTTING THE CORPSE INTO PIECES).

and sheep and a few musk deer were grazing. Dorje Phagmo is their special patron, and no wild animals may be killed in the Yamdo district.

At about 2 o'clock we reached Nangartse, and, passing by the town, proceeded northward along the bank of the far-famed Yamdo (Palti) lake, also called Yum tso, or "turquoise lake"—a name which the deep blue waters of the lake amply justify.

Travelling along the lake-side by the villages of Hailo,* Dab-lung, and Dephu, where the fishermen's hide boats (*kudru*) were drying

* Hailo must be the Hang of the maps.—(W. R.)

against the houses, and near which are a few fields where a little barley is raised, we came to the Kal-zang zamba, where we rested a while and drank some tea. Though this place is called "bridge" (*zamba*), it is in reality an embankment about 300 to 400 feet long dividing a narrow arm of the lake into two parts.

A little beyond the Kal-zang zamba, at a place where a string of coloured rags, inscribed with prayers, stretched between two crags on either side the narrow path, Tsing-ta made me dismount. He climbed on to a large rock, and scattered a few pinches of *tsamba*, and, striking a light, lit an incense-stick, which he fixed in a cleft in the rocks. This place is called Sharui teng, and is the haunt of evil spirits; should any traveller neglect to make these offerings, he would incur their anger.

On reaching Palti djong,* we put up at a house where the Lhacham had stopped when on her way to Lhasa, and were most hospitably received. We bought some milk, a few eggs, and some *chang* from the hostess, who supplied us also with water, firewood, and two earthen cooking-pots. I was offered some fish, but I forbore buying any, as it would have been incompatible with my character of a pious pilgrim, such indulgence being forbidden by the Dalai lama. The Grand Lama, I must mention, having lately taken the vows of monkhood, had issued an edict prohibiting his subjects killing or eating fish for the space of one year.

From ancient times the town of Palti has been a famous seat of the Nyingma sect, and the lake was popularly known by its name. The name of the town as applied to the lake by foreigners probably originated with the Catholic missionaries who visited Tibet in the eighteenth century.

When, in the eighteenth century, the Jungars invaded Tibet, their wrath was especially turned against the lamaseries and monks of the Nyingma sect. There then lived in Palti djong a learned and saintly lama, called Palti Shabdung, well versed in all the sacred literature, and proficient in magic arts. Hearing that the invaders had crossed the Nabso la and were marching on Palti, he, by his art, propitiated

* Georgi, 'Alph. Tibet.,' p. 451, speaking of Lake Palti, says, "Palti: Lacus, *alias* Jamdro aut Jang-so nuncupatus. Maximæ amplitudinis est, quam homo pedibus, uti indigene tradunt, nonnisi octodecim dierum spatio circumire queat. Sic totus ambitus 300. circiter milliariorum esset." A. K. calls the town Pete Jong, and on the maps it figures as Pe de Jong, or Piahte-Jong. The Chinese call it Pai-ti, but I have been told by Tibetans that the name is Pé-di (written Spe-di).—(W. R.)

the deities of the lake who caused the waters of the lake to appear to the Jungar troops like a plain of verdure, so that they marched into the lake and were drowned, to the number of several thousands. Another corps which had advanced by the Khamba la, not finding the troops which had gone by the Nabso la, retraced their steps, and so the town of Palti was saved.

May 28.—We left by daylight, and followed along the shore of the lake till we reached the foot of the Khamba la. The ascent was comparatively easy; on the rocks by the wayside were painted in many places images of Buddhas and Bodhisattvas. From Tamalung,* a small village halfway up the mountain, a trail led eastward along the cliffs overhanging the lake, and the sinuosities of the shore could be followed with the eye to the remote horizon.

On the summit of the pass are two large cairns, to which each of my companions added a stone; they also tied a rag to the brush sticking out above the heaps, and already covered with such offerings. Then they made an offering of a little *tsamba* and some dust, instead of wine, to the mountain god, reciting a prayer the while, which they brought to an end by shouting—

> "*Lha sol-lo, Lha sol-lo!*
> *Lha gyal lo, lha gyal lo!*
> *Kei-kei—ho, hooo!*"

From this point I enjoyed one of the grandest views I have ever had in Tibet—the valley of the Tsang-po was before me, the great river flowing in a deep gorge at the foot of forest-clad mountains. Here and there was to be seen a little hamlet, most of the white-walled houses surrounded by a cluster of tall trees.

By 3 o'clock we had reached the foot of the pass, the way down being over a tedious zigzag for over five miles. Along the wayside grew brambles and wild roses, a few evergreens and rhododendrons, and some flocks of sheep were grazing on the hillsides.

Then we came to a sluggish stream, and shortly after reached the straggling village of Khamba partshi,† with some forty wretched stone hovels. Passing through a patch of barley surrounded by pollard willows, we reached the sandy banks of the Tsang-po, and followed along it to Tongbu, the surrounding plain being known as Khamba chyang tang.

* The name is also written Sha-ma-lung and Demalung.—(W. R.)

† The Khamba barchi of the native explorers. It is also called Kampa lacha.—Khamba chyang tang means "Plain north of Khamba."—(W. R.)

Two women weeding their barley patch approached me as I rode by, and offered me a bunch of the young sprouts, in the hope, as Tsing-ta explained, that I would give them some money. This is a custom obtaining throughout Tibet, and is called *lubul*.

Further on, near Toi-tsi, we saw women making bricks, and some donkeys and yaks were carrying away those which had become sufficiently dry to be used. Two miles beyond this point we came to the famous Palchen chuvori monastery and the chain bridge (*chag-zam*) over the Tsang-po. This bridge, built, tradition says, by Tang-tong gyal-po in the fifteenth century, consists of two heavy cables attached at each end to huge logs, around which have been built large *chorten*.*

The bed of the river here is about 400 feet broad, but at this season of the year it spreads out several hundred feet beyond the extremities of the bridge, and travellers are taken across in boats.

The monastery of Palchen chuvori was also built by Tang-tong gyal-po, who is likewise credited with having constructed eight chain bridges over the Tsang-po, 108 temples, and 108 *chorten* on the hills of Chung Rivoche, in Ulterior Tibet, and of Palchen chuvori, in Central Tibet, or U. The Palchen chuvori monastery, where there are upwards of one hundred monks, is supported by the toll collected at the ferry.

We and our ponies crossed the river in a roughly made boat about 20 feet long, but a number of skin coracles were also carrying travellers and freight from one side to the other. It was sunset when we reached the village of Jim-khar, belonging to the Namgyal Ta-tsan, the great monastic establishment of Potala at Lhasa. Here we obtained lodgings for the night in the sheepfold attached to the house of the headman, or *gyan-po*. All the members of the *gyan-po's* family were ill with small-pox, and he himself had but

* A. K. thus describes this bridge: "The bridge is formed of two iron chains, one on each side; from the chains thick ropes are suspended to the depth of four yards; by these ropes planks, three feet long and one foot broad, are supported lengthwise, so as only to admit of one person crossing at a time. The chains are stretched very tight, and are fastened around huge blocks of wood buried beneath immense piles of stone; the length of the bridge is about 100 paces." 'Report on the Explorations,' p. 31. This is the usual style of Chinese suspension bridge common throughout Western China and Tibet. This one was in all likelihood built by the Chinese in the eighteenth century. I am not aware that the Tibetans ever build this style of bridge; theirs are usually of wood and of the cantilever description. See my 'Diary of a Journey,' p. 304. —(W. R.)

recently recovered from it. It began to rain shortly after our arrival, and what with the leaks in the roof and the noise made by nine ponies tied up near us, we passed a miserable night, and were glad to resume our journey at the first streak of dawn. After proceeding some distance we came in sight of the ruins of Chu-shul djong, on a ledge of rocks about a mile from where the Tsang-po is joined by the Kyi chu, the river of Lhasa. Some two hundred years ago Chu-shul was a place of importance, but now it is but a village of about sixty houses, surrounded by wide fields, where barley, rape, buckwheat, and wheat are grown.*

Passing near the hamlets of Tsa-kang and Sému, the road in many places so boggy that the ponies sank in the mire up to their knees, we came, after about four miles, to the ruins of Tsal-pa-nang,† where we overtook some of the attendants of the Lhacham on their way to Lhasa. After conversing with them for upwards of an hour, they rode on ahead, as they were desirous of reaching Netang by sunset; and they advised us to put up in the Jya-khang (or Chinese post station) of the same place, where we would find good accommodation.

Beyond Tsal-pa-nang the road led over a sandy plain, while crossing which we scared up several rabbits (hares?). Proceeding eastward for several miles, we came to the large village of Jang hog, or "Lower Jang," then to Jang toi, or "Upper Jang," ‡ where the beauty of the country so greatly charmed me, each cluster of houses surrounded by groves of willows and poplars, and the fields a mass of flowers, that I called a halt, and, spreading my rug under a willow tree, we made some tea, and my companions indulged in a good long drink of *chang*.

From Jang toi, following a narrow trail overhanging the Kyi chu, we came to Nam. Beyond this little hamlet the path leads over a confused mass of rocks and boulders along the river bank; it is called *gag lam*, or "narrow road," and a false step would throw one amidst the quicksands on the river's bank, or into its eddying waters. I was not surprised to be told that the two elephants sent to the Grand Lama by the Sikkim rajah had had great difficulty in getting

* Chinese authors say that convicts used to be confined at this place. See *Jour. Roy. As. Soc.*, 1891, p. 78.—(W. R.)

† On the maps this place is called Tsha-bu-na.—(W. R.)

‡ Called Chiang-li by the Chinese.—(W. R.)

by this place. After a tedious journey of about three miles through the sand and over the rocks, we got sight of the famous village of Netang,* where the great saint and Buddhist reformer, Atisha, or Dipankara, died.

An old woman led us to the Jya khang, where we were most hospitably received, and though there were other travellers stopping in it, we were accommodated for the sum of a *tanka* in a well-ventilated outer room, the inner ones being reserved for officials, particularly Chinese. Netang has about forty or fifty houses, all built closely together, but many are only miserable hovels.

May 30.—We were off at an early hour, as to-day we wanted to reach Lhasa. The hamlets of Norbu-gang and Chumig-gang, through which we passed, had a number of fine substantial houses belonging to civil officers (*Dung-khor*) of Lhasa, and around them were gardens and groves of trees. Leaving these places behind, we travelled for some miles over a gravelly plain, the river some distance on our right.

When near a gigantic image of the Buddha, cut in low relief on the face of a rock, Potala and Chagpori came in sight, their gilt domes shining in the sun's rays. My long-cherished wish was accomplished—Lhasa, the sacred city, was before me.

Four miles over a fairly good road now brought us to the Ti chu zamba, a large and handsome stone bridge about 120 paces long and eight broad, beneath which flowed a rivulet coming from the hills to the north-west, where stands the monastery of Tsorpu, founded by Karma Bagshi, one of the two celebrated lamas who resided at the Imperial court of China in the time of the Emperor Kublai.

The Ti chu zamba is in the lower part of the big village of Toilung, around which are numerous hamlets, each amid a little grove of pollard willows. The adjacent plain, watered as it is by the Kyi chu and the Ti (or Toilung) chu, is extraordinarily fertile. The country around was everywhere cultivated, and the barley, wheat, and buckwheat were in many places already a foot high.

The road now became alive with travellers, mostly grain-dealers or argol-carriers, on their way to the city with trains of yaks, ponies, mules, and donkeys with jingling bells.

* The name is also written Nyer-tam. The Chinese call it Yeh-tang. Atisha came from India to Tibet in A.D. 1083. His proper Indian name was Dipankara Srijnana.—(W. R.)

We halted for breakfast in a small grove in front of the village of Shing donkar, belonging to Sa-wang Ragasha, one of the senior Shape of Lhasa. We could hear from where we sat the voices of lamas chanting prayers, and I learnt from an old woman who brought my men some *chang*, that there were some eighteen Dabung lamas reading prayers for the recovery from small-pox of the foreman (*shinyer*) of the farm.

About a mile from Sing donkar we came to Donkar, which is considered as the first stage for persons travelling officially from Lhasa.* Then we passed by Cheri, where is the city slaughter-house; and here, strange as it may seem, the Kashmiris come to buy meat, for most of those living at Lhasa are so lax in their observance of the Mohammedan laws about butchering that they will eat yaks killed by Tibetans, even though they have been put to death by wounds of arrows or knives in the stomach.

We stopped at Daru at the foot of the hill covered by Debung and its park, and Pador went to look up a friend whom he was desirous of attaching to my service. After an hour's delay he returned without having found him, and we pushed on, passing the far-famed temple of Nachung chos kyong, where resides the oracle by whom the Government is guided in all important affairs. The temple is a fine edifice of dark red colour, built after the Chinese style, and has a gilt spire surmounting it. At this point the road nears the river, and the whole city stood displayed before us at the end of an avenue of gnarled trees, the rays of the setting sun falling on its gilded domes. It was a superb sight, the like of which I have never seen. On our left was Potala with its lofty buildings and gilt roofs; before us, surrounded by a green meadow (*maidan*), lay the town with its tower-like, whitewashed houses and Chinese buildings with roofs of blue glazed tiles. Long festoons of inscribed and painted rags hung from one building to another, waving in the breeze.

Beyond Daru the road lay for a while through a marsh (*dam-tso*) overgrown with rank grass; numerous ditches drained the water into the river, and at the north-east end of the marsh we could distinguish

* What the Chinese call *chan*. They are ridiculously short on the high-road between Lhasa and China, and probably elsewhere. This is so as to make the *ula* less oppressive, and I suspect it has something to do with the allowances of the Chinese officers who have to travel over it, and which are regulated by stages, not by miles travelled.—(W. R.)

the famous monastery of Sera. Beyond a high sand embankment on our left was the park and palace of Norbu linga, and the beautiful grove of Kemai tsal, in the midst of which stands the palace of Lhalu, the father of the last Dalai lama.

At 4 p.m. we passed Kunduling, the residence of the regent, and entered the city by the western gateway, called the Pargo kaling chorten, and my heart leaped with exultation as I now reached the goal of my journey—the far-famed city of Lhasa, the capital of Tibet.

CHAPTER VI.

RESIDENCE AT LHASA.

PRECEDED by Pador carrying his long lance and by Tsing-ta driving the pack-pony, we entered the city. The policemen (*korchagpa*)* marked us as new-comers, but none of them questioned us. My head drooped with fatigue, my eyes were hidden by dark goggles, and the red pagri around my head made me look like a Ladaki. Some people standing in front of a Chinese pastry shop said, as I passed, "Look! there comes another sick man; small-pox has affected his eyes. The city is full of them. What an awful time for Tibet!"

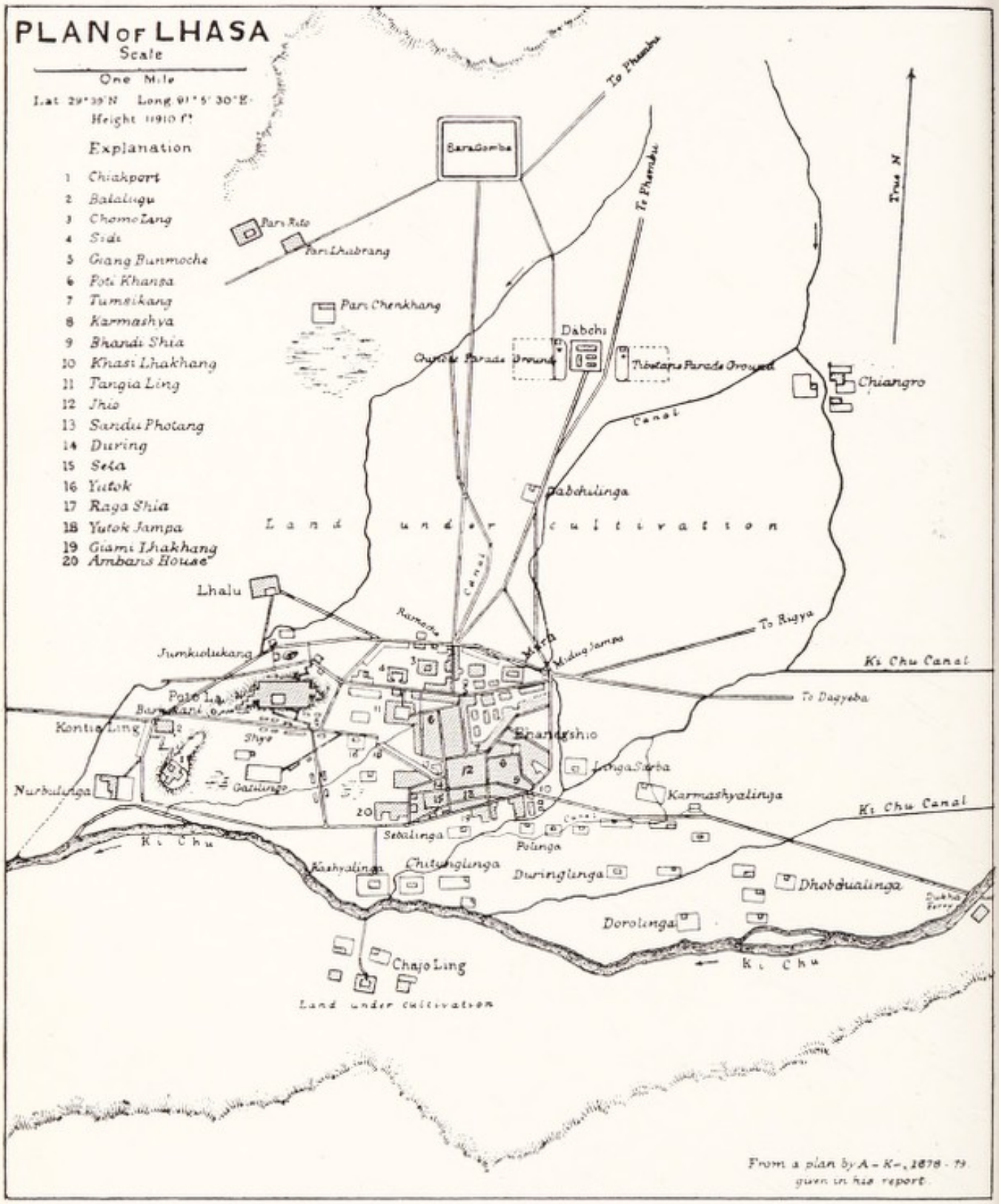
After a few minutes' ride we came to the Yu-tog zamba, a short stone bridge with a gate, where a guard commanded by a lama is stationed, which examines all passers-by to ascertain the object of their visit to the city. To the great delight of my companions, who had been most anxious about my getting over the bridge, we passed by without a question being asked us.

Near the bridge I noticed the *doring*,† a monolith on which is an inscription in Tibetan and Chinese. Though a thousand years old, the stone has been but little affected by the weather, and the characters can be easily read. The monolith I took to be between eight and ten feet in height, and it stands on a low pedestal.

At the Yu-tog zamba the city proper begins. The street on both sides was lined with native and Chinese shops; in front of each was a pyramidal structure, where juniper spines and dried leaves obtained from Tsari are burnt as an offering to the gods.

* I have always heard policemen called *sa sung* (*srung*) *pa* by Tibetans. The word used by our author seems to be *khor che* (*byed*) *pa*, which would correspond to "patrolmen." Huc says that Lhasa is about two leagues in circumference, and A. K. that it is about six miles.—(W. R.)

† Doring (or *rdo ring*) means "ancient stone," or "stone from long ago." On the inscription here referred to, see *Jour. Roy. As. Soc.* (new series), vol. xii. 486 *et sqq.*; and vol. xxiii. p. 264. Yu-tog zamba means "blue roofed bridge."—(W. R.)


PLAN OF LHASA
Scale
One Mile
Lat 29°39'N Long 91°5'30"E
Height 11910 ft
Explanation
1 Chiakport
2 Balalugu
3 Chomo Lang
4 Sidi
5 Giang Bunmoche
6 Poti Khansa
7 Tumeikang
8 Karmashya
9 Bhandi Shia
10 Khasi Lhakhang
11 Tangia Ling
12 Shio
13 Sandu Photang
14 During
15 Seta
16 Yutok
17 Raga Shia
18 Yutok Jampa
19 Giami Lhakhang
20 Ambans House
To Phenbu
To Phendu
True N
Sera Gomba
Pari Rato
Pari Lhabrang
Pari Chenkhang
Dabchi
Chiangro
Canal
Dabchulinga
Land under cultivation
Lhalu
Jumkholukang
To Ruyra
Ki Chu Canal
To Dagyeba
Potala
Kontio Ling
Nurbulinga
Gatulinga
Karmashyalinga
Ki Chu Canal
Ki Chu
Setalinga
Polinga
Kashyalinga
Chitushglinga
Duringlinga
Dhobdualinga
Dorolinga
Chajo Ling
Ki Chu
Land under cultivation
From a plan by A-K-, 1878-79
given in his report

[To face p. 149.

Coming to the street to the south of Kyil-khording,* we found on either side of it Nepalese shops several stories high, also Chinese ones, where silk fabrics, porcelain, and various kinds of brick-tea were exposed for sale.

A lama guided us from this street to the Bangye-shag, a castle-like building three stories high, the residence of Sawang Phala, the husband of my protectress, the Lhacham. Leaving me at the postern gate, my two companions went in and presented the lady with a *khatag*, and she directed them to take me to Paljor rabtan, a building belonging to the Tashi lama, where all officers and monks from Tashilhunpo find lodgings when in Lhasa, and where we would be given accommodations.

The gateway of Paljor rabtan was about eight or nine feet high and five feet broad, and from the lintels fluttered fringes about a foot and a half broad.† Two stout flag-poles 20 to 25 feet high, carrying inscribed banners, stood on either side of it. Ascending a steep staircase, or rather a ladder, we came to a verandah, opposite which was a pretty glazed house, the dwelling of the *khang-nyer* (or "house-keeper"), and were soon given by him a room to lodge in, and served with tea and *chang* by an old woman. From the window of our room we could see the *damra*, or grove of poplars and willows in a marshy bit of land adjacent to the Tangye-ling monastery, and further west shone the lofty gilt spires of Potala.

May 31.—The heavy shower which had fallen last evening cleared up the atmosphere, and the gilt domes and spires glittering in the morning sun filled me with delight, and I had difficulty in subduing my impatience to visit all the monuments now before me, and of which I had dreamed of for so many years. At 7 o'clock Pador brought me a pot of tea prepared in the house of the water-carrier; but, instead of butter, tallow had been used in its preparation, and I

* Better known by its popular name of Cho or Jo khang, or Lhasa Jo-wo khang. A. K. calls it Jhio. He also mentions Azimabad (Patna) merchants as having shops in Lhasa.—'Report on the Explorations,' p. 32. See also Waddell, *op. cit.*, 300 *et sqq.*

† These "fringes" are cotton strips on which are printed charms (*mantras*). Usually the figure of a horse occupies the middle of the strip. They are called *lung-ta*, or "wind-horse." E. Schlaginweit, 'Buddhism in Tibet,' p. 253, and plate xi. The "inscribed banners" belong to the same class of objects, and have also prayers or passages from the scriptures printed on them. Georgi, 'Alph. Tibet,' p. 509, refers to these "flag-poles" as being called *Tarpo che* (*tar-pai shing*?), "Arbor salutaris, depulsoria mali." See also Waddell, *op. cit.*, 468 *et sqq.*

could not swallow it;* but we managed, after a while, to make some in our own room. Shortly after Tsing-ta came in, bringing a pair of rugs, two cushions, and two little tables he had borrowed at the Bangye-shag. He had also an invitation from the Lhacham to visit her in the afternoon.

Having shaved and donned my lama costume and goggles, we started for Bangyeshag, which was about a mile from our lodgings. Most of the shops we saw were kept by Kashmiris, Nepalese, or Chinese; the Tibetan ones were few and poorly supplied.

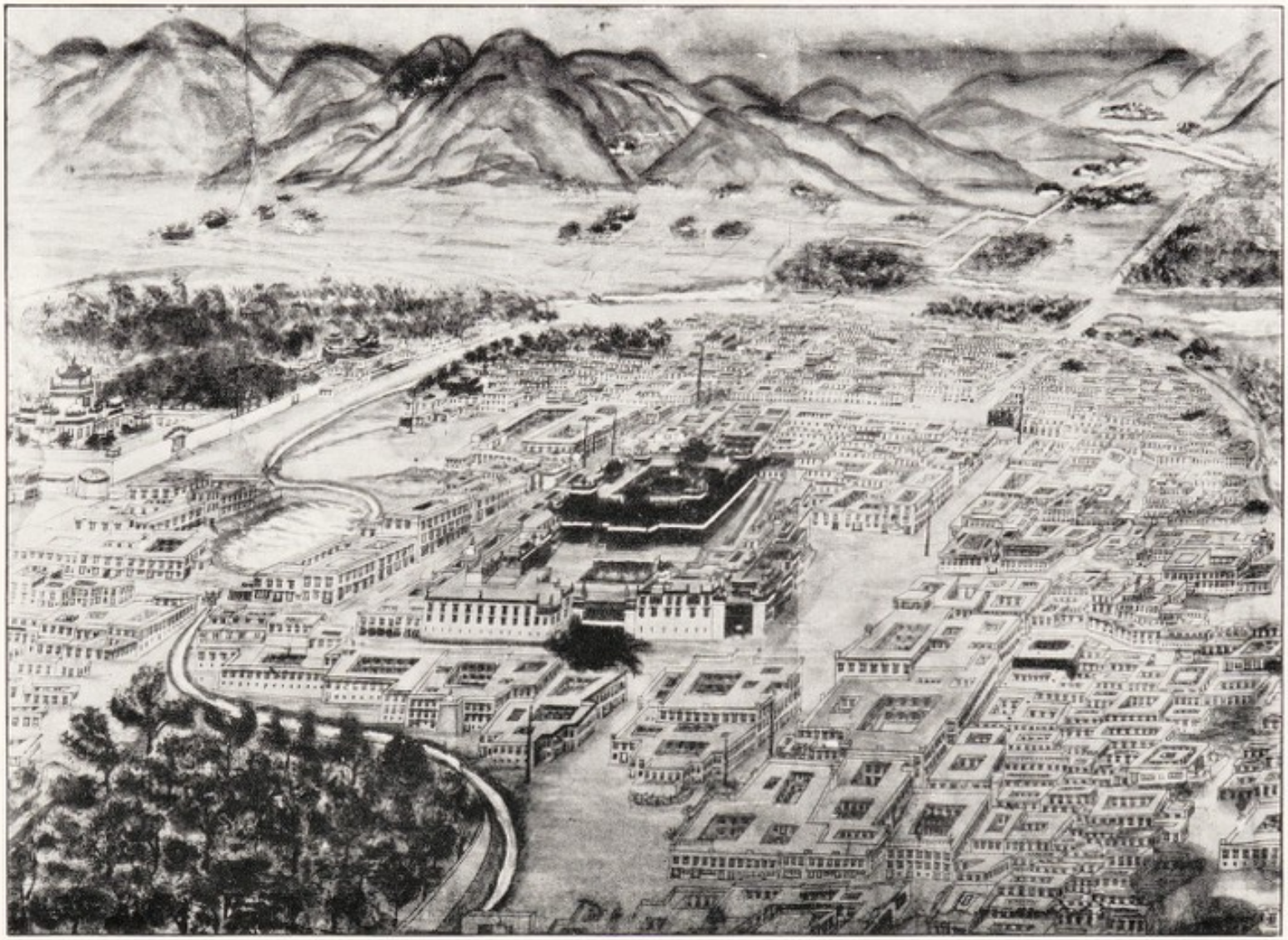
Bangyeshag is a lofty, flat-roofed stone building with two large gateways. The ground floor is used as storerooms and quarters for the *amlas* or retainers of the Phala estates. The beams, the cornices, as also the window-frames, are painted red; a few of the windows have a little pane of glass in them, but most of them are covered with paper. On reaching the second floor, the Lhacham's maids (*shetama*) greeted me most kindly, and insisted on my taking a cup or two of tea, after which they led me to her ladyship's room, where, taking off my hat, I presented her a visiting scarf (*jadar*) and a piece of gold of about a *dzo* weight.† Making motion to one of her maids to present me a scarf, she kindly wished me welcome ("*Chyag-peb nang chig, Pundib la*"), and bade me take a seat ("*Pundib la, shu dang shag, shu dang shag*"). After conversing with her a while about my recent illness, and telling her of the kindness of the Dorje Phagmo, that merciful Lady of the Lake to whom I owe my life, I took my leave and returned home.

June 1.—June 1 is the holiest day of the year, *saga dawa*,‡ the day of the Buddha's *nirvãna*, and incense was burnt on every hilltop, in every shrine, chapel, lamasery, and house in or near Lhasa. Men, women, and children hastened to the sacred shrine of Kyil-khording (or Jo khang, as it is commonly called), to do *puja* to the Jo-vo ("Lord Buddha") and obtain his blessing. All carried in their hands bundles of incense-sticks, bowls of butter, and *khatag* of all sizes and qualities. Our fellow-lodgers went with the rest, calling at my room on the way out, and in a short time we also joined the crowd.

* Mutton fat is a common substitute for butter in tea among the Tibetans, and is not always used as a *pis aller*, but in preference to butter.—(W. R.)

† A *dzo* is a tenth of an ounce (*sang*), or about two-thirds of a rupee in weight. In India its equivalent is a *tola*.—(W. R.)

‡ The Buddha's death is said to have occurred on the 15th of the 4th month, which only occasionally falls on June 1.—(W. R.)



PLAN OF THE CITY OF LHASA. [*To face p.* 151.

A broad street runs in front of the Jo khang, and the road which comes from the Pargo kaling gate terminates on its western face, and here grows a tall poplar said to have sprung from the hair of the Buddha. Beside this is the ancient stone tablet erected by the Tibetans in the ninth century to commemorate their victory over the Chinese, and which gives the text of the treaty then concluded between the Emperor of China and King Ralpachan.*

The magnificent temple engrossed, however, all my attention. In front of it is a tall flag-pole, at the base of which hang two yak-tails, some inscriptions, and a number of yaks and sheep-horns. In the propylon of the chief temple (*Tsang khang*), the heavy wooden pillars of which are three to four feet in circumference, and about twelve feet high, upwards of a hundred monks were making prostrations before the image of the Lord (*Jo-vo*) on a throne facing the west. This famous image of the Buddha, known as Jo-vo rinpoche, is said to have been made in Magadha during the lifetime of the great teacher.† Visvakarma is supposed to have made it, under the guidance of the god Indra, of an alloy of the five precious substances, gold, silver, zinc, iron, and copper, and the "five precious celestial substances," probably diamonds, rubies, lapis-lazuli, emeralds, and *indranila*.

The legend goes on to say that the image was in the first place sent from India to the capital of China in return for the assistance the Emperor had given the King of Magadha against the Yavanas from the west. When the Princess Konjo, daughter of the Emperor Tai-tsung, was given in marriage to the King of Tibet, she brought the image to Lhasa as a portion of her dowry.

* "Outside the gate (of the Jo khang) there is a stone pillar in a poor state of preservation: it is the tablet containing the alliance of Tang Te-tsung with his nephew. On either side of the pillar are old willows, whose aged trunks are bent and twisted like writhing dragons. It is said that they date from the Tang period." *Jour. Roy. As. Soc.* (new series), vol. xxiii. p. 264. This inscription bears date A.D. 783.—(W. R.)

† See I. J. Schmidt, 'Geschichte der Ost-Mongolen von Ssanang Ssetsen,' p. 3[illegible], According to Tibetan historians, this same princess (or Kung chu, her name was Chin-Cheng), the wife of King Srong-btsan gambo, introduced into Tibet, among other things, the art of pottery, grist-mills, looms, etc. Emil Schlaginweit, 'Die Könige von Tibet,' p. 49. Chinese authors (see *Jour. Roy. As. Soc.*, vol. xxiii. p. 191) attribute to her influence the first use of winepresses, paper, ink, the Chinese almanac, and the introduction of the silkworm. This princess was not a daughter of the Emperor Tai-tsung, but a member of his family. She appears to have travelled from China to Lhasa by the Hsi-ning road, which passes by the sources of the Yellow River.—(W. R.)

The image is life-size and exquisitely modelled, and represents a handsome young prince. The crown on its head is said to be the gift of Tsong-khapa, the great reformer. The Kunyer said that the image represented the Buddha when at the age of twelve; hence the princely apparel in which he is clothed and the dissimilarity of the image to those seen elsewhere.* On the four sides of it were gilt pillars with dragons twined around them, supporting a canopy. On one side of the image of the Buddha is that of Maitreya, and on the other that of Dipankara Buddha.† Behind this, again, is the image of the Buddha Gang-chan wogyal, and to the right and left of the latter those of the twelve chief disciples of the Buddha.

We were also shown the image of the great reformer, Tsong-khapa, near which is the famous rock, called *Amolonkha*, discovered by Tsong-khapa.‡ On this rock is placed the bell with a gem in the handle, supposed to have been used by Maudgalyayana, the chief disciple of the Buddha.

After the image of the Buddha, the most celebrated statue in this temple is that of Avalokiteswara with the eleven faces (Shen-re-zig chu-chig dzal). It is said that once King Srong-btsan gambo heard a voice saying that if he made a full-sized image of Shenrezig, all his wishes would be granted him; so he constructed this one, in the composition of which there entered a branch of the sacred Bo tree, some soil of an island in the great ocean, some sand from the River Nairanjana,§ some *gosirsha* sandalwood, some soil from the eight sacred places of India, and many other rare and valuable substances. All these were first powdered, then, having been moistened with the milk of a red cow and a goat, made into a paste and moulded into a statue. To give it additional sanctity, the king had a sandalwood image of the god brought from Ceylon put inside of it.

This statue is also known as the "five self-created" (*nya rang chyung*); for the Nepalese sculptor who made it said that it had sprung into shape rather than had been moulded by him, and it is

* On the various celebrated images of the Buddha, see 'Land of the Lamas,' p. 105, note 2. Kunyer is the "keeper of images."—(W. R.)

† Maitreya (*Chyamba*, in Tibetan) is the Buddha to come in the last period of this cycle, and Dipankara (*Mar-me dzad*) is the Buddha of the first period. The historical Buddha, or Sachya tubpa, is the Buddha of the present era.—(W. R.)

‡ Our author calls it "a fossil rock . . . discovered in a rock cavern in Tibet." I can offer no explanation of the nature of this relic.—(W. R.)

§ A river of Magadha famous in early Buddhist history, and in which the Buddha is said to have bathed after attaining omniscience.—(W. R.)

further said that the souls of King Srong-btsan gambo and his consorts were absorbed in it. It occupies the northern chapel in the temple, and is surrounded by the images of a number of gods and goddesses.

In the outer courtyard of the temple is a row of statues, among which is that of King Srong-btsan gambo and various saints and Pundits. On the porch of the Tsang-khang are images of the Buddhas of the past, present, and future. Innumerable other highly interesting images and votive offerings were shown us, among which I will mention a hundred and eight lamps made out of stone under Tsong-khapa's directions.

Among the other objects of interest shown us was a stone slab (*Padma pung-pa*) which King Srong-btsan gambo and his wives were wont to use as a seat when taking their baths, and a life-size statue of Tsong-khapa surrounded by images of gods, saints, and worthies. In the room where these statues are seen, and which is closed by a wire lattice, is also a famous image of the god Chyag-na dorje (Vajrapani). When the iconoclast King Langdarma * began persecuting Buddhism, he ordered this image to be destroyed. A valet tied a rope around its neck to drag it from the temple, but he suddenly became insane, and died vomiting blood, and the image was left undisturbed.

In the outer court, or *khyamra*,† is the image of the god Tovo Metsig-pa,‡ by whose power the invading armies of China were routed in the war which immediately followed the death of King Srong-btsan gambo. Near it are statues of the king and his two consorts, and some huge yak-horns, of which the following anecdote is told to inquisitive pilgrims by the temple servants (*kunyer*). Ra-chung-pa, a disciple of the great saint Milarapa,§ had been to India, and had

* This king reigned over Tibet at the end of the ninth century, A.D. He appears to have been a fervent follower of the Bonbo religion. He was murdered in 900 by a lama who had disguised himself so as to be able to approach the king, and went through clownish tricks and dances. The murder of the king is still fêted by dances, in which the participants wear costumes resembling those of the murderer of the iconoclast. See *supra*, p. 114.—(S. C. D.)

† Presumably *Chyi* (*phyi*), "outside;" and *ra-wa*, "an enclosure."

‡ I suppose this name means "innumerable beings; legions of beings (*gro-vo*); a host in himself." The title To-wo or, "Angry," applies to a whole class of deities of the Protector (or *Chos-gyong*) class.—(W. R.)

§ A wandering lama and saint who lived in Southern Tibet in the eleventh century, and who taught by parables and songs, some of which have considerable literary merit.

there studied under the most learned masters all the mysteries of the faith, and had returned to Tibet filled with pride over his knowledge. Travelling to Lhasa with his master, they reached the middle of the desert called Palmoi-paltang, when Milarapa, who knew of the conceit of his disciple and wished to teach him a lesson, ordered him to fetch him a pair of yak horns lying near by. But Ra-chung-pa said to himself, "The master wants everything he sees. Sometimes he is as fretful as an old dog, at others as full of childish fancies as an old man in his dotage. Of what possible use can the horns be to him; he can neither use them for food, drink, nor clothing?" Then he asked the sage what he proposed doing with them. "Though it is not possible to say what may occur," replied Milarapa, "they will certainly be of use some time or other;" and he picked them up himself and carried them along.

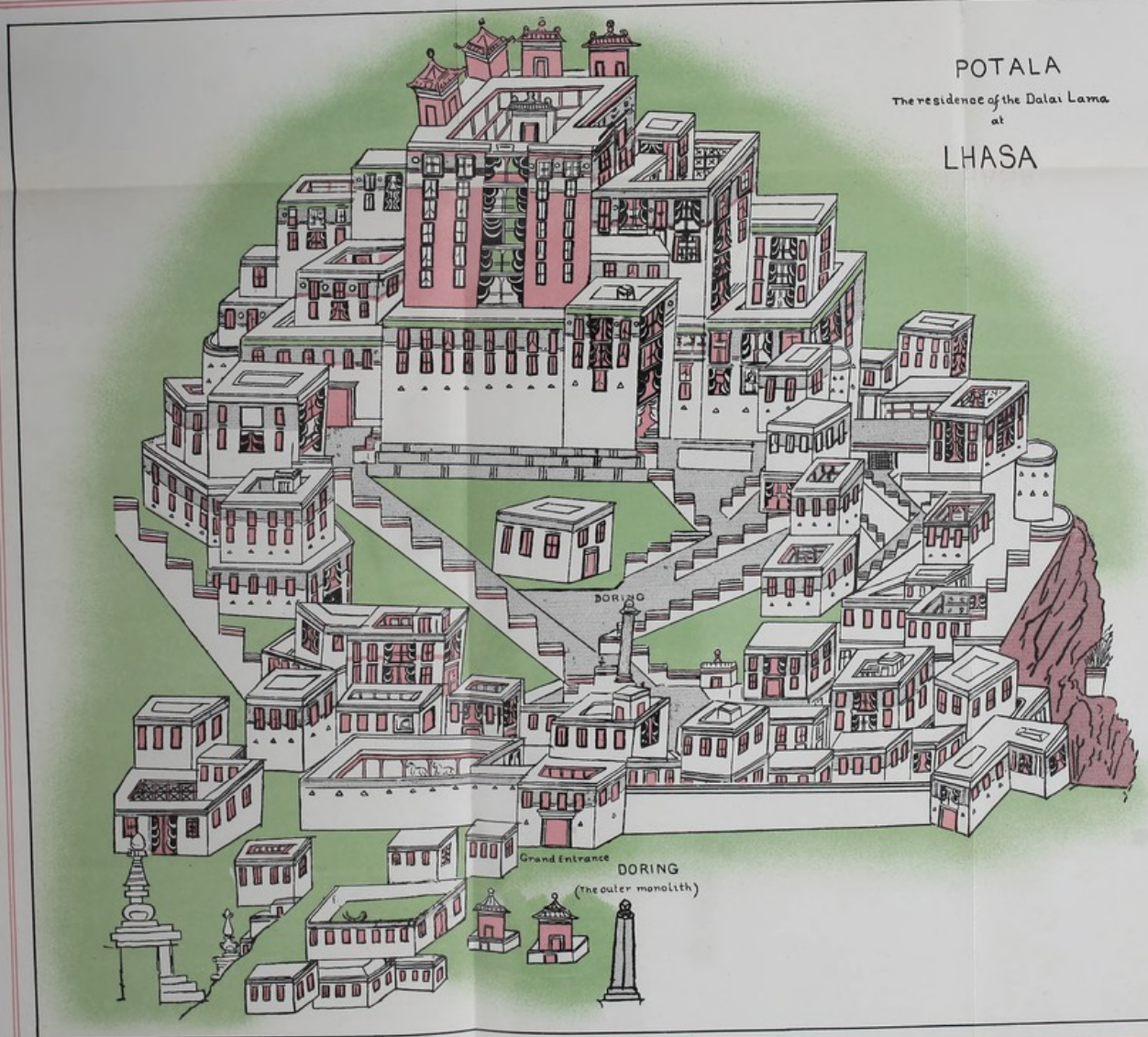
After a while a violent hailstorm overtook the travellers, and there was not so much as a rat-hole in which they could find shelter. Ra-chung-pa covered his head with his gown, and sat on the ground till the storm had passed by. When he searched for the lama, he could see him nowhere; but he heard a voice, and, looking about, lo! there was Milarapa seated inside one of the horns. "If the son is the equal of the father, then," said the saint, "let him seat himself inside the other horn;" but it was too small to even serve Ra-chung-pa for a hat. Then Milarapa came out of the horn, and Ra-chung-pa carried them to Lhasa, and presented them to the Jo-vo.*

After visiting all the ground floor we climbed up to the second and third stories, where we were shown a number of other images, among which I noticed that of Paldan lhamo. By the time we had seen all the images we had exhausted our supply of butter, for Pador had put a little in every lamp lighted that day in the chapels. Those before the image of the Jo-vo were of gold, and each must have held ten or twelve pounds of butter.

By the time we reached our lodgings I was completely worn out, and passed the rest of the day in my rooms or on the housetop, the

The two principal works ascribed to him are an autobiography, or 'Nam-tar,' and a collection of tracts called 'Lu bum,' or "the myriad songs." They are still among the most popular books in Tibet. See *Nineteenth Century*, Oct., 1899, pp. 613–632.—(W. R.)

* Though I have not a copy of Milarapa's 'Lu bum' with me, I feel sure that this anecdote is taken from it.—(W. R.)



W. & A. K. Johnston Limited, Edinburgh & London

Published by the Royal Geographical Society

view from which always charmed me, especially when the rays of the setting sun shone brightly on the gilded domes of the temples and palaces.

I was much troubled in my mind by hearing from Tsing-ta that small-pox was raging in town, even the keeper of our house, his wife and children, were down with the disease, and in every dwelling in the neighbourhood some one was ill with it.

On the following morning (June 2), after an early breakfast, I went to visit the famous shrine of Ramoche,* carrying, as on the previous day, a bundle of incense-sticks, some butter and *khatags*. We took a horribly muddy lane, where heaps of filth emitted a most offensive odour; then, turning northward, we crossed the Potala road at the north-west corner of the Tomse-gang, as the Kyil-khording square is commonly called, and passed by the lofty Wangdu *chorten*, which was built to bring under the power (*wang*, "power;" *du*, "to subjugate") of Tibet all the neighbouring nations. This spot is also called Gya-bum gang, for it is said that once during the Ming dynasty of China 100,000 (*gya-bum*) Chinese troops camped (*gang*) on the plain to the north of this *chorten*. Other accounts explain this name by saying that in the war with China, after the death of King Srong-btsan gambo, 100,000 Chinamen were killed in a battle near this spot.†

A few hundred paces beyond this place we reached the gate of Ramoche, the famous temple erected by the illustrious Konjo,‡ daughter of the Emperor Tai-tsung, and wife of King Srong-btsan gambo. It is a flat-roofed edifice three stories high, and has a wide portico. At the front of the building there is to be seen a very ancient inscription in Chinese, giving probably the history of the building of the temple. The image of Mikyod dorje (Vajra Akshobhya), brought here by King Srong-btsan's second wife, a Nepalese princess, is of undoubted antiquity, even though the face of the statue is covered with gilding.

In the northern lobby are heaps of relics—shields, spears, drums, arrows, swords, and trumpets, and in a room to the left of the entrance,

* Ramoche means "a large enclosure"; it was probably the name of the locality on which the famous temple was built, and not the original name of that structure.—(W. R.)

† A. K. (*op. cit.*, p. 33) mentions this *chorten* which he calls Giang Bimmoche, 'erected in honour of a Tibetan hero who is said to have killed 100,000 of his enemies (Chinese) on the spot."—(W. R.)

‡ The princess is said to have been buried in this temple.—(W. R.)

and shut in by an iron lattice, are a few very holy images. With the exception of a very small gilt dome built in Chinese style, I saw nothing strongly indicative of that description of architecture, and, taking it all together, Ramoche fell far short of the preconceived idea I had formed of it.*

Lay monks, or Serkempa, usually perform the services held at Ramoche, and half a dozen of them and a *kunyer* (sexton) live in the upper stories of the temple.

As we left the temple we were met by a party of singing beggars, who followed us to our house clamouring for *solra*, or alms; finally we sent them off with a *karma*, or the value of two annas. Had we given more we would have been persecuted by numerous other parties of these pests.

June 3.—A lama of Khams, whom I had met at Tashilhunpo, came to see me to-day. He told me that he was waiting for nine loads of silver from Tashilhunpo, on the arrival of which he would leave for Western China, coming back to Lhasa next March or April. I had heard at Tashilhunpo that he had a caravan of 700 mules, and carried on trade between Darchendo † and Lhasa. This Pomda ‡ lama was a man of gigantic stature, something over six feet, well proportioned, and of great strength; he was well known to brigands, and none dared molest him. My further acquaintance with him confirmed me in the opinion I had formed of the Khambas. Though they are wild, they are devoted friends, and when once one becomes intimate with one of them, he will be faithful to the end.

I heard to-day the following story about the famous Regent Tsomoling and his social reforms: Once there came to Lhasa a lama pilgrim from Tsoni, in Amdo,§ and he was admitted into the Sera

* Georgi, 'Alph. Tibet,' p. 242, says, "Magiæ Doctores *Nga Rambà* dicti, diabolicæ hujus sapientiæ mysteriis initiantur, Magica Laurea solemniter ornantur in duobus *Lhassæ* Cœnobiis *Ramoie Chintopà* and *Morù* Chinpà nuncupatis. . . . Oracula sunt tum publica tum domestica, quæ Populi, quæ Cives, quæ sacri ac profani Magistratus adeant responsa capturi."

† Or Ta-chien-lu, on the border of Sze-chuen.—(W. R.)

‡ Pomda appears to be Pungde, a little post-station two days' ride from Chamdo, and south-east of that town. It is called by the Chinese Pao-tun. See my 'Diary of a Journey,' p. 316.—(W. R.)

§ Amdo is that portion of the western border-land of the Chinese province of Kansu and Sze-chuen which is occupied by Tibetan tribes. This anecdote is also found in Ugyen-gyatso's relation of his exploration, 'Report on Explorations from 1856 to 1886,' p. 31.

convent, where he studied under a learned Mongol lama. After a few years the Amdo lama's tutor returned to his home, and on parting he left his pupil a couple of earthen pots, a *khatag*, and a bag of barley, the most valuable things he possessed, as he told him. The pupil, disappointed with these gifts, carried the pots to the market and sold them for half a *tanka*, with which he bought butter that he put in the lamps burning before the great image of the lord (Jo-vo), praying that if he ever became Regent of Tibet, he might be able to reform the social customs of the country.

In the course of time he rose to the dignity of a teacher in his convent; then he became its abbot, or *khanpo;* and finally he rose to the rank of regent. One of the first acts of his administration was to expel all public women from Lhasa, and to compel all women to cover their faces with a coating of catechu, so as to hide their comeliness from the public view.* Women were also made to wear a bangle cut out of a conch-shell on their right wrist, by which they could be held when arrested. From his time also dates the use by women of aprons (*pang-den*) and of the present style of headdress, or *patug*. The old style of *patug* is now only worn by the wives (or Lhacham) of the Shape (ministers). He was the first of the Tsomoling lamas, and his reincarnations still inhabit the lamasery of that name behind Ramoche.

On June 4 I again visited the Jo khang.† After paying reverence to the Jo-vo and circumambulating his sacred throne, the *kunyer* poured some holy water (*tu*) into my hand from a golden vessel. In a little *chorten* in one of the chapels on the south side of the temple is kept a statue of red bell-metal, or *li-mar*, made, so says tradition, in the days of King Kriki, when men lived 20,000 years. For many centuries it was kept by the kings of Nepal; but when a princess from that country married King Srong-btsan gambo, she brought it to Tibet, and placed it in this temple, where it is the object of constant worship.

But perhaps the most revered of all the images in the Jo khang,

* Cf. Huc, 'Souvenirs d'un voyage dans la Tartarie et le Thibet,' vol. ii. p. 258; and 'Land of the Lamas,' p. 214.

† Georgi, *op. cit.*, p. 406 *et sqq.*, describes very fully and accurately this famous temple, of which he also gives a ground plan. He calls it the *Lahpranga Lhassensi*. This description agrees very closely with that of our author, and is highly interesting, as the analogies between its style of architecture and that of Christian churches are discussed.—(W. R.)

exclusive of that of the Jo, is that of Paldan lhamo (Srimati devi). The terrifying face of the goddess is kept veiled, but the *kunyer* uncovered it for us. This terrific goddess is regarded as the guardian of the Dalai and Tashi lamas. The chestnut-coloured mule she rides, the offspring of a red ass and a winged mare, was given her by the

PALDAN LHAMO (SRIMATI-DEVI).

goddess of the sea. The saddle she sits on is the skin of an ogre, and the bridle and crupper are vipers. Kya dorje gave her dice with which to play for lives, and the ogres, or Srinpo, presented her a string of skulls, which she holds in her left hand, and the goblins that haunt graveyards gave her corpses, on which she feeds. In her right hand she holds a club given her by the god Chyagna-dorje. 'Twas in such

fearful attire that she waged war against the foes of Buddhism, and became the greatest of all its guardian deities.

The chapel of Paldan lhamo is overrun by mice, so tame that they crawled up the *kunyer's* body. They are supposed to have been lamas in former existences. On one of the walls we saw a painting made with the blood of King Srong-btsan.

As we were walking home I saw some men hawking books, and told them what works I would buy if they could but procure them for me. They promised to bring them to me shortly.

The excellent brick-tea (*du tang-nyipa*) which I had brought from Tashilhunpo was now exhausted, and I was reduced to drinking a miserable quality known as *gya-pa*. *Du tang*, or first-quality tea, is more highly flavoured than the quality I liked, but it was too strong for me.

Tea was introduced into Tibet earlier than the tenth century, but it only became of universal use from the time of the Sakya hierarchy and the Phagmodu kings.* During the early part of the Dalai lama's rule the tea trade was a governmental monopoly, and since the beginning of the present century, though nominally open to every one, the trade is practically in the hands of the officials.

Some notes on the mode of selection of incarnate lamas may not be out of place here. It used to be customary when selecting incarnate lamas to either decide by throwing dice or by some other trial of luck, or by taking the opinion of the College of Cardinals; but that method not giving perfect satisfaction, it was decided that the candidates should undergo certain examinations, which, together with the hints thrown out from time to time by the defunct incarnation as to where and when his successor would be found, helped in the determination of the lawful reincarnation.

From the middle of the seventeenth century down to 1860, when the Dalai lama, Tinle-gyatso, was chosen, the rightful reincarnation

* Phagpa was given the government of Tibet by the Emperor Kublai in A.D. 1260. The first of the Phagmodu kings was Nyakri btsan-po, who is said to have ascended the throne of Tibet (then a little principality south of the Tsangpo, in the Yarlung valley) B.C. 313. See I. J. Schmidt, *op. sup. cit.*, p. 23; and Emil Schlaginweit, 'Die Könige von Tibet,' pp. 39–41. From B.C. 313 to A.D. 1260 is such a long period of time, that we are hardly able to say that the date of the introduction of tea into Tibet has been fixed. It is probable that the Tibetans did not use tea before the eighth century, at the earliest, and its use only became common in recent times. No mention, I believe, is made of tea in the works of Milarapa (eleventh century), nor in any of the older books known to us in the Tibetan language.—(W. R.)

of a defunct saint was found out by the use of the golden jar, or *ser-bum.**

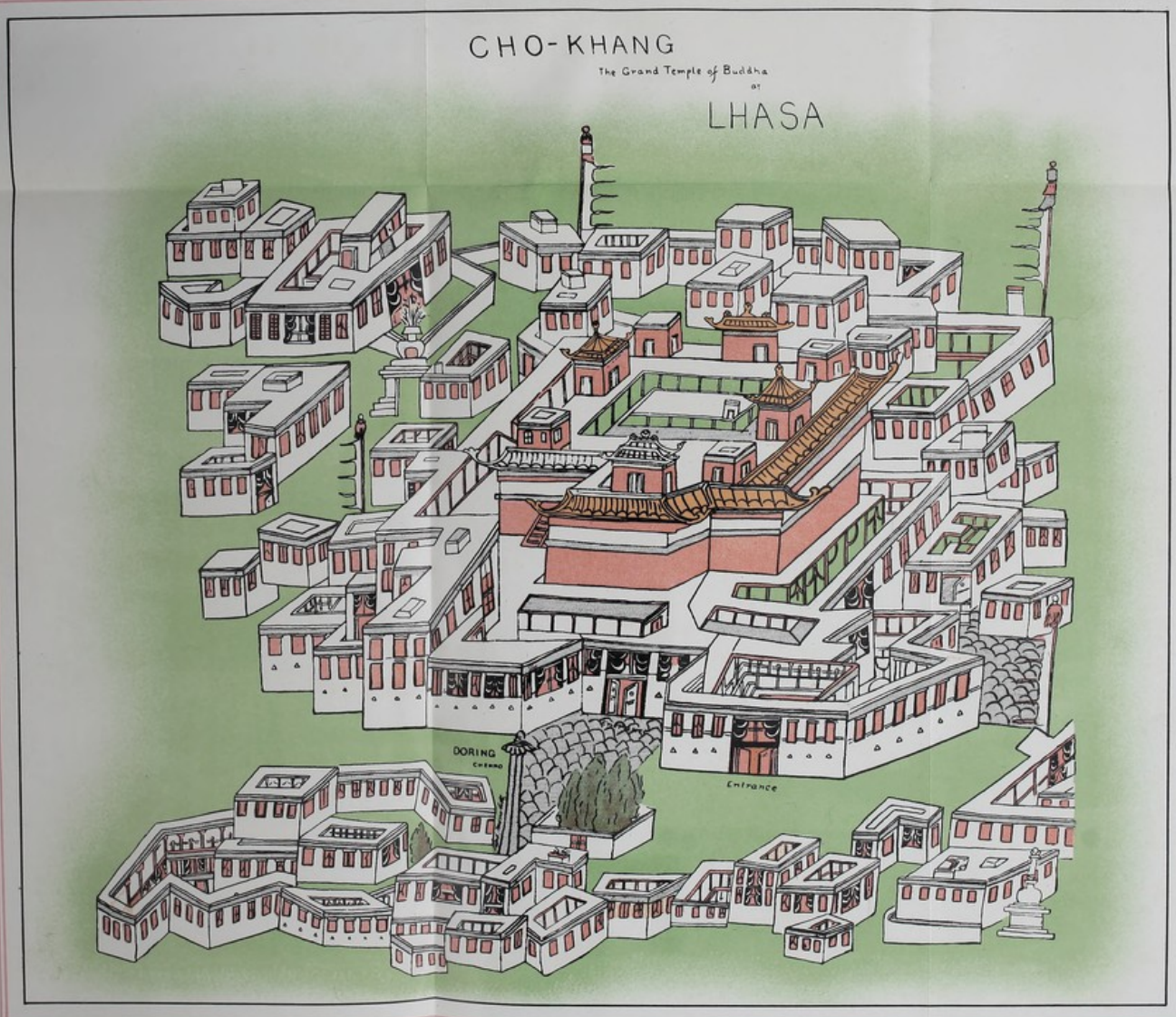
Three years after the death of an incarnate lama the names of the different children, who it was claimed were his reincarnation, were taken down. These names, in the case of the Dalai or Tashi lamas, were sent to the regent for examination, after which the president of the conclave, in the presence of the Regent and the ministers, enclosed in *tsamba* balls slips of paper, on each of which was written the name of a candidate. In other *tsamba* balls were slips on which was written "yes" or "no," as well as some blank slips. All these were put together in a golden jar, which was placed on the altar of the principal chapel of Lhasa, and for a week the gods were invoked. On the eighth day the jar was twirled round a certain number of times, and the name which fell out three times, together with a pellet in which was a slip inscribed "yes," was declared the true reincarnation. Those who were sent to bring the reincarnated saint to Lhasa or Tashilhunpo submitted him to certain trials; as, for example, picking out from a number of similar objects the rosary, the rings, cup, and mitre of the deceased lama.†

In 1875, a year after the death of the Dalai lama Tinle-gyatso, the regent and the College of Cardinals consulted the celebrated Nachung Chos-gyong oracle ‡ about the Dalai's reappearance, and the oracle declared that the reincarnation could only be discovered by a monk of the purest morals. It required, again, the supernatural powers of the oracle to find the future discoverer of the Grand Lama; he was the Shar-tse Khanpo of Gadan, a lama of great saintliness and profound knowledge. The oracle further stated that he should

* According to Chinese authors, the selection of incarnate lamas by the drawing of lots from a golden vase dates from 1793. See *Jour. Roy. As. Soc.*, vol. xxiii.; 'Land of the Lamas,' p. 290; Waddell, *op. cit.*, 245 *et sqq.* and 279, note 2; also Huc, *op. cit.*, vol. ii. p. 348. François Bernier, in his 'Voyages' (1723), vol. ii. p. 310, gives some interesting details about the reincarnation of the Grand Lama, as told him by an attaché to a mission from the King of Little Tibet to Aureng-Zeb.—(W. R.)

† Among the strange events which occur on the birth of a reincarnation of the Tale lama may be mentioned "the blossoming, in the immediate vicinity of the birth-place, of fruit-trees some months before their usual season; the casting of two or more young by animals which as a rule do not cast so many at a birth; and the sudden recovery from fatal illnesses of persons coming in contact with the newborn child." See 'Report on Explorations,' made by A. K., p. 32.—(W. R.)

‡ See Waddell, *op. cit.*, p. 478. He calls him "the Necromancer-in-Ordinary to the Government." He was first brought to Tibet by Padma-sambhava, the founder of Lamaism in the middle of the eighth century.—(W. R.)



W. & A. K. Johnston, Lithgo. Edinburgh & London.

Published by the Royal Geographical Society

go to Choskhor-gya, as the reincarnation was to be found somewhere near Kong-po.* The Khanpo went there accordingly, and sat in deep meditation for seven days, when, on the night of the last day, he had a vision and heard a voice which directed him to repair to the Mu-li-ding-ki tso (lake) of Choskhor. Awakening from his sleep, the Khanpo went to the lake, where, on the crystal surface of the water, he saw the image of the incarnate Grand Lama seated in his mother's lap, and his father fondling him. The house, its furniture, all was shown him. Suddenly the image disappeared, and he set out at once for Kong-po. On the way he stopped in Tag-po at the house of a respectable and wealthy family, and at once he recognized the child and all the images seen in his dream. He promptly informed the Government at Lhasa, and the regent and the cardinals came to Tag-po and took the child, then a year old, and its parents to the Rigyal palace, near Lhasa. This child, now aged ten, is called Nag-wang lo-zang tubdan gya-tso "the Lord of speech, the mighty ocean of wisdom." †

The reason why the golden jar was not used for finding this re-incarnation was because of the apprehension that the Dayan Khanpo's spirit—he had but recently died, and had been violently opposed to the Dalai lamas and their form of government—might be able to cause a wrong name to be drawn from the jar.

June 5.—Early this morning I was invited to dine with the Lhacham at Bangye-shag. I was received most graciously, and was led by the Lhacham to her drawing-room, a room about 16 feet by 12, facing the south and on the third story of the building. There were in it two Chinese chests of drawers, on top of which were a lot of porcelain cups; Chinese pictures—picnics and dancing most of them represented—covered the greater part of the walls; the ceiling was of Chinese satin, and thick rugs of Yarkand and Tibetan make covered the floor. Well-polished little tables, wooden bowls for *tsamba*, and some satin-covered cushions completed the furniture of the room.

* A small and fertile district a little to the east of Lhasa. The chief town in this district is usually called Kong-po gyamda. Explorer K. P. visited it in 1883 (?). He says that "there are about twenty Nepalese shops and fifteen shops of Tibetans at this place." See 'Report of Explorations in Butan and Tibet,' p. 15.—(W. R.)

† Cf. Ugyen-gyatso's account of this discovery in 'Report on the Explorations,' p. 31. The place of his birth was "Paruchude, near Nam Jong, in Takpo," according to the explorer K. P., *op. sup. cit.*, p. 8.—(W. R.)

After conversing for a while and drinking a few cups of tea, the Lhacham withdrew, and one of her maids showed me the rooms in the mansion. The furniture was much the same as that in the Lhacham's room, only of inferior quality and ruder make. The walls were painted green and blue, with here and there pictures of processions of gods and demons, and the beams of the ceiling were carved and painted. The doors were very roughly made and without panels; the windows were covered with paper, with a very small pane of glass fitted in the middle of each. There were no chimneys in any of the rooms, but earthenware stoves, or *jala*. In a few of the rooms flowers were growing in pots.

Returning to the Lhacham's room, dinner was served me at noon, and while I ate she asked me many questions concerning the marriage laws of India and Europe. When I told her that in India a husband had several wives, and that among the Phyling * a man had but one wife, she stared at me with undisguised astonishment. "One wife with one husband!" she exclaimed. "Don't you think we Tibetan women are better off? The Indian wife has but a portion of her husband's affections and property, but in Tibet the housewife is the real lady of all the joint earnings and inheritance of all the brothers sprung from the same mother, who are all of the same flesh and blood. The brothers are but one, though their souls are several. In India a man marries well several women who are strangers to each other." "Am I to understand that your ladyship would like to see several sisters marry one husband?" I asked. "That is not the point," replied the Lhacham. "What I contend is that Tibetan women are happier than Indian ones, for they enjoy the privileges conceded in the latter country to the men." †

June 7.—My two men had heard from Gadan Tipa, a soothsayer, that they would be stricken with small-pox if they ventured to go to Samye, and they besought me to give up the idea; but I declared emphatically my resolve to visit that famous lamasery, and also that of Gaden.

* *I.e.* "foreigners;" literally, "outside-country." The word has no connection, as was once supposed, with *Feranghi* or *Franks*.—(W. R.)

† Our author tells us further on (p. 216) of a woman married to two men not related. Elsewhere he makes mention of a lamasery in which monks and nuns cohabit, and bring up their children in their profession. Polygamy also obtains among the wealthier Tibetans, who have probably adopted it from the Chinese, and monogamy has a few votaries. See 'Land of the Lamas,' p. 211 *et sqq.*

On June 8 I again visited the Jo khang. The numerous wooden pillars supporting the second story are among the most remarkable things in this temple. The largest of these have capitals with sculptured foliage, and are called *ka-wa shing-lho chan.** At their base are buried, it is said, great treasures of gold and silver. Other pillars, with dragon-heads as capitals, have hidden under them charms against devils, for curing diseases, and for keeping off and thwarting the evil designs of the enemies of Buddhism and of the government of the church. Other pillars, again, called *seng go-chan*, "having lions' heads as capitals," have concealed under them many potent charms (*yang-yig*) † to insure bounteous crops.

Under the floor of the Lu-khang are many charms and precious things wrapped in snow-fox or snake-skin. These, it is supposed, preserve the flocks and herds of Tibet. Beneath the image of Dsambhala is hidden in an onyx box some *tag-sha*,‡ which preserves the precious stones, the wool, the grain, and the other riches of the country.

Among the other objects of special sanctity, I was shown in the passage for circumambulating the temple a cavity in the rock where neither moss nor grass grow; it is said to keep back the waters of the Kyi chu from invading the Jo khang.§

June 9.—I went out walking to-day in the direction of Ramoche. On the streets I met numerous bands of *ragyabas*, or scavengers, wandering from place to place, clamouring for alms from every newcomer or pilgrim they saw. If no attention is paid to them, they thrust their dirty hats in the stranger's face and lavish insults on him; and if he take offence, they reply, "Why, my lord, this is not insolence; we are but saluting you!"

These *ragyabas* of Lhasa form a guild. Persons convicted of any crime, or vagabonds, are usually sent back to their native villages, there to work out their sentence; but when the authorities cannot learn whence they come, they are handed over to the chief of the *ragyabas*, who receives them into his guild. Besides begging, the *ragyabas* cut up the corpses which are brought to the two cemeteries

* Meaning, literally, "pillars of southern wood." The "southern wood" is probably the same as the *nan mu* or teak of the Chinese.—(W. R.)

† The term *yang-yig* usually means "musical score," the lamas using sometimes a descriptive score to teach chanting.—(W. R.) Lu kang means "Snakehouse."

‡ A medicinal plant.—(S. C. D.)

§ See *Jour. Roy. Asiat. Soc.*, xxiii. p. 70, and Huc, *op. cit.*, ii. p. 194.—(W. R.)

of Lhasa, near which they live, and feed them to vultures and dogs. A *ragyaba* may not show his wealth, however great it be; the walls of their houses must be made with horns of sheep, goats, or yaks, the convex sides turned upwards.*

At present the chief of the *ragyabas* is a man of about fifty years, called Abula; he wears a red serge gown and a yellow turban. Cursed is the lot of the *ragyabas*, and twice cursed is Abula, if a day passes without a corpse being brought to the cemetery; for people

FUNERAL PROCESSION.

believe that if a day passes without a death it portends evil to Lhasa.

In connection with the erection of Ramoche, it is said that the princess who had it built discovered that the spot on which the

* "In the faubourgs there is a quarter where the houses are built entirely with horns of oxen and sheep. These curious buildings are extremely solid, and present a rather pleasing aspect. The ox-horns being smooth and whitish, and the sheep-horns, on the contrary, black and rough, these strange building materials lend themselves marvellously well to endless combinations, and form on the walls designs of infinite variety; the spaces between the horns are filled with mortar. These houses are the only ones which are not whitewashed," Huc, 'Souvenirs d'un voyage,' vol. ii. p. 254.

temple was erected was in communication with hell, and that there was a crystal palace inhabited by the Nagas deep in the earth underneath this place.*

Among the most remarkable relics preserved in this temple, and which I had not had time to examine on my first rather hurried visit, I now noticed one of Dolma † made of turquoise, and which is said to render oracles, one of Tse-pa-med ‡ made of coral, and one of Rin-chen Khadoma § in amber, and a number of others of jade, conch-shells and *mumen*,‖ besides many jars and bowls of jade and gold.

In the afternoon I called on the Lhacham, and was sorry to learn that her second son had small-pox. I told her how disappointed I was at not having been able to get even a glimpse of the Kyabgong, the "lord protector" of Tibet, the Dalai lama. "Alas!" I added, "I have not acquired a sufficient moral merit in former existences to be able to see Shenrezig in flesh and blood!"

"Do not be cast down, Pundib la; though it is not an easy matter for even the Shape and nobles of Tibet to see the Dalai lama, I will arrange an audience for you." ¶

Early the next day a gentleman (*ku-dag*), who was a Dungkhor of Potala, called on me, and said that the Kusho Lhacham of Phala had arranged with the Donyer chenpo of Potala for an audience for me with the Dalai lama, and that I must get ready as soon as possible.

Swallowing breakfast as quickly as possible, I put on my best clothes, and had hardly finished when the Dungkhor Chola Kusho, accompanied by a servant, arrived. Having provided myself with

* The Kung-chu came to Tibet A.D. 639 (see I. J. Schmidt, *op. cit.*, p. 341). He there says (translating from the *Bodhimur*) that when the princess reached the spot where the Ramoche temple now stands, the cart on which was the image of the Buddha (Jo-vo) stopped of itself, and could not be made to move forward.—(W. R.)

† Dolma, or Drolma (Sanskrit *Tara*). The two wives of King Srong-btsan gambo are worshipped under this name. The Chinese princess is called Dol-kar, or "the white Dolma," and the Nepalese princess Dol-jang, or "the green Dolma." The latter is prayed to by women for fecundity. On the worship of Dolma, see Waddell, *op. cit.*, p. 435 *et sqq.*

‡ The god of eternal life; in Sanskrit, Amitāyus.

§ The Ka-dro (*mkah-hgro*) are nymphs or fairies, all friendly to man. In Sanskrit they are called Dakini. See Waddell, *op. cit.*, p. 366.

‖ *Mumen*, "a precious stone of dark blue, but inferior to the azure stone, occasionally used for rosaries." Mention is also made of *mumen dmar-po* ("red *mumen*"). Jaeschke, 'Tib.-Engl. Dict.,' s.v. *mu-men*.

¶ From what the author says a little later, it would appear that, on the contrary, the Tale lama is very accessible. Manning called repeatedly on him in 1811, and Huc tells us there was no difficulty about being admitted to his presence.—(W. R.)

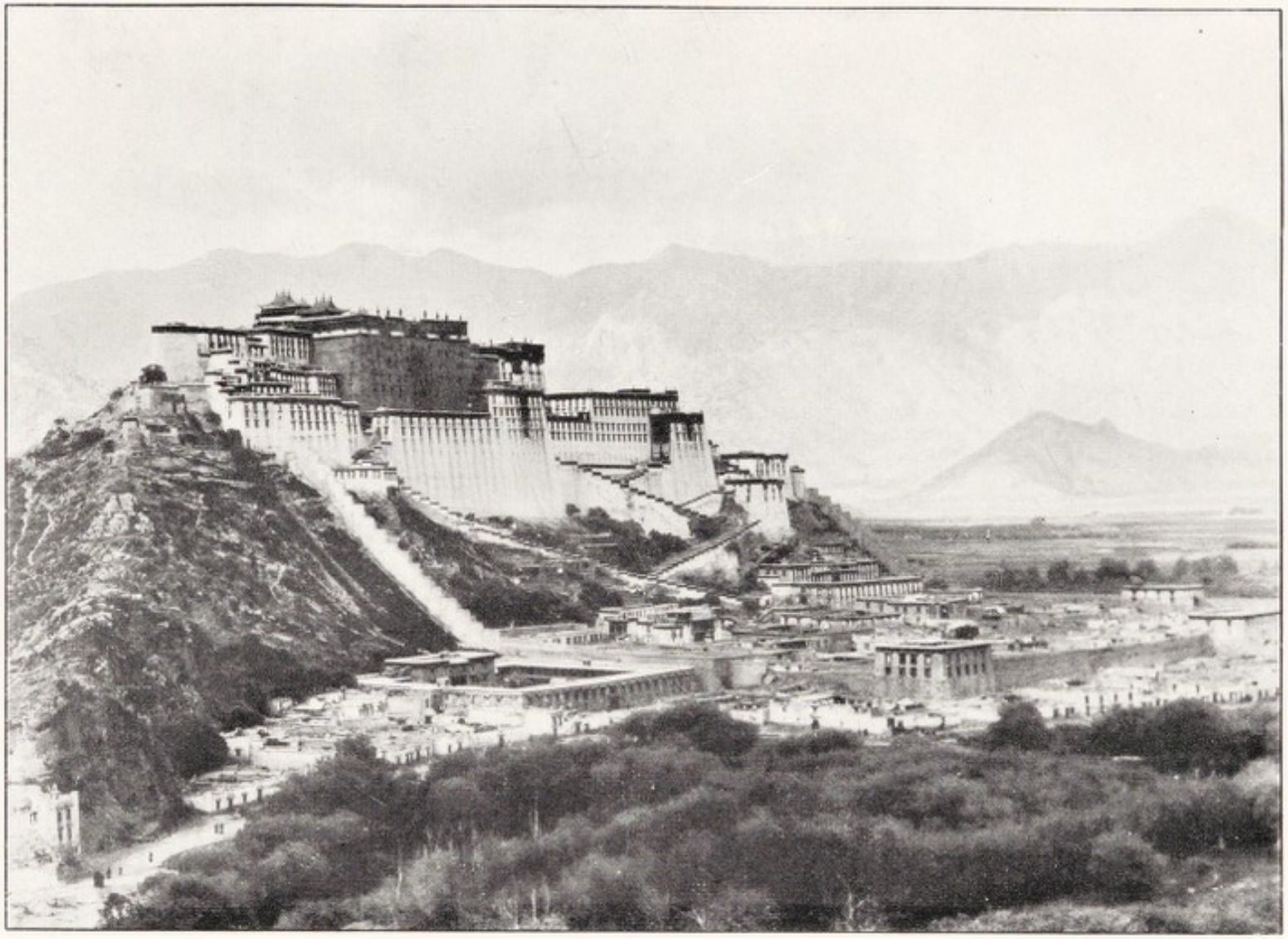
three bundles of incense-sticks and a roll of *khatag*, we mounted our ponies and sallied forth. As we crossed the doorway we saw a calf sucking, and several women carrying water. My companions smiled, and Chola Kusho remarked that I was a lucky man, as these were most auspicious signs.*

Arriving at the eastern gateway of Potala, we dismounted and walked through a long hall, on either side of which were rows of prayer-wheels, which every passer-by put in motion. Then, ascending three long flights of stone steps, we left our ponies in care of a bystander—for no one may ride further—and proceeded towards the palace under the guidance of a young monk. We had to climb up five ladders before we reached the ground floor of Phodang marpo,† or "the Red palace," thus called from the exterior walls being of a dark red colour. Then we had half a dozen more ladders to climb up, and we found ourselves at the top of Potala (there are nine stories to this building), where we saw a number of monks awaiting an audience. The view from here was beautiful beyond compare: the broad valley of the Kyi chu, in the centre of which stands the great city surrounded by green groves; the gilt spires of the Jo-khang and the other temples of Lhasa, and farther away the great monasteries of Sera and Dabung, behind which rose the dark blue mountains.

After a while three lamas appeared, and said that the Dalai lama would presently conduct a memorial service for the benefit of the late Meru Ta lama (great lama of Meru gomba), and that we were allowed to be present at it. Walking very softly, we came to the middle of the reception hall, the roof of which is supported by three rows of pillars, four in each row, and where light is admitted by a skylight. The furniture was that generally seen in lamaseries, but the hangings were of the richest brocades and cloths of gold; the church utensils were of gold, and the frescoing on the walls of exquisite fineness. Behind the throne were beautiful tapestries and satin hangings forming a great *gyal-tsan*, or canopy. The floor was

* Cf. *Jour. Roy. Asiat. Soc.*, xxiii. p. 285.

† The earliest name of Mount Potala was Marpo ri, "the red hill." King Srong-btsan gambo is said to have built a palace on its summit, and it was occupied by the kings of Tibet down to the time of the fifth Tale lama, who built about the middle of the seventeenth century the present palace. See Emil Schlaginweit, 'Die Könige von Tibet,' p. 49. Our author says the palace was built "by the fifth Dalai lama and his illustrious Regent Desi Sangye-gyatso." In connection with our author's audience of the Grand Lama, it is interesting to read Manning's account, which agrees with it very closely.—(W. R.)



POTALA, THE PALACE OF THE GRAND LAMA. [*To face p.* 166.

(*From a photograph by a member of the Nepal Embassy to Peking.*)

beautifully smooth and glossy, but the doors and windows, which were painted red, were of the rough description common throughout the country.

A Donyer approached, who took our presentation *khatag*, but I held back, at the suggestion of Chola Kusho, the present I had for the Grand Lama; and when I approached him I placed in his lap, much to the surprise of all present, a piece of gold weighing a *tola*. We then took our seats on rugs, of which there were eight rows; ours were in the third, and about ten feet from the Grand Lama's throne, and a little to his left.

The Grand Lama is a child of eight with a bright and fair complexion and rosy cheeks.* His eyes are large and penetrating, the shape of his face remarkably Aryan, though somewhat marred by the obliquity of his eyes. The thinness of his person was probably due to the fatigue of the Court ceremonies and to the religious duties and ascetic observance of his estate. A yellow mitre covered his head, and its pendant lappets hid his ears; a yellow mantle draped his person, and he sat cross-legged with joined palms. The throne on which he sat was supported by carved lions, and covered with silk scarfs. It was about four feet high, six feet long, and four feet broad. The State officers moved about with becoming gravity: there was the Kuchar Khanpo, with a bowl of holy water (*tu*), coloured yellow with saffron;† the Censor-carrier, with a golden censor with three chains; the Solpon chenpo, with a golden teapot; and other household officials. Two gold lamps, made in the shape of flower vases, burnt on either side of the throne.

When all had been blessed and taken seats, the Solpon chenpo poured tea in his Holiness's golden cup, and four assistants served the people present.‡ Then grace was said, beginning with *Om, Ah,*

* Manning says of the then Tale lama (Lozang lung-tog-gyatso by name), "The lama's beautiful and interesting face and manner engrossed almost all my attention. He was at that time about seven years old; had the simple and unaffected manners of a well-educated princely child. His face was, I thought, poetically and affectingly beautiful. . . . I was extremely affected by this interview with the lama. I could have wept through strangeness of sensation." See Markham, *op, cit.*, pp. 265, 266. I am sorry I have not now access to Nain Singh's report of his interview with the Tale lama in 1866; but, if I remember rightly, it contains some interesting details on his audience with the Dalai lama Trin-las-gyatso.—(W. R.)

† Water used for oblations in Tibet is usually coloured (or perfumed?) with saffron. See Waddell, *op. cit.*, p. 298.—(W. R.)

‡ Manning says (*op. cit.*, p. 265), "The ceremony of presentation being over, Munshi and I sat down on two cushions not far from the lama's throne, and had *suchi*

Hum, thrice repeated, and followed by, "Never losing sight even for a moment of the Three Holies, making reverence ever to the Three Precious Ones. Let the blessing of the Three Konchog be upon us," etc. Then we silently raised our cups and drank the tea, which was most deliciously perfumed. In this manner we drank three cupfuls, and then put our bowls back in the bosoms of our gowns.

After this the Solpon chenpo put a golden dish full of rice before the Dalai lama, and he touched it, and then it was divided among those present; then grace was again said, and his Holiness, in a low, indistinct tone, chanted a hymn, which was repeated by the assembled lamas in deep, grave tones. When this was over, a venerable man rose from the first row of seats and made a short address, reciting the many acts of mercy the Dalai lamas had vouchsafed Tibet, at the conclusion of which he presented to his Holiness a number of valuable things; then he made three prostrations and withdrew, followed by all of us.

As I was leaving, one of the Donyer chenpo's (or chamberlain) assistants gave me two packets of blessed pills, and another tied a scrap of red silk round my neck—these are the usual return presents the Grand Lama makes to pilgrims.

As we were going out of the hall, we were met by Chola Kusho's younger brother, a monk in Namgyal Ta-tsan, the monastery of the palace, and in his and his brother's company I visited the palace, and learnt from them much relating to the history and the traditions of the place.

We first visited a chapel where is an image of Shenrezig with eleven heads and a thousand arms, an eye in the palm of each of his hands. Near it is an image with four arms, also many small gold *chorten* and objects in bronze. Next I was led to a hall where there is an old throne, opposite which are images of King Srong-btsan, his two consorts, his minister Tonmi Sambhota, General Gar, and Prince Gungri gung-btsan.* Leaving this room, we went to the

brought us. It was most excellent, and I meant to have mended my draught and emptied the cup, but it was whipped away suddenly, before I was aware of it." *Suchi* is *sol (gsol) ja*, the polite term for "tea." "Perfumed tea" is the Chinese *hsiang pien ch'a*.—(W. R.)

* Tonmi Sambhota introduced the alphabet of India into Tibet, and negotiated the king's marriages with his two famous consorts. Gar (*Mgar*) was an equally famous general of the same epoch, and Prince Gungri gung-tsan is, I think, Srong-btsan gambo's grandson. See Emil Schlaginweit, 'Die Könige von Tibet,' p. 47 *et sqq.*—(W. R.)

great hall where Nag-wang lob-zang, the fifth Dalai lama, used to hold his court. Old paintings, supposed to be indestructible by fire, representing King Srong-btsan's family, Shenrezig, and the first Grand Lama, hung from the pillars, and several images, among which one of sandalwood representing Gon-po,* may be seen here.

We were then led to the hall where the Desi Sangye-gyatso used to hold his councils.† Here also is the tomb of the first Dalai lama. It is two-storied, and the dome is covered with thin plates of gold. The Dalai's remains are entombed with many precious things, and the sepulchre is ornamented with various objects of the richest designs and most costly materials brought hither by devotees. This tomb is called the Dsamling gyan, ‡ and is the prototype of the tombs we saw around it containing the remains of the other incarnations of the Dalai lama; but these are all smaller than it.

After visiting these halls we descended to the Namgyal Ta-tsan. The architecture of the Phodang marpo embarrassed me greatly, the halls and rooms being piled up story on story. The stonework was beautiful, but it is so poorly drained that in many places the odours are stifling.

Entering a small room, the cell of our guide, we were given seats and served with tea and a collation. Shortly after we started home, having expressed in the warmest terms our thanks to Chola Kusho and his brother for their kindness. We followed the *ling-khor*, as the road which encircles Lhasa is called. On the way we passed a small grove where is the elephant-shed, the solitary occupant of which—a present from the Rajah of Sikkim—was standing in a barley patch near by. Further on we came to a place where the corpses of the townspeople are fed to pigs, whose flesh, by the way, is said to be delicious. Near here are numerous huts of Ragyabas.

In the evening a drove of donkeys loaded with *tsamba* and butter arrived from Gyantse, and I was distressed to learn that my friend the minister had small-pox. My men again began pestering me to return to Tsang, alleging as a pretext that I might be of assistance

* There are seventy-five gods bearing this name. The gon-po (*mgon-po*) are the fiercest of the terrifying type of divinities.—(W. R.)

† On this famous Tibetan statesman ("*Tisri* vir ingenii sagacissimi," as Georgi, *op. cit.*, p. 329, calls him), see Georgi's notice, *loc. cit.*, and *Jour. Roy. Asiat. Soc.*, xxiii. p. 186.

‡ Meaning "the ornament of the world."

to the minister, and I finally prepared to go to him, especially as the donkey-men said he had expressed a desire to have me near him.

On June 11 I went to see the Lhacham, thanked her for having obtained for me an audience of the Kyab-gong Rinpoche, and spoke to her about my intention of setting out for Dongtse. She advised me to leave at once, as small-pox was raging at Lhasa; her two sons now had it, and from her appearance I feared that she was about to fall ill of the same disease.

Returning to our lodgings, I despatched Tsing-ta to her to ask a loan of 200 *tankas*. The sum was brought me in the evening by her maid Apela, and the Lhacham also sent me provisions for the journey and feed for the ponies.

CHAPTER VII.

GOVERNMENT OF LHASA—CUSTOMS, FESTIVALS, ETC.

THE Dalai lama's * position resembles that held until lately by the Pope in the Christian world. He is believed by the Northern Buddhists to be the Buddha's Vice-regent incarnate on earth, and the spiritual protector of Tibet. He is known as Tug-je chenpo Shen-rezig, or the Most merciful Avalokiteswara. He never dies, though at times, displeased with the sinfulness of the world, he retires to the paradise of Gadan,† leaving his mortal body on earth. The ancient records of Tibet say that he has only appeared on earth fourteen times in the eighteen centuries from the time of the Buddha's death to the beginning of the fifteenth century.

In the year 1474 Gedun-gyatso was born, an embodiment of Gedun-dub, who was an incarnation of Shenrezig, and the founder of the famous lamasery of Tashilhunpo.‡ Gedun-gyatso was elected head lama of Tashilhunpo in 1512, which office he resigned to fill the same position in Dabung, the chief lamasery of Lhasa. He had built at this latter place the Gadan phodang of Dabung, which since then has been famed as the principal seat of Buddhist learning.§ He was the first of the line of Dalai lamas.

* Pronounced Tale lama. This Mongol name is in common use in Tibet. He is also known as Gyal-wa-gyatso, or Kyab-gong Rinpoche; but this latter title is applied likewise to all very high incarnate lamas. A. K.'s Kiamkun Ringboche is but an inaccurate transcription of Kyab-gong Rinpoche, which means "the Precious Protector." —(W. R.)

† Or rather De-wa-chan, "the happy (place)" in Sanskrit Sukavati; also called Nub-chyog Dewachan, or "the western abode of bliss."—(W. R.)

‡ On the Tale lamas, see *Jour. Roy. Asiat. Soc.*, xxiii. p. 285 *et sqq.*, and Waddell, *op. cit.*, p. 227; the dates given in the former work are derived from Chinese sources, and differ by a year or two from those usually accepted by Tibetans.—(W. R.)

§ I believe that the Lhasa mint is in this Gadan phodang. Tibetan silver coins (*tanka*) are inscribed *Nam-gyal Gadan phodang chyog-las*, "From the Gadan phodang of the Victorious (Tale lama)." See Lacouperie, 'The silver coinage of Tibet.'—(W. R.)

His successor was Sonam-gyatso. He was invited to Mongolia by the famous conqueror Altan Khan, and on his arrival at the latter's camp the Khan addressed him in Mongol by the name of Dalai lama, the Tibetan word *gyatso*, "ocean," being the equivalent of *dalai* in Mongol. Altan, knowing that the lama's predecessor had also the word *gyatso* in his name, took it for a family name; and this mistake has been the origin of the name of Dalai lama since given to all the reincarnations of the Grand Lama.

In 1642 Kushi Khan conquered Tibet, and made over the sovereignty of the central portion of it to the fifth Dalai lama, Nagwang lozang-gyatso, and that of Tsang, or Ulterior Tibet, to the Grand Lama of Tashilhunpo, though he continued himself to be the *de facto* sovereign, appointing Sonam chuphel as Desi, or Governor, of Central, and another as administrator of Ulterior Tibet. The spiritual government remained, however, in the Dalai lama's hands, and he conferred on Kushi Khan the title of Tandjin chos-gyi Gyalbo, "the most Catholic king."

In 1645 the Dalai lama erected the palace of Potala, Kushi Khan having his residence in the Gadan khangsar palace in Lhasa itself. Engrossed with extending and consolidating his newly acquired kingdom, he had, little by little, to transfer to the Dalai lama and the Desi most of his authority over Tibet. In 1654 Kushi Khan died, and the Desi Sonam chuphel followed him shortly to the grave. By this time so much of the temporal authority had devolved on the Dalai lama, that, from the time of the death of Kushi till his successor Dayan arrived in Lhasa in 1660—even though for a year (1658–1659) there was no Desi—the country enjoyed peace and prosperity under his rule.

During Dayan Khan's reign, which only lasted eight years, a Mongol chief, Jaisang Teba, was Desi of Tibet, and the Desi who succeeded him was appointed by the Dalai lama himself.

The successor of Dayan was Ratna-talai Khan, but by this time the management of State affairs had entirely passed into the hands of the Grand Lama. In 1680 he appointed Sangye-gyatso Desi, and conferred on him such authority that, under the title of Governor-Treasurer (*Sa-kyong-wai chyag-dso*), he was in reality King of Tibet. He remodelled the Government, and introduced many useful reforms in every branch of the public service.

The Desi is commonly called "regent" (*gyal-tsab*), or "king"

(*gyalbo*).* The office is now elective, but no layman may hold it; it is filled by a lama from one of the four great *lings*, Tangye ling, Kundu ling, Tse-chog ling, and Tsomo ling; though there have been cases, as, for instance, that of the Desi Shata (or Shadra), where lamas from other places have been selected.†

The council of ministers (*Kalon*) and the Prime Minister (*Chyi-kyab khanpo* ‡) select the regent, and their choice is confirmed by the oracles of Nachung chos-gyong and Lhamo sung chyong-ma; and, lastly, the nomination is ratified by the Emperor of China.

When the Dalai lama reaches his majority, fixed at eighteen years, the regent, in the presence of the Kalon, the chiefs and nobles, presents him with the seals of office of both spiritual and temporal affairs. Since the beginning of the present century no Dalai lama has reached majority, and the regency has been without interruption.§

The regent is assisted by a Chasag, whose appointment is also subject to confirmation by the Emperor of China. He wields great power, and sometimes exercises the functions of the regent himself. No petitions on any official business can reach the regent without passing through his hands. He is entrusted with the great seal, and when a paper has been prepared by the chief secretary, or Kadung, the Chasag affixes the seal to it. The word *Chasag* means "a strainer for tea," the dignitary so designated being the test and model of merit.‖

* Manning calls the King "Ti-mu-fu, or Hu-lu-tu." See Markham, 'Tibet,' p. 264. I am unable to explain satisfactorily these names, though the first has a rather Chinese *tournure*. The second may be the Mongol *Hutuketu*, "incarnate saint of the first rank." The Chinese call the Regent *Tsang Wang*, or "King of Tibet." See also, on the selection of this functionary, 'Land of the Lamas,' p. 289, and 'Report on Explorations, 1856–1886,' p. 31.

† In this connection the following is interesting: "Some few years ago the Grand Council of Lhasa (Caphyn) was composed of three men, named Semeling, Tengeling, and Kunduling. A man of influence named Sape Satya complained to the Emperor of China of the oppressive and inefficient rule of these men. The Chinese commissioner, 'Kissen,' came from China, apprehended Semeling, and took him off as a prisoner to China."—Ashley Eden, 'Report on the State of Bootan,' p. 131; cf. Huc., *op. cit.*, ii. 287 *et sqq.*

‡ He is also called Chyi-lon Hutuketu. He is Chancellor of the Exchequer; the Chinese Amban is his colleague, and his approval of any expenditure is necessary.—(W. R.)

§ See Huc., *op. cit.*, ii. 286.

‖ Our author's informant must have written *ja tsag*, meaning "tea-strainer"; but *Chasag* is spelt *rgyal tsab*, and means "viceroy." The Lhasa Amban is in like manner called *Gong-ma tsab*, "the Emperor's deputy."—(W. R.)

The council of ministers, or *Kalon shag lengya,* is composed of four laymen and one monk, all of them appointed for life. Formerly there were only four Kalon, but of late the preponderating influence of the clergy has forced the Grand Lama to put in the council one of its members, and he takes the first seat in the council hall, or *kashag*, the Kalon kripa coming next to him. The council sits daily from nine to two, and transacts the political, judicial, and administrative work of the Government. It hears appeals from the Djongpon, or from the Court of the Timpon of Lhasa, known as "the black court" (*Nagtsa-shar*).* The ministers sit cross-legged on thick cushions placed on raised seats, with a bowl of tea on a little table in front of each of them, which is kept full by the Court Solpon. The secretaries and clerks occupy adjoining rooms. The ministers and all the officers of their court are provided with dinner at the expense of the State.

Estates (or *Lonshi*) are set apart for the maintenance of the ministers, who receive no other salary. They are not allowed the privilege of being carried in sedan chairs (*pheb-chyam*), the Amban, the Dalai, the Panchen lamas, and on certain occasions the regent, being alone permitted to use this conveyance. The Kalon dress in yellow tunics, and wear Mongol hats with a coral button on top.†

When the office of a Kalon becomes vacant, the regent, in consultation with the other Kalon, selects two or three generals (*Dahpon*), and sends their names to the oracles of Nachung and Lhamo sung-chyong-ma of Potala for them to pronounce upon. The person approved of by the oracles is appointed.

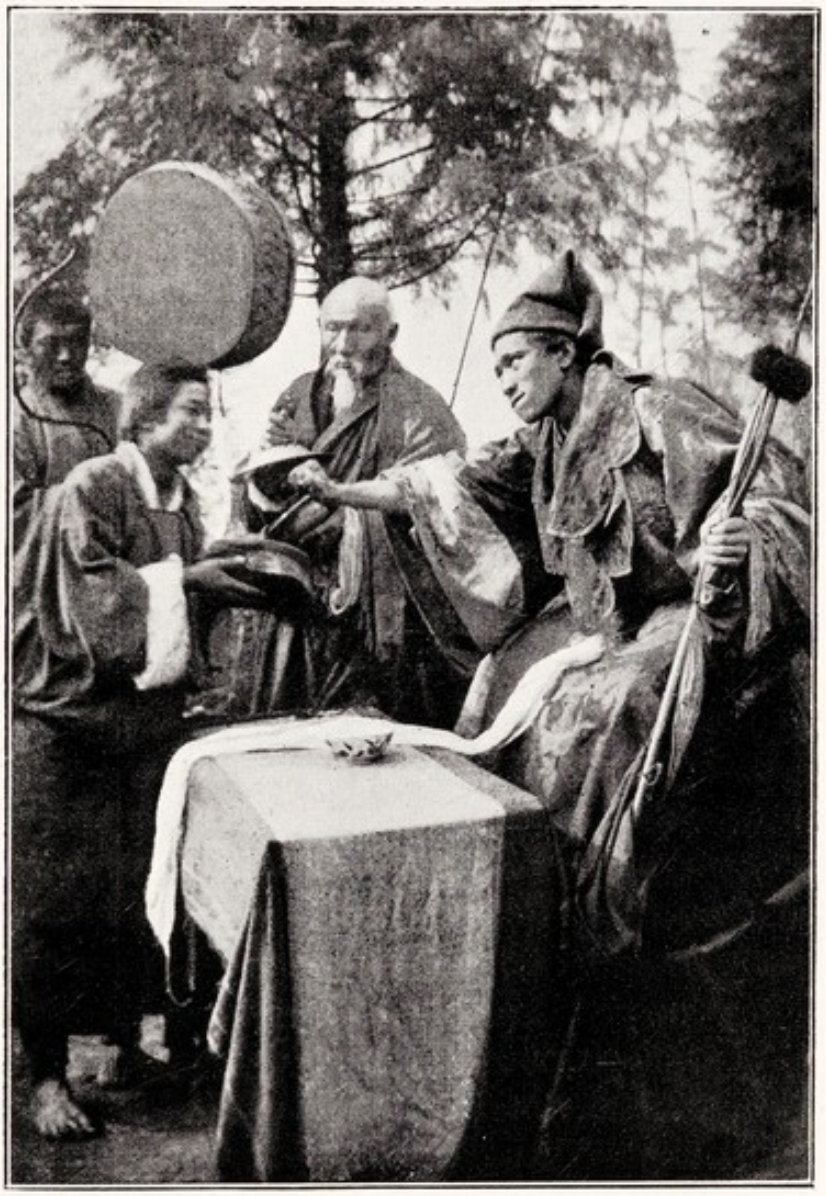
In literary style the ministers are called *Chying-sang* or *Dun-na-dun,* but colloquially they are known as *Kalon* or *Shape,* and the title of *Sa-wang* ("power of the land") is usually affixed to their names, as they are selected from among the wealthy and powerful nobles. When sitting in a judicial capacity they are known as *Shalchepa,* and *Shulenpa* when they perform the duties of advocate.

Formerly the wives of Gyalbo and Desi were addressed by the title of *Lhacham,* but nowadays it is only given to the wives of Kalon. Their sons are called *Lha-sre,* or "prince."

* Cf. *Jour. Roy. Asiat. Soc.*, xxiii. pp. 11, 220, 239, 242. The nominees to these positions are confirmed by the Emperor of China.—(W. R.)

† This button is given them by the Emperor (or rather the Amban). The lama minister does not wear one. According to Chinese authorities, the Kalon have only 3rd class, or blue, buttons. The coral button belongs to the 1st class.—(W. R.)

There are four secretaries, or *Kadung*, chosen from among the Dungkhor, and one chief clerk, or *Kabshopa*, attached to the Kalon's court. Under these secretaries are 175 Dungkhor, or civil officers, under the immediate supervision of the Tsipon, or accounting officer.



LAMA DELIVERING AN ORACLE.

The Dungkhor * are chosen from among the best scholars of the Yutog school, where the sons of nobles and the leading people are educated. They are taught accounting by serving five years in the Bureau of Accounts, or Tsi-khang, after which they are deputed to perform various duties, especially in connection with the treasury,

* On the Dungkhor, see *Jour. Roy. Asiat. Soc.*, xxiii. pp. 220, 243.

and the most experienced among them are appointed Djongpon, or prefects.

The salaries of the Dungkhor are barely sufficient for their maintenance; but, as they belong for the most part to well-to-do families, this question is unimportant.* The Dungkhor have a peculiar way of dressing their hair, which distinguishes them from all other officers.

Those among the sons of the wealthy and prominent people of Lhasa who, having become members of the Church, desire to enter public life, are trained at the Tse labdra of Potala, after which they become *Tse-dung*, or monk officials. The number of these Tse-dung cannot exceed 175. In all places of trust and responsibility there are two officers, and sometimes more, one at least of whom is a Tse-dung. Thus, in the office of the treasurer of Potala there are two Tse-dung and one Dungkhor; in the Labrang treasury there are two Tse-dung and one Dungkhor, etc. The Tse-dung are appointed to these offices for a term of three years.

The Djongpon, or prefects, are entrusted within their respective *Djong* with civil and military powers; they try civil and criminal cases, and levy taxes, the latter duty being performed under *Kargya*, or, as we would say, *Purwanas* from the Court of Kalon. There are 53 Djong and 123 Sub-prefectures under Djongnyer.

There are two Djongpon to every Djong,† their authority being equal in all respects. In military matters they are subordinate to the generals and the Amban. They render yearly accounts to the Amban of the military stores in their district, and have also to show their proficiency in shooting, riding, and other athletic sports at the annual inspection of the troops made by the Amban and the Dahpon; and the former confers on them blue or crystal buttons, to be worn on their official hats.‡

The establishment of a Djongpon comprises two Dungkhor and two storekeepers (*Djong-nyer*)—administering sub-districts—and a number of under-strappers. The heads of villages (or *Tsopon*), the headmen (or *Mipon*), the elders (or *Gyanpo*), all of whom are elected for a term of years, are also under his orders.

* Our author forgets the "squeezes," which swell all salaries to very respectable sizes.—(W. R.)

† A lama (Tse-dung) and a layman.—(S. C. D.)

‡ On the military inspections made by the Amban, see *Peking Gazette*, January 24, 1886, and *Jour. Roy. Asiat. Soc.*, xxiii. p. 216.

In every Djong there are two store-houses—the *kar-gya*, or reserve store, and the *djong-dso*, or repository of the Djong. The keys of the former are kept by the Kalon, and it is opened only once or twice a year. The Government sends annually a revenue officer to check the accounts of the Djongpon and tax-collectors (*Khraldupa*), and to take over the revenue collected by them. The Djongpon have, like the Kalon, their *jagirs* or *djong-shi* for their maintenance, in lieu of salary.

The following citation, taken from a work entitled 'Sherab dongbu,' or 'Bits of Wisdom,' may prove of interest:—

"Whenever petitions or requests are made, they should be carefully examined. Impartiality should be shown to all classes alike, to great and small, to lamas and to laymen. Uninfluenced by gratuities or the fear of criticism, the Djongpon should administer perfect justice. Questions of jurisdiction, of taxes due by the *misser*, and of forced labour, should be settled by the rules (*tsa-tsig*) of each Djong. The villages, houses, and inhabitants should be counted and inspected yearly, and the numbers compared with those of preceding years. He should have returned to their houses those who have left them, particularly *misser* who have been absent from their houses for not more than five years. Servants and labourers of the Djong should not be employed by him at his private work; the number of servants allowed him is fixed by the *tsa-tsig*. He should be kind to the *misser*, and not without a good cause have disputes with neighbouring Djongpon, as the Government's interests would thereby suffer. He should not allow the public lands to be encroached upon, nor should tenants on them be taken away by landholders (*gerpas*).

"No women should be allowed to loiter about the Djong, and the Djongpon should carefully refrain from any flirtation. He should see to facilitating the courier service, and he should see that no one receives supplies for their journey unless they are bearers of passports (*lam-yig*). Frontier or foreign traders who cannot show a passport should be held, and any information he may obtain of affairs in other quarters should be transmitted to Lhasa." *

As previously mentioned, the Kalon and Djongpon exercise judicial functions. In the case of the Sera and Dabung lamaseries,

* Of course most of the Djongpon only attend to a very few of these duties. They squeeze the people under them, exact as much service as possible, and, together with the lamas, get everything they can out of them, and only stop when their exactions appear likely to cause serious trouble.—(W. R.)

the abbots decide all minor offences committed within the monastery limits, but the more serious charges are committed to the court of the regent and the Kalon. In all other lamaseries only offences against the common law are tried by the convent authorities.

It is customary for both parties in a suit to make presents to the judge. When the case has been examined, the judge fixes the costs (*tim-teg*) to be borne in equal portions by the plaintiffs and defendants. As a general rule, disputes are settled by the village elders; but few lawsuits occur on the whole, for the Tibetans are a peaceful, kind-hearted, law-abiding people, and very amenable to reason.

The Amban, or Imperial Resident of China in Tibet, is the head of the Tibetan army. His Chinese staff consists of an Assistant Amban, two Laoyeh, and a paymaster (*pogpon*).* There is also one Tibetan general, or Magpon, six Dahpon,* or division commanders, six Rupon commanding regiments, and a number of subordinate officers.

The Amban is the medium of all communications between the Tibetan Government and China. He settles all political differences between the various states of Tibet and the Lhasa Government; he confers titles and honours on native military officials; but he has, theoretically, no authority in the internal administration of the country. He ordinarily resides at Lhasa, and annually makes an inspection of the Nepalese frontier as far as Tingri djong. Sometimes the Assistant Amban performs this duty, and he then inspects the military stores and forces at the different Djong.

The political relations between Tibet and China are now so intimate that the Imperial Residency established at Lhasa in the first quarter of the last century has converted Tibet from a protected state into a dependency of China. The two Ambans are commanders of the militia, and arrogate to themselves the supreme political authority of the country. The appointment of two Ambans to watch the political interests of the country is probably based on the principle that the one acts as a spy on the other. This has, as in China, become a custom in Tibet.

The Ambans are the terror of the Tibetans, who abhor them from

* In Chinese, called Liang-tai. On the Chinese military establishment in Tibet, see *Jour. Roy. Asiat. Soc.*, xxiii, p. 275 *et sqq.*; and on the Amban's duties, *ibid.*, p. 7 *et sqq.*

† In the Anglo-Tibetan war there were four Magpons or Mafeas, and eight Dahpons.

the depth of their hearts.* Whenever they leave the capital on pleasure excursions, or on inspection tours, provisions, conveyances, and all sorts of labour are forcibly exacted from the poor villagers, who are deprived of their ponies and yaks, which, owing to the merciless treatment of the Ambans' numerous retainers, die in numbers on the road. No compensation is given them for their losses, and no complaints are admitted by the courts of justice, presided over by the lamas, against this kind of oppression. *Tsamba* and sheep are also on these occasions taken away by force from the people, who, unable to bear the oppression, not unfrequently rise in a body against the Ambans' retainers, when matters are settled by the district Djongpon, who are generally the creatures of the Ambans. Nor is this all. Every Chinese or Manchu soldier or merchant who enters Tibet, whether in a public or private capacity, is provided with a pass from Peking, which facilitates his journey and brings him safe to his destination free of charge.† The same is the case with those who leave Tibet for China, the Ambans being the only officials qualified to grant passports. The happy traveller, armed with the Ambans' authority, takes every advantage of his pass, and never fails to use his whip freely when the villagers delay in complying with his requisitions.

One of the Ambans at least is required to pay a visit to the Tashi lama once a year, to confer with him on State affairs, when, as the representative of the Emperor of China, he is received with the highest marks of distinction. The Amban is required to make a low salutation with joined palms, and as he approaches the throne he presents a *khatag* to the lama. The Tashi lama, on his side, blesses him by touching his head with his open hand, and seats him on his right on a State cushion. After a short interchange of compliments the conversation turns on the health of the Emperor, the happiness of the people, and the prospects of the year's crops. Interpreters who

* Thos. Manning (Markham, 'Tibet.,' p. 274) says, "It is very bad policy thus perpetually to send men of bad character to govern Tibet. It no doubt displeases the Grand Lama and Tibetans in general, and tends to prevent their affections from settling in favour of the Chinese Government. I cannot help thinking, from what I have seen and heard, that they would view the Chinese influence in Tibet overthrown without many emotions of regret."—(W. R.)

† This is not correct. Traders only have a permit issued either at Ta-chien-lu by the Chun-liang-fu or at Lhasa by the Amban allowing them to enter or leave Tibet. All officials, even common soldiers—the latter only when going to Tibet or when on duty—have *ula* supplied them.—(W. R.)

understand the Mongol, Manchu, and Chinese languages always accompany the Amban, and the Tashi lama has also his interpreters. When the Amban appears abroad he is carried in a yellow chair, and attended by a numerous retinue bearing the insignia of his high office.

Of the Dahpon, two are stationed at Lhasa, two at Shigatse, one at Gyantse, and one at Tingri djong. Three of the six Rüpon belong to Central Tibet, and three to Ulterior.

The regular army consists of 6000 men, 3000 being under arms, and the other 3000 at home on half-pay. Those in active service serve for three years at a monthly pay of two ounces of silver. After this they return to their homes, and enter the territorial army, or *yul-mag*, whence they may be at any moment recalled to active service. They are not usually uniformed, though some wear a black Chinese jacket. They are armed with matchlocks, bows and arrows, long spears, and slings (*ordo*).

Besides the regular army, the Government may, in case of need, call out all the forces of the country, when each family has to supply one man fully equipped and provisioned, and every landholder sends a man for every *kang* * of land he owns, and a follower to carry his provisions. The Kalon, Djongpon, Dahpon, and chief men furnish quotas of cavalry (or *tamag*), all those who have ponies being incorporated in this arm.

Besides the expense of maintaining the army—each Chinese private being paid fourteen rupees a month and thirty *surs* of *tsamba*, and every Tibetan 2¼ rupees a month—the Tibetan Government has to contribute 50,000 rupees to the Residency establishment, exclusive of the Amban's salary. The Tibetan Government, as well as the whole nation, groan under this excessive and useless expenditure; but the maintenance of this order of things is declared to be essential for the protection of the holy lamas against the encroachments of the English, Nepalese, and Kashmir Governments. Both the latter states are allies of Tibet, while the very name of the first is dreaded by the Government officers, especially the monk officers, as an invincible power, and as being the incarnation of the Lhamayins (giants) who fought against the gods.

It is universally believed in Tibet that after two hundred years the Tashi lama will retire to Shambala, the Utopian city of the Buddhists,

* A kang is a piece of land to sow which 10 yak-loads of barley are used, or one which pays 50 to 55 ounces of silver a year as taxes.—(S. C. D.)

and will not return to Tibet, and that in the mean time the whole world will succumb to the power of the Phylings (Russians and English). Neither the Emperor of China nor the combined legions of gods and demi-gods who reside round the golden mount of Rirab (Sumeru) will be able to arrest the progress of their arms or the miracles of their superior intellect. It is the policy of the Tibetans to keep them at a distance, not by open hostilities, but by temporizing and diplomacy. They were initiated into this policy by the Ambans, who are always busy in devising fresh plans for guaranteeing the safety of the country against all sorts of imaginary foreign aggressions.

The Nepalese are not now so much the object of this terror as they were a century ago, but are regarded as peaceful allies under the rule of the Emperor of China. Tibet pays no tribute to Nepal, nor does it entertain any agent at Katmandu, while Nepal maintains an agent at Lhasa to promote friendly relations, as also to protect her commercial interests with Tibet. It is to be remembered that the richest merchants and bankers of Lhasa are Nepalese Palpas.

During the late disturbances between the monks of the To-sam ling College and the Nyer-chang chenpo, the late Tashi lama did not consult the Amban, or invite the aid of his soldiers to quell the rebellion among the 1500 disaffected and unruly monks, but secretly apprised his subjects of the neighbouring villages of his intentions, and on the appointed day 10,000 armed men were assembled, carrying long spears, bucklers, matchlocks, and slings, who at once struck the rebel monks with terror. He has since that day been convinced of the sincere veneration and devoted loyalty of his people, and of the perfect uselessness of the Amban's forces. This instance of tact in the Panchen rinpoche has raised him higher than ever in the estimation of the people, much to the discomfort of the jealous Amban. It is also pleasing to notice some signs of independence in the youthful Tashi, who is now the senior sovereign of Tibet, the Dalai lama being as yet an infant. The villagers and common folks, who suffer most from the Amban's tyranny, say that in course of time the present Tashi will prove a worthy successor of the great Tempai nyima * in faith as well as in strength of mind.

The principal sources of revenue of the Lhasa Government are the family-tax and the land-tax, the first being usually paid in coin,

* The 4th Panchen rinpoche was called Pal-dan Tan-pai nyi-ma. He was born in 1782. He died in the early fifties. Turner, 'Embassy,' p. 230.—(W. R.)

and the latter in kind. The family-tax may be paid at any time of the year.

Apart from the lands held by chiefs and nobles, there are, as already stated, altogether fifty-three *Djong*, or districts, under *Djongpon*, and a hundred and twenty-three sub-districts under *Djongnyer*. These constitute what are called *shung shi*, or State lands. Each *djong* contains, on an average, five hundred families of *misser*, or farmers. A *misser* family consists of one wife, with all her husbands, children, and servants. Each family, on an average, possesses two or three *kang* of arable soil. If one *khal* (50 lb.) yields nine or ten *khal*, it is considered a good harvest; six to eight is a tolerable crop, four to six a bad one. The Government revenue for each *kang* is, on an average, fifty *srang* (125 rupees), or about one hundred and fifty *khal* of grain. The Crown revenue, if taken entirely in kind, would therefore amount to 2,625,000 *khal*, which would be equivalent in money to 2,000,000 rupees. This is partially expended by the State for the Church, and in distributing alms to the whole body of lamas belonging to the monasteries of Potala, Sera, Dabung, Gadan, etc. In every Djong are kept registers, in which are entered the collections in previous years and the quality of the land under cultivation. The collector, after examining these, inspects the crops, and estimates the quantity of the yield, and by comparison with that of the five preceding years he fixes the tax for the current year. In very prosperous years the State takes two-fifths of the crop (the maximum allowed it).

Ulag consists in supplying to all those bearing a Government order for *ulag*, in which the number of animals, etc., is enumerated, beasts of burden—ponies, mules, yaks, and donkeys. If the *misser* have no ponies, they have to furnish yaks or donkeys instead. For stages along which neither yaks nor ponies can pass, porters must be supplied for carrying the traveller's goods. In default of these, the *misser* are required to pay a certain sum for carriage or conveyance. *Misser*, and all those who own more than one *kang* of land, must supply *ulag* and *ta-u*, consisting of either one coolie or pony, free of charge when the traveller produces his Government pass. The system of levying *ulag* is a kind of indirect taxation, accounts of which are kept by the village headmen. Some families supply a hundred *ulag* in a year, others only five or ten. If a *misser* fail to supply *ulag* once in a year, he is required to supply double the amount

the following year. This duty is levied on all kinds of State lands and subjects, freeholds and private property granted to sacred personages alone being exempt from this hateful tax. Lands purchased from Government are also liable to it. Under the Lhasa Government there are about a hundred and twenty landlords, out of whom about twenty are very rich and powerful. The present regent, Lama Ta-tsag Rinpoche, of Kundu ling, has upwards of 3000 *misser* on his estates in Kharu and Tibet Proper. The ex-regent, whose estates lie in Kongpo, has about 5000 *misser*, and other great lamas and laymen about 1000 *misser* each. The greatest noble of Tibet, Phags-pa-sha, of Chab-mdo,* is lord over 10,000 *misser*.

When questions arise about newly reclaimed lands, the tax-collector, having no register (*tsi-shi*) to guide him, measures the field and superintends the harvesting, when he fixes the amount due to the State. He is forbidden fixing his assessments otherwise than by personal examination. The land-tax may be paid in three instalments—in November, December, and January, at which latter date it is remitted by the Djongpon to Lhasa or Tashilhunpo, as the case may be. The tax-gatherer has authority to remit a portion of the tax when the crops have failed for some reason or other; in fact, as a Tibetan author puts it, "as eggs are quietly taken from under a sitting-hen without disturbing the nest, so should the tax-gatherer collect the taxes without oppressing or disturbing the *misser*." †

The great monasteries at Lhasa and its neighbourhood, such as Sera, Dabung, Gadan, Samye, etc., have large freehold estates.

Besides these, there are more than three hundred landholders, called *gerpa*, who pay a nominal revenue to the Government, varying from ten to thirty *doche* (1250 to 3750 rupees), and who are also called upon to furnish *ulag*, *ta-u*, and other indirect taxes. Cows and *jomo* belonging to the Government and tended by *dokpa* are calculated to yield at the rate of five pounds of butter per head per year. In the provinces of Kong-po and Pema-kyod numerous pigs are reared, and rich families count their pigs by the thousands. The Lhasa Government levies a tax of one *tanka* on every pig, and derives no inconsiderable revenue from these districts from this

* Chamdo, in Eastern Tibet. It is an ecclesiastical fief under the rule of a high dignitary of the Gelugpa sect who bears the title of Phapa lha.—(W. R.)

† In other words, he should take all he can possibly get without forcing the *misser* to open revolt.—(W. R.)

source. The tenants in each Djong contribute ten days' labour per head for the ploughing or harvesting of the State lands. This service is called the *las-tal*, or "labour-tax."

There is in Tibet no fixed rate of duties on merchandise, nor is there a regular import duty. Rich merchants who come from foreign countries are required to pay annually a tax of fifty *srang* to Government; large traders are charged twenty-five *srang*, and small traders three *srang*. Shopkeepers and pedlars pay five *sho* ($1\frac{1}{4}$ rupee) annually, and itinerant Khamba hawkers who carry their own loads are charged half a *tanka* per quarter both in U and Tsang.

For crossing large bridges the charge is from one *kha* (one anna) to one *tanka* per head for a man, and a *karma* (two annas) to a *sho* (four annas) for ponies. For pasturing cattle on public lands there is a charge of from three to five *sho* yearly for every head. Besides these, there is a capitation tax of from two to three *srang* ($7\frac{1}{2}$ rupees) on people owning no land but only homesteads. The revenue-collectors (*Khraldupa*) and their servants get conveyance, ponies, and yaks at every stage free of charge, and the villagers are bound to furnish them in addition with attendants, water, fuel, and lodgings. The revenue-collectors may accept for their own use all the *khatag*, butter, tea, and silver coin which the *misser* may see fit to offer them. They are also authorized, when on tour, to kill one out of every hundred sheep belonging to the *misser* for their own consumption.* In all other matters they are guided by the usages and laws of the country. No Government official, revenue officer, or Djongpon may oppress the poorest *misser*. If one of these peasants fails to pay his taxes in money, he may offer the equivalent in tea, butter, or blankets; but live stock, except when nothing else is available, are not to be accepted. The property in cattle belonging to the Lhasa Government exceeds 1,000,000 head. There is a superintendent of this Government stock, who, at the end of every year, submits an account of the live animals and the number died or killed during the year. In order to satisfy the authorities, he is required to produce the entire dried carcasses of the dead animals with their tails and horns. These superintendents are appointed annually, and as a consequence they take every opportunity of making their fortune at the expense of the State before the expiration of their term of service.

* This seems impossible, in view of the large flocks owned by most of the people. One in a thousand would already be a heavy tax.—(W. R.)

Letters are carried by messengers and special couriers called *chib-zamba* (or *ta-zamba*), meaning, literally, "horse-bridge." The couriers generally discharge their duty with admirable efficiency, and every one assists them with great promptness. All Government messengers are provided with the best and swiftest ponies, and at every halt are furnished with lodgings, water, firewood, and a man to cook their victuals. Couriers on foot usually travel from 20 to 25 miles a day, while those who ride do from 30 to 35 miles. The latter is the express rate, for which the Government generally gives an extra remuneration. Government couriers alone get *ta-u*, or ponies for travelling; private letters of officials are carried by them, while common people make their own arrangements for the conveyance of their letters, which are not, however, numerous.

The express couriers, or *te-tsi*, on the road between Lhasa and China are dressed in tight blue-coloured gowns, the tape fastenings of which are tied on their heads, and the knot sealed. They are required to subsist daily on five hen's eggs, five cups of plain tea, a pound of corn-flour, half a pound of rice, and a quarter-pound of lean meat.* They are forbidden to take much salt, and are strictly forbidden to eat onions, garlic, red pepper, butter, or milk. At midnight they are allowed to sleep in a sitting posture for three hours, after which they are awakened by the keeper of the stage-house. It is said that these couriers are in the habit of taking certain medicines to give them the power of endurance against fatigue.† The letters are enclosed in a yellow bag, which the courier carries on his back, generally using some soft feathers to keep it from coming into contact with his person. They get relays of ponies at the end of every five *lebor*.‡ Arriving at a stage-house, they fire a gun as a notice to the keeper of the next postal stage to make ready a post-pony. At every such stage a relay of five ponies is usually kept ready. The courier is allowed to change his dress once a week.§

A special class of trained men are employed on this service. The distance between the Tibetan capital and Peking is divided into a

* A pretty good allowance, one would think. Cf., on this courier service, Huc, *op. cit.*, vol. ii. p. 450.—(W. R.)

† In China most of the couriers are opium-smokers.—(W. R.)

‡ A *lebor* is, says our author, equal to 720 yards. It is the Chinese *li*, but I have heard the word always pronounced *leu*. A *li*, however, is about 600 yards.—(W. R.)

§ I fancy our author means rearrange or remove his dress. A travelling Tibetan never changes his dress.—(W. R.)

hundred and twenty *gya-tsug*, or postal stages, of about 80 to 90 *lebor* each. This distance of nearly 10,000 *lebor* is required to be traversed in seventy-two days. Couriers are generally allowed a delay of five days, but when they exceed that they are punished. On occasions of very great importance and urgency the express rate to Peking is thirty-six days.* During the last affray between the junior Amban and the people of Shigatse the express took a month and a half to reach Peking.

As regards the administration of justice and the laws of Tibet, the following peculiarities may be noted: Both parties in a suit make written statements of their case, and these briefs are read in court.

The judge has the evidence, depositions, and his decision written down, three copies of the latter being given to the parties concerned. Then he states the law fee (*tim tég*) and the engrossing fee (*myug-rin*), both of which vary with the importance of the case, and are borne by both parties to the suit.

The death punishment is only inflicted in certain cases of dacoity (*chagpa*), when those convicted are sewed in leather bags and thrown into a river.

Offences of a less heinous nature are dealt with by banishment to the borders, whipping, imprisonment, or fines.†

Nothing can be more horrible and loathsome than a Tibetan jail. There are some dungeons in an obscure village two days' journey up the river from Tashilhunpo, where life convicts are sent for confinement. The prisoner having been placed in a cell, the door is removed and the opening filled up with stone masonry, only one small aperture, about six inches in diameter, being left, through which the unhappy creature is supplied with his daily food. There are also a few small holes left open on the roof, through which the guards and the jailor empty every kind of filth into the cell. Some prisoners have lived for two years under this horrible treatment, while others, more fortunate, die in a few months.‡

* There are cases on record in which a despatch from Lhasa has been delivered in Peking within a month.—(W. R.)

† Cf., however, *Jour. Roy. Asiat. Soc.* xxiii. pp. 216–218. See also 'Report on Explorations made by A. K.,' p. 33. The Chinese punishment of the cangue is now adopted throughout Tibet, the criminals wearing it being also heavily chained. The cangue is called in Tibetan, *tse-go*.—(W. R.)

‡ This, I fancy, is hearsay testimony, and, I think, should be taken with several grains of salt. The Tibetans are not cruel, though, like all Asiatics, they believe in deterring from crime by the terror of the punishment.—(W. R.)

In cases of murder, there are four fines to be paid by the murderer: first, "blood-money" (*tong jal*); second, a sum for funeral ceremonies for the benefit of the slain; third, a fine to the State; and fourth, a peace offering to the family and friends of the murdered person. These fines vary from the weight of the body of the slain in gold, to five ounces of silver, or the equivalent in kind. Should these fines not be paid, the murderer is thrown into prison.

When the murderer is insane, or a minor, aged less than eight years, the relatives or friends are only required to pay the funeral expenses of the victim; the same rule applies if any one is killed by a horse, yak, or other animal, the owner paying the funeral expenses of the person killed.

When a husband kills his wife, or a master his servant, he is required to pay the usual fine to the State and the funeral expenses.

Thieves have to pay from a hundred to seven times the value of the goods stolen, according to the social standing of the person from whom they have stolen.

When the thief is a recidivist, his hands *may* be cut off if it is his fifth conviction, and he may be hamstrung if it is his seventh. For the ninth conviction his eyes can be put out.

If a thief is punished by the person from whom he is attempting to steal, the courts will not take cognizance of the case; but should the thief be killed, blood-money, to the amount of five ounces of silver, must be paid to his family.

Children aged less than thirteen are not punishable for theft, but their parents are remonstrated with. When a woman commits a theft, the fines and possible corporal punishment are borne in equal proportions by herself and her husband.

No corporal punishment can be inflicted on a pregnant woman, nor on those suffering from an illness, who have recently lost parents, or who are older than seventy.

He who harbours a thief is held to be a greater culprit than the thief himself. If a person witness a theft and do not give notice thereof, he is held equally guilty with the thief. Thefts by one member of a family on another member should be punished by the head of the family alone.

The theft of a lock, a key, or a watch-dog, is considered equivalent to robbing the objects they keep safe.

Rape on the person of a married woman of high degree is punishable by emasculation and fines. In case the woman belongs to the middle or lower classes, the culprit pays the husband a fine and gives the woman a suit of clothes.

If a man of low rank has intercourse with the unmarried daughter of a man of high standing, he must serve the father without wages for a term of years. If the offender is of high standing, he has only a fine to pay.

In all cases of assault and battery, fines, known as *song jal*, or "life money," are alone imposed, to which may be added the amount necessary for medical treatment for the wounded party. The amount of the fine is fixed by the size and depth of the wounds, the importance of the bone broken or the organ injured.

When judges or arbitrators are unable to reach a decision, they may permit the plaintiff to challenge the defendant to make a deposition on oath, or undergo an ordeal. In Khams and Amdo this practice is dying out, but it is still in vogue in Central Tibet. On account of the nature of these oaths and ordeals, the law exempts certain classes of men from taking them. Lamas, teachers, *genyen* (semi-priestly laymen), monks, and novices are not allowed to take oaths and pass through ordeals, nor are Tantriks (religious sorcerers) and other practitioners of mystic incantations, who are supposed to be able to counteract the fearful consequences of breaking an oath by means of their powerful spells. Destitute and famished people, to whom food and clothing are all in all, and men who will do anything they like, regardless of the consequences in a future existence, are not allowed to make a deposition on oath, nor are wives and mothers, who can easily be persuaded to swear in the interests of their husbands and children. Besides these, young boys, lunatics, and the dumb, who do not understand the difference between good and evil, happiness and misery, are equally exempt. All others, not included in the above list, who are honest, know the difference between good and evil, believe in the inevitable consequences of one's actions (*karma*), are held proper persons to take oaths and undergo ordeals.

The challenger is required to pay the defendant the "oath compensation," or "oath blood" (*na-tra*), which varies from a trifling amount to a very large sum, according to the nature of the case; but for one of considerable importance the usual compensation is

fifty silver *srang* (125 rupees), and a yak; besides this "oath flesh" (*na sha*) is claimed.

The person challenged to take the oath first offers prayers to the all-knowing gods, the Buddhas and Bodhisattvas, to the gods of the land and to the goddesses called *Srung-ma* (protectresses), to the demi-gods of the land, and to the goblins and nymphs who live in the land, invoking them to bear witness to his solemn deposition. Then he speaks the following words: "What I depose is the truth, and nothing but the truth." He then seats himself naked on the skin of a cow or ox newly slain, smears himself with the blood of the animal, and places an image of Buddha, with some volumes of religious books, on his head. Next, after eating the raw heart of the ox, and drinking three mouthfuls of its steaming blood, he declares to the spectators, "There is certainly no guilt in me, and if there be any, may the guardians of the world and the gods make me cease to exist before the end of the current month." He then receives the oath compensation (*na-tra*) and the slain ox or "oath flesh" (*na sha*).

It is commonly believed among the Tibetans that, should one perjure himself, he either becomes insane, or dies vomiting blood, before the expiration of a hundred and seven days. When this does not befall him, other misfortunes happen, such as the loss of his wife or children, quarrels, feuds, or the loss or destruction of his property. Death is believed to be the most common consequence of perjury.

The undergoing of such an oath liberates the swearer from the penalty of death, and from paying fines in all cases of robbery and murder, as well as from civil liabilities, such as debts and disputes about land, even though it involves thousands of *srang*. On the other hand it is believed that if the challenger be guilty of false and malicious accusation, all the evils reserved for the perjured swearer will fall upon him.

In certain cases the guilt or innocence of parties is decided by the throwing of dice, the person being exculpated who gets the greatest number of points.

Important cases of murder, dacoity, and theft are also decided by ordeals, of which there are two kinds—picking out white and black pebbles from a bowl of boiling oil or muddy water, and handling a red-hot stone ball. In the presence of the prosecutor, the witnesses, the judge, or his representative, and many other

spectators, the accused person invokes the gods and the demi-gods to bear witness to his statement, and declares that he tells the perfect truth. A copper or iron bowl filled with boiling oil or muddy water is then placed before him, in which two pebbles of the size of an egg, one white and the other black, each enveloped and tied up in a bag, are thrown. The swearer washes his hands first with water, and then with milk, and, having heard read a section of the Law written on a tablet with the blood of a cow slain for the occasion, plunges his hand in the boiling oil or water, and withdraws one of the pebbles. If he takes out the white one without scalding his hand, he is believed to be innocent; but if his hand is scalded, he is considered to be only partially innocent. If he brings out the black stone and gets his hand scalded besides, he is pronounced guilty.

The second form of ordeal is performed by heating a stone ball of the size of an ostrich's egg red hot, and then placing it in an iron vessel. The person taking the oath, having washed his hand in water and milk, seizes the ball and walks with it to a distance of seven, five, or three paces, according as his challenger is of the first, second, or third class of social rank. After this, his hand is enveloped in a white cotton bag, which, in the presence of the spectators, is tied up and sealed. At the end of the third, fifth, or seventh day, the bag is opened and the palm examined. If it is found unscalded, with only a pale yellowish line or stain upon it, the accused is declared innocent; if there appear a blister of the size of a pea, he is thought partly guilty; if three blisters of that size appear, he is considered half guilty; but if his hand be burned all over, he is held guilty of all the charges.

According to the laws of Tibet, the interest on money, grain, or any other commodity is twenty per cent., or one measure for five measures yearly. The courts in a few cases admit contracts at even a higher rate of interest; but those who claim more according to their contract deeds may be punished as usurers, though sometimes their claims are allowed. In urgent cases thirty-three per cent. have been known to have been agreed upon. All contracts are required to be made in writing, attested by witnesses, and duly signed and sealed. The interest must be paid at the end of the year. If the debtor abscond, the witnesses are called upon to make good the loss sustained by the lender; but if he die, or become insolvent, and the

money be not realized, the witnesses are not held responsible. If, however, the money has been lent by the Government, by certain monasteries, or lamas, or by the paymaster of the army, the amount is realised from the relatives, witnesses, and neighbours of the debtor. At every military station, a certain amount of money is generally lent out by Government, on the interest of which the militia is paid by the quartermaster, who is one of the chief Government money-lenders. Usually when the person soliciting a loan is not known, or if doubts about his honesty are entertained, securities are required. Not so in Tibet, where the lenders have been known to use their power to collect debts from the heirs of debtors to the third generation. The more the debtor exceeds the fixed term for the payment of his debt the more urgent is the creditor in his demands. The court, when it sees that the creditor has extracted compound interest for many years from the debtor, can put a stop to the accumulation of further compound interest; but there is no fixed period mentioned in the law after which compound interest must cease to accumulate.*

In Tibet such articles as household utensils, implements of husbandry or war, drinking cups, borrowed articles, articles held in trust, landed estates of which the revenue is paid to the State, and images of gold, are never given in loan or mortgaged.

When a man has a single pony, one milch cow or *jo*, one plough, one span of bullocks or yaks, or one suit of clothing, nobody can ask for a loan of any of these articles without committing the offence of "impudence," for which he may be severely rebuked. Creditors, whether the Government or private persons, cannot seize upon any of these properties for debt. This is the Grand Charter of the Tibetans. Nor can any creditor by force seize the property of his debtor. If without the debtor's permission he removes one *srang*, he forfeits his entire claim on a loan of a hundred *srang;* if he remove two, on two hundred *srang*, and so on in the same proportion. Nobody, be he a public officer, landlord, master, or creditor, can, for any kind of pecuniary claim, exercise violence on the people. If, while being in possession of means to do so, a man of the people refuses to pay off his liabilities or debts, his creditors may employ mediators, or institute proceedings against him in a court of justice; but if, without

* All this does not add materially to our knowledge of Tibetan business methods. It would seem that the Tibetans follow the rules concerning loans which obtain in China and India, but the text is not very clear.—(W. R.)

resorting to these means, they beat him or use any kind of violence on him, they forfeit all claims upon him.

If after buying an article the purchaser wishes to return it on the same day, he must forfeit one-tenth of the price. If he return it on the following day he forfeits one-fifth; on the second, one-half; and if he keeps it beyond the third day it is not returnable. If a householder cheat a merchant lodger, he is required to pay compensation at the rate of five *srang* for every *srang's* worth stolen. If a trader deceive his customers by using false weights and measures, or by selling adulterated goods, imitation gems or jewels, or by circulating counterfeit coin, he must be immediately handed over to the police, and committed for trial. If the merchant convicted be a Tibetan subject, all his goods are confiscated, and he is sentenced to penal servitude for a certain number of years. If he be a subject of some foreign Government, such as China, Mongolia, Kashmir, or Nepal, such fine, as is prescribed by law, is exacted from him. His goods are seized, examined, taken stock of, and after being securely packed, are sent with the owner in charge of the police to his own Government, together with a document complaining of his conduct, and stating the amount of the fine exacted from him.

The jealousy of the Tibetans towards Europeans is supposed to date from 1791–92, when English soldiers were believed to have taken part in the war which followed the incursion of the Gorkhas into Tibet; and as the English Government, then in its infancy in India, took no steps to cultivate the friendship of the Tibetans, that feeling took a lasting hold on their minds. The shock which China, Nepal, Bhutan, and Sikkim have received from their reverses when at war with the British power, has also extended to the peace-loving Tibetans.

Throughout the nineteenth century the Tibetans have followed the Chinese policy of exclusiveness, not from fear of annexation, but because they had been shortly before nearly conquered, and were entirely under Chinese influence. This fear has been sedulously encouraged by an ex-minister of the Rajah of Sikkim, the Dewan Namgyal, who was expelled from that country for his treatment of Drs. Hooker and Campbell,* and subsequently obtained from the

* See Hooker's 'Himalayan Journals,' vol. i. p. 117, and vol. ii. p. 202 *et sqq.* He says, in speaking of the Dewan, "Considering, however, his energy, a rare quality in these countries, I should not be surprised at his cutting a figure in Bhutan, if not in Sikkim itself (*op. cit.*, vol. ii. p. 241).—(W. R.)

Grand Lama the post of frontier officer, to watch the "encroachments" of the Indian Government. The attempts of Dr. Hooker, Mr. Edgar, and lastly of Sir Richard Temple, to enter Tibetan territory were described by him as instances of encroachment on the part of the Government of India, which he represented as devoting all its energies to the invasion of Tibet, and as having been foiled by his diplomatic skill and wisdom, aided by the zealous co-operation of the Djongpon of Khamba and Phari. On one occasion he even stated to the Lhasa officials, as a proof of his unshaken loyalty to the Grand Lama, that he had refused a pension of fifty rupees which had been offered to him by the Indian Government for supplying information respecting the state of affairs in Tibet! This functionary has, however, together with his coadjutor the Djongpon of Khamba, lately fallen into disgrace with the Grand Lama, and has also lost all influence at Tashilhunpo.

The exclusiveness of the Tibetan Government is to be chiefly attributed to the hostile and intriguing attitude of the frontier officials towards the British Government. Next to it is the fear of introducing small-pox and other dangerous diseases into Tibet, where the people, being ignorant of the proper treatment of this disease, die in great numbers from it. Death from small-pox is the most dreaded, since the victim is believed to be immediately sent to hell. Not the least important cause, however, is the fear of the extinction of Buddhism by the foreigners—a feeling which prevails in the minds of the dominant class, the clergy.

Besides jealousy of foreigners, there is another cause of great importance, being connected with the commercial interests of China. Peking is eight or ten months', and Silling (Hsi-ning) four months' journey from Lhasa, yet the Tibetans carry on a brisk trade with these and other noted cities of China in tea, silk, wooden furniture, and other commodities. The Government of Lhasa sends every year two or more caravans to purchase goods for the State from the commercial centres on the borders of China. An escort of 500 soldiers accompanies each caravan, for it is not unusual for mounted bands of robbers, from 200 to 300 strong, to attack the caravans. By the opening of the Darjiling railway, Calcutta, where most of the Chinese articles valued in Tibet may be easily and cheaply procured, will be brought within three weeks' journey of Lhasa.

The Tibetans thoroughly appreciate these facilities, and every

Tibetan who has ever visited Darjiling warmly praises our Government for making the Jalep la road. The Chinese Government naturally fear that with the opening of free intercourse between Tibet and India, China will be a great loser so far as her commercial interests are concerned.

CHAPTER VIII.

RETURN TO TASHILHUNPO AND UGYEN-GYATSO'S VISIT TO THE BONBO SANCTUARY OF RIGYAL SENDAR.

THE bells of the Jo khang were ringing and the great trumpets of Tangye-ling were summoning the lamas to early morning service, when, on June 13, I took from the roof of our house a last look at the gilded spires and red walls of Potala, and started out for Tashilhunpo. I noticed near our lodgings a number of women drawing water from a well in rawhide buckets. The water of Lhasa is excellent, and both abundant and very near the surface, most of the wells being not over four feet deep; and this is the reason for the belief that the town is over a subterranean lake.

Arriving at the foot of Chagpori, on the summit of which is the College of Surgeons of Tibet, I got off my horse and ascended the hill, as I had promised to visit an old doctor known as Amchi Rivola, who was afflicted with cataract. On the way up I was met by one of the Amchi's pupils, who presented me with a *khatag*. I was led into a nice room containing a few neatly-finished tables, on one of which was a cup full of delicate rose-coloured tea of the most delicious aroma.* The ceiling was covered with silk, and satin hangings hid the walls, on which hung also pictures of the god of medicine and his attendants.

Amchi Rivola soon made his appearance, a man of commanding looks and heavily built. He was the Principal of the Vaidurya Tatsan of Chagpori, and physician to the regent. He expressed his pleasure at seeing me, and said he had heard me most kindly spoken of by the Lhacham Phala, and he would be greatly pleased if I would

* I fancy our author refers to the *hsiang pien cha* usually drunk by Chinese in Peking and elsewhere in the north. Jasmine flowers are dried with the tea, and impart to it a strong and agreeable perfume.—(W. R.)

postpone my journey to Shigatse and endeavour to cure his disease, which he thought curable by an operation, but he knew of no surgeon in Tibet able to perform it.

I was pained at my utter inability to help him, and told him that I would willingly prolong my stay at Lhasa if I had any means of curing him, but I had none whatever, and must take my leave. So saying, I rose from my seat, and left after the usual leave-takings.*

Following the same road by which we had come to Lhasa, we stopped that night at Netang. On the 15th we reached Palti djong, and on the 18th arrived at Dongtse at 10 o'clock at night, and put up in Pador's house.

Early the following morning I went to the monastery, and was promptly led to the minister's apartments, where I found him covered with small-pox pustules, and hardly able to speak. The Lhacham's son was also ill with the same disease, but convalescing.

When the minister fell asleep, I went to the Tung-chen's room. He asked me if I had not met Phurchung on the road, as he had left for Lhasa only a week ago carrying my letters and a shot-gun. As to Ugyen-gyatso, he had returned from Lachan with the luggage that had been left there, and was now waiting for me at Gyatsoshar, near Shigatse. I remained at Dongtse until July 3, when, in company with Phurchung and Pador, I set out for Gyatsoshar, which place we reached the following day, and Ugyen gave me, to my infinite delight, a package of letters from India.

Ugyen told me that since his return from the Lachan barrier he had been busy collecting plants. He had also carefully kept a diary from which I culled the following details, which may prove of interest.

One evening a lama friend had called on him, and asked him if he would like to meet a Golog from Amdo. These Golog, his friend went on to say, are a nation of brigands living in Amdo in Eastern Tibet.† Their country is nowhere cultivated, but they breed

* It is strange that our author tells us nothing of this famous lamasery of Chagpori. We know, however, that it is one of the oldest in Tibet, that the medical school is attended by some 300 students, and that it supplies with medicines, most of which are simples collected by the lamas themselves, not only Lhasa, but remote parts of Tibet and Mongolia. I have seen remedies bought at Chagpori used in the Tsaidam, the Koko Nor, and all over Eastern Tibet.—(W. R.)

† Amdo being used here in its broadest sense as including all North-east Tibet. These Golok (or Golog) trade with Kumbum, Sungpan (in North-west Sze-chuen), and with the Lhasa country. "At Pherchode (near Namdjong in Takpo) many traders called

many ponies, which they use for making raids on the adjacent peoples. Their chiefs exact black-mail (*chag tal*) from all people, and rob all they fall in with, unless they have passports from the Golog chiefs.

The Gologs have a few lamaseries, the heads of which come from Tashilhunpo, and are appointed for a term of five years, after which they return to Ulterior Tibet. Not long ago one of these lamas returned to Tashilhunpo, after having enjoyed during his sojourn in Gologland the confidence of the people and chiefs. He had amassed considerable wealth, and he spent on his return several thousand rupees in entertaining all the Tashilhunpo monks, and in giving them presents of money. Two years ago the wife of the Golog chief, near whom he had lived, came to Tashilhunpo on a pilgrimage, and after visiting the temple, she expressed a desire to see their former lama, but he was nowhere to be found, though it was known that he was at Tashilhunpo. Among the Golog people it is customary to greet one another with a kiss, and whoever omits the kiss when meeting or parting with an acquaintance is considered rude and unmannerly.

The lama had kissed this lady hundreds of times in her own country, but how could he kiss her now before all the monks? and particularly as the Panchen rinpoche was present at Tashilhunpo; how could he hope to escape unpunished if he committed an act of such gross immodesty?

The lady, however, before leaving Tashilhunpo, invited him to a dinner, and as soon as she appeared in the room he shut the door and greeted her with a kiss on the mouth, and explained to her the reason of his failing to see her at first, and the embarrassment he had felt in approaching her in public.*

Ugyen's friend also told him that in the Bardon district of Khams,† when two acquaintances meet they touch each other's foreheads together by way of salutation.

The same friend, who had imparted to Ugyen the preceding information, told him one day this fable: In times of yore, when

'Golokpas' come with large herds of yaks to trade, and annually visit this place in the months of October and November with merchandise, chiefly consisting of salt and wool." 'Report on the Exploration, from 1856 to 1886,' p. 8.

* This is at all events a good story, but I doubt whether the Golok, any more than the Chinese, Mongols, or other Tibetan tribes, kiss in public.—(W. R.)

† I have never heard of any district of this name. This mode of saluting is a Mohammedan one.—(W. R.)

beasts could talk, a leopard met an ass, and, though he had a strong inclination to kill him, he was impressed by his strength, of which he judged by his loud bray, so he offered him his friendship on condition that he would watch his den when he went out in search of prey.

One day the leopard sallied forth with a mighty roar by way of prelude to his day's work, and forthwith a wild yak rolled down the cliff overhanging his den, killed from fright at the sound. When the leopard returned and saw the dead *dong*, the ass said he had killed it, and stuck out his tongue, smeared with blood, in proof of his prowess.

The leopard believed him, and promised to help him when the time came. One day he told him to go and graze in the meadow on the other side of the hill. When the ass had eaten his fill he brayed twenty or thirty times in sheer wantonness, and the leopard thinking his friend in trouble, ran to his rescue, but the ass told him he was only braying for pleasure. A little while after a pack of wolves attacked the ass, when he brayed loudly, calling his friend to his help; but the leopard thought that he was only amusing himself, and did not go to his rescue, and the ass was torn to pieces by the wolves.

On the 7th of the eighth moon (June 23) a grand military review was held at Shigatse, when more than a thousand soldiers were present, and there was a sham fight in the presence of the general. There are two reviews (*may chyang*) every year, one in summer, the other in winter; and besides these there is one whenever the Amban visits Shigatse on a tour of inspection.

On June 29 the summer prayer ceremony (or *monlam*) was celebrated.* All the monks of Tashilhunpo, some three thousand odd, assembled at Chyag-tsal-gang. A satin wall or *gyabyal*, 1000 feet in circumference, was erected, and inside it was a great State canopy, under which the Panchen rinpoche's throne was placed. He was unable to be present, but his stole and mitre were put on the throne, and round it thronged the lamas in order of precedence and rank. The people of Shigatse were there, some under tents, others under bowers of cypress and willow branches, all amusing themselves

* Tsongkhapa, the great lama reformer in the 14th century, instituted these annual prayer meetings. The most important one is the "great prayer meeting" (*mon-lam chen-po*) in the early part of the year.—(W. R.)

singing and joking. A mast about 120 feet high was erected, and ropes stretched from it to the great Kiku building, and on these were hung pictures of all the gods of the pantheon. At Shigatse, the while, there was racing and military manœuvres and drill.

The following day was sacred to Dipankara Buddha, and his picture was made to occupy a prominent place in the exhibition. This representation of him was about 100 feet high, and skilfully worked in different coloured satins. On either side of it were gigantic representations of the Buddha.

All the lamas and nobles of Shigatse with their families made merry under the great tent in the Chyag-tsal-gang. Sumptuous dinners, cooked by the best native and Chinese cooks, were served to the great personages of Tashilhunpo and of the Government. Many persons had pitched tents near the great one, and were amusing themselves there with their families and friends. From morning to evening the deafening music of drums, cymbals, and trumpets never ceased.

No one was absent from the *fête* save the Grand Lama, who, it was rumoured, was laid up with small-pox at Tobgyal, where he had gone after a visit to the hot springs of Tanag. On either side of the great nine-storied building of Kiku, between Shigatse and Tashilhunpo, were two huge lions in which men were concealed; these were moved about from time to time to the great delight of the people.

The next day was the full moon, and was sacred to Sakya Buddha. The great picture of Dipankara Buddha was removed, and one of Sakya Sinha, of gigantic size, and surrounded by all the Buddhas of past and future ages, took its place. This picture was brought out from the lamasery to the sound of deafening music, and with great ceremony. Ten black priests (*Nagpa*), well versed in tantrik rituals, conducted a solemn religious service, and were assisted by 300 lamas from Tsomaling chanting hymns.

In the plain of Chyag-tsal-gang the lamas and people again feasted and enjoyed themselves as on the previous day.

On the morrow (July 2) the picture of Sachya tubpa was displaced for one of the Buddha who is to come, Maitreya (or Chyamba). It was brought out and hung up with the same ceremony as was observed on the preceding days. This day Tashilhunpo was open to women, and crowds of them in the gayest and richest apparel visited

the temples and shrines. Ugyen estimated the value of the head-dress of one lady he saw at 40,000 rupees. In the evening every one went and touched with his or her head the picture of Chyamba, and thus received his blessing.*

During my stay at Gyatsoshar I occupied the little pavilion

A LITTLE GIRL, DAUGHTER OF A TIBETAN NOBLEMAN.

belonging to the minister, which I have described previously.† The

* Chinese authors make mention of a similar festival, held at Lhasa yearly, beginning on the latter part of the second moon (middle March), and lasting for a month. Another of like description is held in the sixth moon. See *Jour. Roy. Asiat. Soc.*, xxiii. pp. 212, 213.

† See *supra*, p. 70.

flowers in the garden which surrounded it filled the air with their fragrance; the tall poplars, the widespread willows, the fragrant junipers, the graceful cedars, all contributed to make this place the most favoured of all the neighbourhood.

My health rapidly improved in these pleasant surroundings and genial temperature, and I worked diligently at transcribing works of great interest into the *nagari* character which had, though written in Sanskrit, been preserved in the (*Wu-chan*) script of Tibet. Ugyen

PICNIC IN A GROVE.

devoted himself to botanizing, extending his excursions to considerable distances. Finally, to facilitate bringing in his collections, he bought a donkey and a pony for himself to ride.

July 19 was kept as a great holiday, it being the day on which the Buddha first turned the Wheel of the Law. The people of Shigatse and neighbourhood visited the different chapels and sanctuaries and thronged in every corner of Tashilhunpo.

Two days later the Deba Shikha, of whom I have had so often to speak, gave a garden-party to a number of his friends in the garden surrounding the house in which I was living at Gyatsoshar. There were a dozen men and women; the former amused themselves the

whole day at archery and quoits,* in both of which they exhibited considerable skill. The same day Ugyen started on a botanizing trip, which took him as far as Sakya.

On July 26 I returned to Dongtse, and was pleased to find that the Minister had recovered from the small-pox. I found the Tung-chen busy preparing for the ceremony of consecrating a new house of the Seng chen,† as the minister is called, now nearly complete, and built a little to the north of the Tsug-la khang temple. In the room given me were some five or six hundred balls of butter of about two pounds weight each, and a number of bags of *tsamba* and wheat flour.

I had only been here four days when I was requested by the Chyag-dso-pa of Gyantse to visit him and see if I could not do something for the complaint from which he had now been suffering for some time. The invitation was so pressing that I could not refuse; so I set out at once, and was most kindly received by him and his family. I remained here until August 13, when a letter reached me from the minister, who was still at Dongtse, asking me to rejoin him there at once. This letter of the minister, though written in Tibetan, was in the Roman character, which I had taught him to write the preceding winter.‡

As I rode back to Dongtse I was greatly struck by the beauty of the vegetation; the little pools were frequently covered with lilies, and wild-flowers were in full bloom.

The minister asked me if I would go to Tobgyal and see the Grand Lama, who was desperately ill. He had received a letter from him asking for some consecrated pills (*tsé-ril*); I could take this medicine along with me, and at the same time he would inform the Panchen that I was a skilful physician and might be able to cure him.

Hearing of the desperate condition of the Grand Lama, I naturally hesitated to undertake this commission, and so asked for time for reflection. The next day, however, I told the minister that I could not venture to wait on the Grand Lama unless he expressed a wish

* This game is one of the very few national games of Tibet, but is probably of foreign origin. I have never seen it played in Northern or Eastern Tibet. In Bhutan the people appear to be specially skilful at it.—(W. R.)

† *Seng chen* is a Chinese title, meaning "the Monk Minister."—(W. R.)

‡ Huc, *op. cit.*, vol. ii. p. 338, tells us of the pleasure the Regent of Lhasa found in learning from him the Roman alphabet. I myself have found it the one subject which never failed to interest Tibetans, lamas, and laymen.—(W. R.)

to see me; or, at all events, unless I was accompanied by the minister himself. He finally decided that he would send the *tse-ril* by a confidential servant, and hint in his note accompanying them, that perhaps Indian medicines might prove beneficial.

On August 25 and 26, the final ceremonies of consecrating the new house built by the minister (and which had been going on for the last five days) were begun. The last ceremony is called the *chin-sreg*.* The mask of the god of death (Shinje gyalbo), his weapons and armour were hung on a stake stuck close to the fireplace. Then bundles of sandalwood were arranged in six heaps, and melted butter poured over them to feed the flame; and a lama, chanting hymns, sat opposite each fire. Sesamum and barley were scattered about. At the termination of the first day's ceremony, a dinner was served to all the guests and monks.

The *chin-sreg* ceremony on the 26th was similar to that of the day before, and wound up with a long service. In the afternoon the Seng chen (the minister) took his position on a raised seat under a spacious awning spread on the roof of the *tsug-lha-khang*, and ordered all the lamas, carpenters, masons, coppersmiths, gilders, etc., to assemble, when he distributed presents to them. To the lamas and monks he gave silver coins, *khatag* and blankets; and to the head labourers, rugs (*tumshi*), felt hats (*khamba*), and homespun cloth (*gyantse*).

On the 28th news reached us that two of the Grand Lama's physicians had run away, another had gone mad, and the fourth was without hope or ability to do anything more for the illustrious patient, who had had a severe hemorrhage.

On the 31st the dreaded event took place, a letter was handed the minister announcing the Grand Lama's death. He had died on the day previous at Tobgyal, or, as it is the custom to say, "He had left this world for repose in the realm of bliss (Deva-chan)."

A notice was issued to the people to assume signs of mourning; the women were forbidden to wear their headdresses or any other jewellery, and amusements and ornamenting of houses were prohibited. The people showed signs of deep distress at the untimely death of the Panchen; some attributing it to the sorrow he had felt at the disloyalty of his people, others said he had left this world on

* On this ceremony of burnt-offering, *chin* (*sbyin*), "alms;" *sreg*, "to burn up," see Emil Schlagintweit, 'Buddhism in Tibet,' p. 249 *et sqq.*; and Waddell, *op. cit.*, p. 498.

account of the discourtesy of the Dalai lama in not inviting him to his consecration.

At Dongtse, where I was, the minister was having performed as a termination to the ceremonies attending the consecration of the new building, a grand religious dance in the courtyard of the Choide. A great crowd, all in their holiday attire, was assembled on the roofs and balconies of the temple. The dance had but commenced; the minister's page, who impersonated the herald of the gods, had twice fired off a gun, and had proclaimed the arrival of the four guardian deities of the world; the devils and goblins had gone through their part of the performance, when the news of the death of the Grand Lama was made known to the minister. At once the dance was stopped, and the dancers and the crowd rapidly dispersed.

On September 3 it was reported to me that the Chinese commander of Shigatse had flogged several of the Grand Lama's servants for not having told him of the gravity of their master's illness. One of the physicians of the Panchen had been severely beaten, and the other medical attendant was found dead shortly after the Grand Lama had breathed his last. I thanked God I had not consented to the minister's proposal to go and attend the Grand Lama!

On the 6th Ugyen returned to Dongtse from his trip to Sakya, and from his journal I take the following facts, which may be of interest:—

He had started, as previously stated, on July 21, and on the 23rd crossed to the left bank of the Tsang-po near Tashi-gang, and camped in the valley of Tang-pe. Thence he and his companion, a Mongol lama by the name of Chos-tashi, went to the Tanag district, where a fine quality of pottery is manufactured.* They could not get lodgings anywhere, so afraid were the people that they might introduce small-pox among them, coming as they did from the infected city of Shigatse.

On July 26 they crossed the Tanag Tong chu by an iron suspension bridge, and, travelling westward, stopped for the night in the lamasery of Tubdan. Leaving Tubdan on the 28th, the travellers reached, after a march of twelve miles in a northerly direction, the famous hot springs of Burchu-tsan. A circular wall of stone encloses a portion of the springs, and here the Grand Lama takes his baths. The place where he camps is surrounded by a low turf wall. The

* See *supra*, p. 66.

Grand Lama had recently taken the baths, but it was supposed that the water gods (or *nagas*) had in some way or other been offended, as the water had but aggravated his complaint. To propitiate these *lu* a hundred lamas had been employed here until within a few days conducting religious services. In and near these springs are numerous black snakes which, though they are said to be venomous, do no harm to either man or beast. They enter houses in the neighbouring villages, but no one ever thinks of hurting them.

The next day they crossed the Jeh la and stopped for the night at the village of Keshong, but again they could not get lodgings. On the 30th they reached the old village of Shendar ding,* near which is situated the famous Bonbo monastery of Rigyal Shendar. Ugyen visited this lamasery the following day, and represented himself as a Bonbo from Sikkim on a pilgrimage to the sanctuaries of Bonbo Shenrab mivo, the chief deity of this religion. He expressed a desire to give a general tea (*mang ja*) to the monks, presented the manager five *tanka* for the purpose, and it was arranged that the entertainment should take place on the morrow.

In the mean time he was shown about the temple. In the congregation hall the priests were reading the Bonbo scriptures. In the chapel of the upper story he noticed among the images of the various gods of the Bon pantheon that of Sakya Buddha.

The next day the *mang ja* took place. There were about thirty monks (*dabas*) present,† and, on inquiring why there were so few, Ugyen was told that a large number of monks who are natives of Khams Gyarong had gone to the Chang-tang ‡ to look to the interests of the Bon church there.

Ugyen, in company with the head priest (*om-dse*), then visited the gloomy chapels of the monastery, only lighted by torches and butter-fed lamps, where he saw a number of curious pictures and tapestries on which were represented various terrifying gods. After this he

* *Ding* means something like "village." It is a very common termination to names of places throughout Tibet.—(W. R.)

† *Daba*, or *Draba*, is the name applied to all lamas irrespective of rank. The word *lama* is only used when speaking of some high dignitary in the church, or of a *gelong*, or "priest."—(W. R.)

‡ The Gyade country, which extends from the high-road from Nagchukha to Hsi-ning in Kansu and to Chamdo, is not under the rule of Lhasa, it is a purely Bonbo country. I traversed this region from west to east in 1892. Khams Gyarong refers to the Chin chuan, a small region on the Upper Ta-tung river, in North-west Sze-chuen, where this religion has many adherents.—(W. R.)

was presented to the high priest, Je Khädub rinpoche, who received him most kindly. He was a man of sixty-eight years of age, but strong and hearty. He explained to Ugyen various points of the "black water" (*chab-nag*) mysteries of Bonism, and lent him some books to read, a number of which Ugyen made copies of.*

The Rigyal Sendar monastery is said to have been erected on the site of an ancient Bon temple, called Darding sergo tamo, and was built several hundred years before Tashilhunpo; and was sacked by the Jungar Mongols in the 17th century. When they demolished the chapel, the Bon high priest hurriedly concealed the sacred treasures and scriptures, written in silver on dark blue tablets, in the deep recesses of a cavern, and hence the sacred writings of the Bonbo are now in a confused state. The church furniture and other requisites of worship in the monastery are extremely ancient. Among them are the huge tambourines (*shang*), and gigantic cymbals made of the finest bell-metal, paintings representing the Seven Heroic Saints (*Pao-rab dun*), numerous old tapestries, and several volumes of scriptures written in silver and gold on thick dark-blue (card) boards. The roof of the great hall of congregation is supported by forty-two pillars, six feet apart, and all around the monastery are fine-looking *chorten*, *mendong*, and cairns, which visitors are allowed to circumambulate from right to left, instead of from left to right, as do Buddhists. When questioned respecting the reason for this custom, the priests replied that salutation, circumambulation, and the chanting of *mantra* being intended by the sages as processes to sanctify the body, speech, and mind, they did not at all benefit the divinity. It is, therefore, immaterial how and which way one salutes and circumambulates the sacred things, but it is the established usage of the Bon community to circulate from right to left.†

The Bon monastery of Shendar is now in the joint possession of the four powerful members of the family of Shen-tsang. Though they are laymen, having wives and children, yet being the descendants of Shenrab Mivo, the illustrious founder of the Bon religion, they are venerated as lamas. The mother of the two leading members of this family was the elder sister of Sikyong, the late Rajah of Sikkim.

* The present Bonbo religion is hardly distinguishable from Tibetan Buddhism, except in a few peculiar reversals of lamaist customs, and in the names of the gods. See 'Land of the Lamas,' p. 217. Schiefner, Sarat Chandra, and Laufer have published translations and texts of some Bonbo works.—(W. R.)

† Not a very intelligible or satisfactory explanation. See Waddell, *op. cit.*, p. 287.

The late Panchen rinpoche was the nephew of these brothers, in consequence of which they are addressed by the people as *Ku-shang*, "Royal Maternal Uncle." The late Grand Lama was of pure Bonbo stock, and the two families from which he sprang are known by the names of Shen-lug and Tu-lug. People inquire with wonder why the vice-regent of Buddha in the flesh should have been born in the family of Shenrab Mivo, the heretic. Some disaffected Tibetans were even in the habit of ridiculing this Grand Lama by calling him the offspring of Bon heretics.

In the monastery are two sections of monks, called respectively the Tibetan Association (*Bod kham-tsan*) and the Khams Association (*Khamba kham-tsan*), the latter being the most numerous. The officers consist of one priest for the grand congregation (*Om-dse*), two discipliners (*Chos-tims*), two church directors (*Gekhor*), two general managers (*Chi-nyer*), and two chapel-keepers (*Ku-nyer*).

While conducting service the monks dress like the Gelugpa monks of Tashilhunpo. They wear tall mitre-shaped yellow caps, and a yellow cloak covering the bodies. The ordained monks hang the *chab-lug*, or badge of celibacy,* from their waist-bands like the Buddhist monks, and wear red serge boots. They are not allowed to wear anything that is blue, green, black, or white. During their residence at the monastery they wear the church costume, composed of the *sham-tab* and *tongu*,† and red boots made according to the Bon fashion. When they enter the congregation hall for service they leave their boots at the door. The cost of the tea drunk during the services is borne for the most part by the Shen-tsang family. The monastery is maintained by a small endowment, supplemented by the donations and subscriptions paid by the Bon community of Chang.‡

The monks of the Khams Association, numbering about forty, go annually during the summer to conduct religious services in the houses of the Bon people of Chang. In the winter they remain in the monastery. During divine service the monks are allowed to drink as much tea as they like, there being no restriction in this respect, as in the great Buddhist monasteries.

* The little water-bottle carried by gelongs, and with which they moisten their mouths in the forenoon when they are not allowed to eat or drink. Waddell, *op. cit.*, 201.—(W. R.)

† The *Sham-tab* is a plaited petticoat of red pulo; it is worn by all lamas. The *tongu* is the upper shawl.

‡ By which he means, I suppose, the Chang tang Bonbos of Gyade.—(W. R.)

The lamas here are divided into two sects, which differ slightly in their vows. In the one called Shen-tang srung-lug, a man may take vows when sixty years of age; while in the other, called Shen-tsang lug, he must take the vows of abstinence and piety as soon as he has finished his final clerical examinations. The high priest, or Je Kadub rinpoche, Yung-drung gyal-tsan by name, administers vows and ordains monks.

The rules of moral discipline, called *tsa-yig*, written on a broad sheet of pasted daphne paper, are posted in a conspicuous position in the monastery. When an ordained monk is found guilty of violating these rules, and particularly those of chastity, he is immediately punished and expelled from the monastery. Such punishments are, however, commutable into fines, such as the payments of money to the lama who ordained him, and providing entertainment and presents for the other monastic authorities and the members of the congregation.

The marriage ceremonies of the Bonbo are the same as those of all other Tibetans; so also the funeral rites, although some communities throw their dead into rivers and lakes.* After death the body is kept in the house twenty-four hours, after which it is removed to the temple or monastery. On the fourth day the ornaments and clothes worn by the deceased are placed before the gods, and prayers offered to them to take charge of his soul. At the end of the ceremony the corpse is removed to the cemetery, where it is cut into pieces to be devoured by vultures and dogs.†

Ugyen left Shendar ding on August 5, and stopped at noon at the hot springs of Langpag, where the Tashi lama has a temple-like house in charge of an officer. The water is so hot that meat can be cooked in it in half an hour.

Proceeding thence they came to Non chu, where he saw the Non chu lama rinpoche, who made many inquiries about Calcutta, the railways, telegraphs, and telephones of which he had heard travellers speak. He himself, he said, had invented a telephone, and was just then engaged in making a new instrument with which he

* This is also done among Buddhists, as in the Palti lake country. See *supra*, p. 139.

† Moorcroft, 'Travels,' ii. 68, refers to Bonbo lamas when he describes the lamas of Pin (in Ladak), who allow their hair to grow and become matted, and who wear black. Nain Singh makes mention of the Bonbo country of North Tibet, which he calls "the Ombo, or Pembo country," *Journal of the Royal Geographical Society*, xlvii. p. 107.—(W. R.)

would be able to communicate with people at a distance by means of strokes of a hammer.* He was also most curious to know about illuminating gas.

The next day Ugyen again called on the lama, who asked many questions about the resources of India, its government, commerce, laws, etc., and as Ugyen replied he noted down all he heard.

Taking leave of the lama the same day, the travellers reached Rag-tso ferry, where they crossed the Tsang-po in a rudely constructed boat, in which men and animals were ferried across. They halted for the night at Tondub ling, in the district of Jerong. They were unable to gain admittance to any house, and had to pass the night in a sheepfold.

The next day they came to Phuntso ling, where there is a lamasery with five hundred inmates. This was formerly the seat of the Taranath lama, and from here he went to Urga in Mongolia. Ugyen visited the cave where Taranath once lived as an ascetic. He also saw the printing-house of the Phuntso ling lamasery, which contained printing blocks for many valuable historical works.

Two roads lead to Sakya from this place, one *viâ* Tondub ling, the other by way of Lhartse. The travellers followed the latter, which is the shortest, arriving at Lhartse on August 10. Shakar djong,† Ugyen learnt, can be reached from Lhartse in a day. The monks of Shakar are noted for their wealth, much of which is acquired by buying gold.

Lhartse castle (*djong*) is on a fine eminence overlooking the Tsang-po. It is the chief place of trade of Upper Tsang. Its monastery used to contain one thousand lamas, but now the number is considerably smaller. Some distance from Lhartse is the famous monastery of Namring, whose monks are noted for their great learning.

Proceeding by way of Tana and Lasa, Ugyen and his companions reached Sakya on the 14th, and put up in a house belonging to the chief of the *ulag* department. There is a good market in this town, but with the exception of meat, all articles of food are dearer than at Shigatse. No good *tsamba* could be bought, and straw and hay were very dear, a *tanka* for a basketful of not over five pounds weight.

Sakya is a notorious place for thieves and all kinds of bad

* I have heard of Chinese claims to the discovery of the telephone, but never before of Tibetan. I fancy the lama had heard of the Morse transmitter, which may have been taken for a little hammer struck on a board.—(W. R.)

† Visited by Ugyen-gyatso in 1883.

characters, and the cattle have to be locked up at night in the stables and sheep-pens.

The next day, being the anniversary of the birth of Peme Chyungnas (Padma Sambhava), a grand religious dance took place in the courtyard of the temple, in the presence of the five surviving members of the royal Khon family of Sakya, who sat on chairs on a raised daïs under a large Chinese umbrella, with attendants carrying the *gyal-tsan* or banners, and the sceptre.

Eighty gaudily dressed dancers (*chyampa*) danced the day long to the music of clarionets, trumpets, kettle-drums, tambourines, and cymbals, stopping only occasionally to partake of tea. When they finally stopped they carried off with them on their shoulders quantities of *khatad* flung to them by the audience.

This dance, called the "club dance" (*phurpai kil chyam*), was performed in celebration of the birth, from a lotus flower in the lake of Dhanakosha, of the sage Uddayani. Two Timpon and a dozen policemen kept the great crowd in order with their whips.

When the ceremony of the day was over, the heir apparent of the Sakya Panchen took his seat in the *maidan* in front of the great temple, and gave his blessing (*chyag wang*) to all who approached. Ugyen visited the same day the famous library, where he saw many manuscripts written in gold, the pages some six to eight feet long and three or four feet broad.* On the board which covered these volumes were painted in gold and silver the images of innumerable Buddhas. There were also many books in Chinese, dating back to the early years of the Christian era.

The next day another kind of dance, called the *dsa-nag*, or "black hat" dance, was performed in the court of the residence of Gong-sa. There were about eighty dancers. Seventy kept up the dance continually, while the ten remaining took refreshments. They danced with much grace, the movements of their arms and hands being especially curious.

On August 17 Ugyen left Sakya, and travelling by way of Lhadong, Shong-mar-tse, the Pa la and Chiblung, reached Dobta on the 20th.† This latter locality he found very poor, the people living

* Our author farther on (p. 241) says that these volumes are about six feet long by eighteen inches broad. This appears more likely. The age of the Chinese books is certainly greatly exaggerated.—(W. R.)

† Dob-tha jong of the map. Our author passed through it when returning to Darjiling, see *infra*, p. 244.

in great squalor. The country is rocky and barren, yet the peasants have to give half the produce of their fields to the Sikkim Rajah.

Leaving Dobta, Ugyen came to the Tsomo tel-tung, or "Mule's Drink Lake," which he went around, keeping it to his left, an heretical action according to Buddhist ideas.

Stopping at Naring for the night, he then passed through Tagnag and reached Targye on the 24th.* Near here is the Dora chu-tsan ("Hot Springs"), in the neighbourhood of which he saw several carpet looms, on which excellent rugs, called *tum-shi*, were being made by women, who showed great taste in designing patterns.

Leaving Targye the travellers passed without any incidents through Kurma, Kyoga, Labrang-dokpa, and Luguri Jong,† and reached Shigatse about noon on August 29.

Ugyen remained at Shigatse for seven days, drying the plants he had collected on his journey, and observing the different incidents which took place after the death of the Grand Lama.

The day after the Grand Lama's death, he and a friend had gone to Tashilhunpo to perform their devotions, but were refused admittance. No outsider was admitted into the lamasery, the inmates of which were now not allowed to see any one or leave the monastery.

As they were coming back they passed in front of the palace of Kun-khyab ling, and saw a large pack of hounds and mastiffs, which the Panchen kept for hunting; for, though his sacred character forbade him shooting animals, he could indulge in this other form of sport.

While in the palace of Phuntso phodang, the lama's favourite residence, and where they were allowed to enter, an officer from the Labrang attached seals on everything belonging to the deceased, and on all the doors of the principal rooms in Kun-khyab ling.

The next day there was a report that the lama had come to life again, and every one was thanking the gods; the *tsamba* vendors on the market-place were throwing handfuls of their ware heavenward as offerings to the gods who had restored their Grand Lama to them.

The Dingpon of Shigatse said, in the hearing of Ugyen, that last year, when the Government of Lhasa had consulted the oracle of Lhamo sung-chyongma, it had foretold great calamities for Tibet.

* About five miles from Khamba djong.—(W. R.)

† The same road followed by him and Chandra Das when going to Shigatse.—(W. R.)

These were inevitable, in view of the perversity of the people who no longer had faith in the gods, but let themselves be led by demons in human shape.

Witchcraft was steadily increasing, he said, and in every village there were those who said they were in communion with devils. An edict had been issued forbidding witchcraft and fortune-telling. It was found that under the castle of Shigatse itself there were fifteen witches (*paonal jorma*). These had been brought to trial, and had been submitted to an examination which required them to describe the contents of several chests filled with a variety of things. Four alone were able to answer, the others were flogged and then released on condition that they should give up imposing on the public credulity and would furnish bonds for their good behaviour.

CHAPTER IX.

FUNERAL OF THE PANCHEN RINPOCHE.—VISIT TO THE GREAT LAMASERY OF SAMYE AND TO YARLUNG.

On September 19 the minister left Dongtse, and I despatched Ugyen once more to the Rigyal Shendar monastery to obtain further information on the Bonbos and their religion. I myself went to Gyantse, where I was most kindly received by the Chyag-dso-pa and his family.

The Chyag-dso-pa of Gyantse has under his superintendence a large rug and blanket factory in which about ninety women are kept constantly employed, some picking the wool, some dyeing it, and others weaving. The *tso*, or "dye plant," grows in rocky soil and is collected by the Dokpas. It supplies a beautiful yellow colour. The leaves only are used in dyeing.*

The people employed in this factory are kept under the strictest discipline. One day one of the women who was late beginning her work, was whipped by order of the Chyag-dso-pa. A boy caught stealing wool was also punished in the same way and imprisoned for a fortnight. I was rather surprised at seeing the Chyag-dso-pa thus taking the law in his own hands; but he told me that the Government allowed great landholders like his master, the Shape Phala, judicial power over their own serfs. I may here note that the pastoral tenants on this, and probably all other estates, pay the owners every year two pounds of butter for every she yak they own, and two pounds of wool for every sheep.

On September 25, corresponding to the 13th of the 8th moon, harvest began. This day was selected as it was a very lucky

* It is a shrub (*Symplocos*) common in Sikkim. See Hooker, 'Himalayan Journals,' ii. 41. *Tso* (or *Tsos*) is not, I believe, the Tibetan name of the plant, but only means "dye."—(W. R.)

one. All the people turned out for the work, and I went to the roof of the castle to watch the reapers. While working they sang hymns and offered the gods bunches of barley, peas, and wheat, as first-fruit offerings.

Ugyen returned from his trip on the 1st of October.

On September 13 (25 ?), the day of the full moon, while he was still at Shigatse, the dead Grand Lama was brought from Tob-gyal to Tashilhunpo. First of all came a crowd of people on foot, followed by about a hundred men on ponies. After these came the officials of Labrang, followed by the chiefs, nobles, and high officials of Tsang, all on horseback. Behind them was carried the sedan containing the remains of his holiness, the Panchen rinpoche. The sedan was followed by the Chinese garrison, consisting of fifty soldiers. The lamentations of the people increased as the procession approached, and Ugyen said he cried like a child. Some prayed loudly, looking towards heaven: "God and saints ordain that our beloved protector (*kyab-gong*), may soon return to this world for the good of all living beings." No bells were rung, and the procession passed on in solemn silence, all, laymen and monks, dressed in dark red apparel, without any ornaments. When the procession entered Tashilhunpo, the sedan chair was placed on the State altar, in the Hall of Departed Saints. On the following day Ugyen went to make his obeisance to the dead Lama. He found the body (*ku-por*) wrapped in *khatags*, and placed in a sitting posture. It was very small, bearing no proportion to the stature of the Lama when living. Ugyen was told that this was the result of the embalmment.*

The same day the period of summer retirement (*yar-nas*) for monks came to an end. It was observed as a holiday by the people: there was racing and other sports, and all the people, lamas, men, women, and children bathed together in the Nyang chu. The only sign of mourning still observed this day was keeping the windows of the houses in town and at Tashilhunpo shut.

On the 17th Ugyen reached Shendar ding, where he put up in the house of a man whose wife had just been confined. A woman in Tibet, as in India, is held to be unclean (*kyedib*) for a month after her confinement, at the expiration of which time certain religious ceremonies are performed for her purification.

* See *infra*, p. 256; the details there given do not quite agree with what he says on this occasion.—(W. R.)

Ugyen remained in this place until the 26th, and obtained from the high priest of the lamasery much valuable information bearing on the theology and history of the Bon religion. He also copied many valuable works on these subjects, which were obligingly put at his disposal by the lama.*

Having been prevented when at Lhasa, as previously narrated, from going to the celebrated monastery of Samye, the most ancient

GLACIERS OF KANGLACHAN PASS.

and famous, probably, of all Tibetan lamaseries, I now endeavoured to make arrangements for this much longed-for trip. I sent Ugyen to Dongtse, after his return from his trip to Shendar ding, to try and get a guide; but he failed, as rumours had got abroad that I was a

* Our author gives several pages of text on the ethics, etc., of the Bonbo, but they are so technical that I have been obliged to omit them. The Bonbo terminology used by him is practically the same as that of the lamas. He tells us that the Bonbo are divided into six sects, the most popular of which is the Tu lug, to which the people of the Chang tang and Gyade belong. The Shen-tsang lug is the second in importance. See also *supra*, 208.—(W. R.)

British employé, and Phurchung was accused of having brought me into Tibet in violation of the express orders of the Nepal Durbar.

In view of these disturbing rumours, I left Gyantse on October 4, and returned to Tashilhunpo, where I was rejoined on the 13th by Phurchung, who had been sent with letters to India in August.

I now decided to send Ugyen back to India with the botanical and other collections he had made, while I would visit Samye, and the Lhokha country south of it. He bought ten yaks for a hundred rupees, and pack saddles, and engaged Lachung men to accompany him to Khamba djong. He started on the 17th, while Phurchung and I returned to Gyantse, arriving there on the 18th.

The people were now busy threshing their barley—cows, their muzzles covered with wicker baskets, treaded it out, and were kept to their work by two boys.

The Chyag-dso-pa lent me a man to guide me to Samye and the south country (Lhokha); his name was Gopon. He told me he was ready to start at any time, for his brother (*namdo pun*, "joint brother"), as he called him, had now returned from Shigatse, and he could leave his wife. These two men had, though not related, one wife between them, and the three of them got on very well together.

On October 21 I finally started for Samye, and followed, as far as the ruined village of Ring-la, the high road to Lhasa I had travelled over earlier in the year. There is but one family now living in this once prosperous place. These poor people earn a precarious livelihood by making pottery. A concave wooden pan is used for the purpose, in which the pots are shaped with a piece of wood or the fingers, by turning the pan or mould around with the hand. This is the usual method employed in Tibet.

Leaving Ring-la, we travelled through the fine pasture-lands adjoining the Yamdo tso, and over desolate highlands with an occasional stump of a juniper or cedar tree, till we reached the village of Ta-lung, famous, as its name implies,* for the number and breed of its ponies. Around the village the land is cultivated, and showed evidence of great industry on the part of the people.

We at first failed to secure a night's lodgings in any of the houses of the village, for the people took us for Lhopa or Bhutia, of whom they stand in great dread, as they frequently make raids on this district; but we were so fortunate in the end as to secure the good-

* *Ta*, "horse;" *lung*, "valley." On the name Yamdok tso, see *Journ. Buddh. Text. Soc. of India*, IV. Pt. III. p.t.—(W. R.)

will of a lama of the monastery, who got a friend of his to admit us to his house.

The next day (October 24) we resumed our journey by daylight, and crossing the Shandung chu bay of Lake Yamdo, followed along the base of the steep hills which overhang its shores. We got sight, on the way, of the Chong-khor monastery,* from which come all the *amchi lhamo* dancers and mimes,† some of whom annually visit Darjiling. Passing the Rivotag river some eight miles north of the Djong of the same name, we ascended a ridge, from the top of which we saw the villages of Yurupe, Ke-utag, and Khyunpodo. The country was everywhere thinly populated; but large numbers of yaks, donkeys, sheep, and goats were grazing about.

We stopped at the village of Shari, prettily situated between the Yamdo and a little sweet-water lakelet, and put up in the *mani lha khang*, the centre of which was taken up by a great prayer-wheel about six feet high and three feet in diameter. An old man lived here whose sole occupation was to turn the wheel.

The next morning we crossed a low hill, the Kabu la, and, skirting the northern extremity of the Rombuja lake, reached by eleven o'clock the village of Melung,‡ thus called from the fire (*me*) stones found in the valley (*lung*) in which it is situated.

After a short halt at Melung, we resumed our march, the country opening a little as we advanced, and villages and hamlets becoming more numerous. That night we stopped at Khamedo, where there live about a hundred families.

We were off by sunrise, and passing some distance to the north of the large village of Ling,§ where the Djongpon of the Yamdo district reside, we soon after found ourselves in the broad pasture-lands of Karmoling, here some ten miles broad, where hundreds of ponies, belonging to the Lhasa Government, were seen grazing.

We ate our breakfast at Shabshi, and then, passing through the hamlet of Tanta,‖ we began the ascent of the Tib la, which marks in this direction the boundary between the Yamdo and Lhokha districts,

* The Choi-khor-tse of the map.—(W. R.)

† Certain dancers represent the celestial musicians or *kinnara*, called in Tibetan *mi ham-chi*. These are probably what S. C. D. refers to. Ri-o-tag Jong of the map. —(W. R.)

‡ Probably Nyema lung of the map.—(W. R.)

§ Called Loh-bu Jong on the maps.—(W. R.)

‖ Tang-da of the maps.—(W. R.)

and from the top of which I had a magnificent view of the whole lake country, the like of which I have seen nowhere in the Himalayas.

The difficulties attending the descent of the Tib la were infinitely greater than those of the ascent, and the violence of the wind made it difficult even to stand erect. By five o'clock we reached the village of Tib, where there are about ten houses, around which grow a few stunted willows. The villagers were busy treading out their harvest with their cattle, and their merry songs, wafted by the night wind, fell pleasantly on my ears till I dropped asleep.

Tib is under the authority of the Gongkhar Djongpon, who, with his two lama assistants, or *Tse-dung*, usually resides in the neighbouring town of Tosnam-gyaling.

October 27.—Our road led us down the course of the Tib chu. The valley was covered with willows (here called *nyamyam shing*, or "mourning trees"), cypresses, junipers, and a species of silver fir, and though the way was stony, it was pleasant on account of the forest growth through which it led.

We reached Tos nam-gyaling djong * early in the afternoon. This place is celebrated for the serge and broadcloth manufactured here. The Tib chu, as it flowed through the town between low banks covered with flowers, and the tall poplars and walnut trees surrounding the high, well-built houses, gave this place a most attractive appearance. We met here a party of Horba † with a caravan of yaks laden with salt, which they had brought from the north for sale in this country.

Before reaching the town we passed by the little nunnery of Peru, and shortly after leaving it we came to the large lamasery of Toi Suduling, with about five hundred monks of the Gelugpa sect.

We stopped for the night at Khede-sho,‡ a small town with two castles, and situated near the Tsang-po. The town looks like a fortress, with its old-fashioned solid houses, its narrow streets, the Dombu choskhor, or lamasery, with encircling walls painted blue and red, and an old monastery on top of the hill commanding the town.

It seemed to be a prosperous place; there were flower gardens

* Ton namgyalling Jong of the maps. Altitude 12,430 feet.—(W. R.)

† Tibetans from North-east Tibet. These were more probably Changpa from the Chang tang, for the Horba do not bring salt to Central Tibet.—(W. R.)

‡ Kedesho Jong of the maps. A. K., who passed through it the same year, only a fortnight before our author, calls it Chitishio Jong. He says there are about a thousand houses in it.—'Report on the Explor. made by A. K.,' p. 84.—(W. R.)

and groves of trees, and in nearly every window and doorway flowers were growing in pots. Two Nyerpa are stationed here, who administer the town and supervise the manufacture of serge and cloth for the Dalai lama and Panchen rinpoche.

The next morning we passed through two miles of soft sand, and finally came to the mighty Tsang-po, and after much shouting to the boatmen on the farther side to bring over their junk (*shanpa*),* and

RIVER ZEMU, CHATANGLA PASS.

after a couple of hours waiting in the cold and fog, it came slowly across, rowed by three women and two men, who sang lustily as they pulled.

The river is here about half a mile broad, very deep, but with a sluggish current. We were soon landed at the Dorje-tag ghat, where we paid a tanka for each of our ponies, and five *karma* (or two

* *Shanpa* means "boatman," not boat.—(W. R.)

annas) for each man as ferry charges. The ferry belongs to the Dorje-tag lamasery near by, one of the oldest and holiest of the Nyingma sect. The incarnate lama who rules this lamasery died about a year and a half ago, but he has reappeared recently in the flesh at Darchendo.* This convent is at the foot of a range of hills which stretches along the river to beyond Samye, and a large grove extends from near it to the high road.

We stopped for tiffin on the river bank, where I noticed the ground covered with fish-bones and shells. Gopon told me that all the small fry which the people of this country catch are used to manure the fields with, as they are too bony to eat.

Gopon, who, by the way, was a most loquacious fellow, told me while we drank our tea that when a new-born child dies in this country the body is packed in an earthenware jar or wooden box, and is thus kept in the storeroom, or hung from the ceiling of its parents' house.† In Upper Tibet the body is usually kept on the roof with a little turret built over it; though the people who cannot afford to do this keep it also hung from the ceiling, the face turned upwards.

The road now led over sand hillocks and spurs of rock, in some places close to the edge of the river, where great care was necessary in getting the ponies along.

We stopped at Tag, behind which rise the forest-covered mountains, and where we got quarters in a fine new house, and were made most comfortable by the owners.

The next day we were off before sunrise, and after a few miles through heavy sand, came to Songkar‡ with about two hundred houses, and around which grow walnut, willow, peach, poplar, and other varieties of trees. It is said that Prince Lhawang, son of

* Ta-chien-lu, on the border of Sze-chuen. The Dorje-tag (Rdo-rje brag) lamasery has given its name to a sect. See Waddell, *op. cit.*, 73.

† This seems to be the same custom as obtains in Eastern Tibet, where all corpses are kept until the crops have been reaped, and then either fed to vultures, burnt or otherwise disposed of. See 'Land of the Lamas,' p. 286. The text is not quite clear, for it does not state whether or not the corpses are kept permanently in the houses of the parents.—(W. R.)

‡ Called Tsong-ka on the maps. All this route was again gone over by Ugyen-gyatso in 1883. See 'Report on Explorations from 1856 to 1886,' p. 28 *et sqq.* He says (p. 29) that the river at Tsong-ka is over a mile broad. King Me agtsoms was the father of Tisrong detsan, of whom our author has so often occasion to speak. He reigned over Tibet in the latter half of the seventh century, A.D.—(W. R.)

King Me agtsoms, was drowned here, and the king, furious at the river gods for having caused the death of his heir, ordered the river to be whipped. The *nagas* were terrified when they learnt the order, and repairing to the king, told him that if he would forbear, they would show him many good omens. 'Tis for this that this place is also called Songkar (or Zungkhar) lha-tag, or "Zungkhar of the gods' omens."

Near the village passes the road to Lhasa by the Songkar la and Dechen,* over which a great deal of timber is carried on yaks to Dechen and thence by boat to Lhasa.

From Songkar to Samye most of the way is over a great sandy plain called Nagshu chyema,† which stretches from the base of the rugged Lomda hills to the Tsang-po. Reaching the top of a low hill, Samye stood before me, its gilded domes glittering in the sun, and the hillock of Haboi ri rising amidst the sands to the south of the great monastery.

Passing under some willow trees growing through the sand just outside the lamasery walls, we entered by the southern gate, over which was a *chorten* made somewhat in the shape of a *dorje*.‡ The guide led us to the house of the mother of the Om-dse (head priest), and we were most hospitably received by the old lady, who gave us her oratory to lodge in. Before the rooms assigned us was a little flower patch, and other plants were growing here and there in pots. There were also two singing-birds in cages.

Tung-ma, our hostess, was a fine-looking old lady of about sixty years of age. She wore as a necklace a number of silver ornaments and charm boxes set with turquoises. Her head-dress differed from any I had seen, being in shape like a pointed cap.§

Phurchung was delighted with Samye; he had not only reached the holiest of Tibetan sanctuaries, but a place where *chang* was extraordinarily good and cheap; what more could he ask for?

After taking tea I went with my two companions to visit the chief

* The Gokhar la crossed by Nain Singh in 1873. Dechen djong is on the Kyi chu, a day's journey east of Lhasa.—(W. R.)

† Chyema (*bye-ma*) means "sand," *nagshu* probably means "black."—(W. R.)

‡ I cannot conceive how a *chorten* can resemble a *dorje* (*vajra*). The comparison is not a happy one.—(W. R.)

§ Perhaps she came from Litang. The women there wear a large silver plaque on either side of the head, which meet over the crown in a point, so that, from a distance, the head-dress looks not unlike a pointed cap.—(W. R.)

temple of Wu-tse (Amitabha). I inquired of the beadle (*ku-nyer*) the whereabouts of the celebrated library with the famous Indian books which Atisha had found here when he came to this monastery eight hundred years ago. I was told, to my great disappointment, that "for our sins the great library was destroyed by fire about sixty years ago, and there are at present but modern reprints in it."

In the great congregation hall the Dalai lama's throne occupies the north-eastern corner of the chapel of the Jo-vo. Near this latter is an image representing the first Dalai and statues of the principal disciples of the Buddha.

In the second story of this building are images of Tsepamed (Amitayus) and of the historic Buddha, besides many others of minor interest. In the third or upper story are images of the three Buddhas of the present cycle. From this story I had a splendid view of the Tsang-po, which is very wide here.

On the wall surrounding the Wu-tse temple are painted various mythological and historical scenes, also pictures of the principal sanctuaries of Tibet.* The monks attached to the temple live close by in a two-storied building.

The next day (October 30) I visited the four *ling*, or minor temples built around the Wu-tse, and the eight *ling-ten* or lesser shrines. In some of the smaller chapels were life-size images of Indian sages who had visited Tibet in the early ages of Buddhism in this country, and these images are said to have been made by Hindu artists. I also noticed growing in some of the court-yards some stunted bamboos and Indian shrubs.

After visiting the white *chorten*, we went outside the temple walls to see the chapel built by the wives of King Tisrong detsan, which resembles in style the Wu-tse, though much smaller than it.

We made an excursion the next day to the famous cave called Chim phug, where Padma Sambhava and other worthies gave themselves up for a period to abstraction.

We passed through the village of Samye, in which there are probably a thousand people and a few Chinese and Nepalese shops, and then for a few miles travelled through cultivated fields, with here and there a little village, till we came to the foot of the Chim phug hill. The range of which it forms a part is a thousand feet or so

* These are the subjects usually seen in such frescoes throughout Tibet and Mongolia.—(W. R.)

high, well covered with fine timber, and inhabited, so some of the numerous woodcutters we met told us, by wild goats, sheep, deer, and snow leopards.

We reached the temple before noon. It is a two-storied, flat-roofed building built on the rock. In the rock underneath the temple there is a fissure about fifteen feet long and six feet broad, and varying in height from three to six feet. In this there is a little

GLACIAL LAKE AND MORAINES AT THE SOURCE OF THE ZENNI (?).

chapel where the image of Padma Sambhava, flanked by two female attendants, is to be seen. In the building above are images of a host of deities and saints, as also that of King Tisrong. The books I looked at in the temple belonged to the Nyingma sect, and were of no special interest.

Leaving Chim phug after a couple of hours' rest, we returned to Samye by another road, passing three little temples, or rather

hermitages, where Indian pundits are said to have lived in times of yore. Flocks of pigeons were hovering about them, and walnut and willow trees grew around, giving them a peaceful and secluded appearance.

The sands are slowly but surely burying Samye, and a large portion of the town, including some of the temples, is already lost under them. There is a prophecy attributed to Padma Sambhava, to the effect that Samye will be engulfed in the sands, and it is in a fair way of being accomplished.

November 1.—I again visited the Wu-tse. The principal room in the *gong khang* (upper hall) is full of all kinds of weapons and armour sacred to the gods, protectors of religion (Darmapalas). In the beautiful temple of Behor and Noijinhamara * is a room called the *wu-khang*, where the breath of the dying is kept in a jar specially consecrated to this purpose.†

A few notes on the famous lamasery of Samye and Padma Sambhava find place here.

The temple was built by King Tisrong detsen, whose capital was on the hill of Haboi-ri, just south of where Samye now stands, at the suggestion of the Indian sage Santa Rakshita, and with the assistance of Padma Sambhava, the originator of monasticism in Tibet.‡ It was a copy of the great temple of Odantapura in Central India. Its three stories were each in a different style of architecture, one Tibetan, another Indian, and the third Chinese: so it was after a while given the name of San-yang or "three styles," which in Tibetan is pronounced Samye,§ though it was originally named Mi-gyur lhun-grub Tsug-lha-khang, "the temple of the unalterable mass of perfection."

* Behor must be Bihar gyalpo, one of the five great patron saints or Chu-gyong, of Tibet. Noijinhamara may be the god of wealth.—(W. R.)

† *Wu-khang* would appear to mean "central room or house." I have never heard of bottling up the breath or spirit of the dead among any Buddhist people. This must be a survival of some pre-Buddhist superstition.—(W. R.)

‡ Tibetan historians inform us that Padma Sambhava (*Peme chyung-nas*) was called to Tibet from Kafiristan (*O-rgyan*) by Santa Rakshita (*Dji-wa tso*), who could not withstand the onslaught of the Bonbos. See Emil Schlaginweit, 'Die Könige von Tibet,' p. 52 *et sqq.*

§ Written *Bsam-yas.* I do not believe that this interpretation of the word Samye is correct. *San yang*, it is true, means "three styles" in Chinese, but Chinese *yang* would never be pronounced *ye* in Tibetan. Waddell, *op. cit.*, 266, translates the name, "the academy for obtaining the heap of unchanging meditation." Nain Singh visited Samye (he calls it Sama-ye Gomba) in 1873. "It is surrounded by a very high circular wall, 1½ mile in circumference, with gates facing the four points of the compass. On the top

Both Santa Rakshita and Padma Sambhava were unable, on account of the open hostility of the Bonbo, to remain long in Tibet. It is said by some that the latter sage remained there six years, others make his sojourn there eighteen years, after which he returned to India; but, however long he stayed, he firmly implanted mysticism in Tibet.

King Tisrong gathered together at Samye sacred images and treasures from India and the borderlands of China; but of all the collections made here the most valuable was the great library of Indian works, of which Atisha, who visited Samye in the eleventh century, said that there were more Indian books here than in the great Indian convents of Buddhagaya, Vikramashila, and Odantapura united.

Samye has experienced, since the days of its foundation, many vicissitudes: it was partly destroyed by King Langdharma,* and again later on by other followers of the old religion. Then it was partially destroyed by an earthquake, in 1749 (?), and in 1808 (?) the Wu-tse itself was destroyed by fire.† To rebuild it the people of Tibet gave a hundred thousand ounces of silver, and the Shape Shada Dondub dorje, who had charge of the works, occupied five hundred workmen for seven years in reconstructing the temple. Again, in 1850, an earthquake caused great damage to the temple, the dome fell in and the frescoes, floors, etc., were irreparably injured. But the damage was again repaired by means of public subscriptions and grants from the State, amounting together to about 175,000 ounces of silver in value.‡

of this wall the Pundit counted 1030 *chhartans* (*chorten*) made of burnt bricks . . . The interiors of the (stone) walls of these temples are covered with very beautiful writing in enormous Hindi (Sanscrit) characters . . ." *Jour. Roy. Geog. Soc.*, xlvii. p. 114. Sarat Chandra says that a work, entitled 'Pama Kahthang' ('Peme Katang?'), contains a full description of this famous lamasery. See also Waddell, *op. cit.*, 266–268.

* This iconoclast, who appears to have been born in A.D. 861, interdicted the Buddhist religion in Tibet in 899, and was murdered in 900. See Csoma, 'Tib. Grammar,' p. 183. Cf. Emil Schlaginweit, *op. cit.*, p. 59, and I. J. Schmidt, 'Geschichte der Ost Mongolen,' pp. 49, 362, *et sqq.* In the last work is the history of the murder of the king by the hermit, Lha-lung palgyi dorje. It agrees with what our author has told us *supra*, p. 153, when describing the origin of the "black hat" dance.—(W. R.)

† Our author says, only "in the year *fire-tiger* of the thirteenth cycle," and "again, after a period of ten years, in the month of May (fire-tiger of the fourteenth cycle)." This is impossible, as *fire tiger* is the third year in the cycle of sixty years. Assuming the first date to be correct, the second must be A.D. 1808. Waddell, *op. cit.*, 267, says the library was destroyed about 1816.—(W. R.)

‡ Nain Singh speaks of a town called Sawe, where the Tibetan treasury is kept. See Markham's 'Tibet,' p. cxiii. This is Samye. Explorer A. K. passed here in October,

On November 2 I left Samye for a visit to Yarlung, the early home of the first Tibetan kings, if tradition is to be believed.

The road we followed led eastward, over a sandy plain and by numerous villages, the most important of which was Do, until we reached Taga-sho, around which were many walnut (*taga*), peach, plum, poplar, and willow trees, all planted with great regularity.* Here we put up, in the house of a friend of our guide, who himself was from the neighbouring village of Do.

I was pleased to find mutton selling here at a very low price, a result of the presence of a party of Hor Dokpa from Radeng,† who had brought large quantities of salt, wool, and meat. Their yaks were the largest I have seen in Tibet.

Leaving Taga-sho the next morning, we passed by the ruins of Tagkar-sho, probably at one time the residence of the kings of the Phag-modu dynasty, who derive their name probably from a village near by still called Phagmodu.‡ Near this place, in a commanding position, is the lamasery of Nari ta-tsang, founded by the Dalai lama Gedun-gyatso.

At the village of Jong § we began the ascent of the steep hill on whose summit is the old lamasery of Densa-til, the principal building nestled amidst frowning crags, on which grow here and there a few firs and juniper trees. In the adjacent cliffs were numerous caves for recluses.

This temple differs somewhat from all other buildings of this kind

1882, but his notes contain nothing about this celebrated place. Ugyen-gyatso visited it in October, 1883, but his report also contains little of interest. See 'Report on Exploration from 1856 to 1886,' pp. 28, 29. Csoma, 'Tib. Grammar,' p. 183, says it was founded A.D. 749. Cf. Emil Schlaginweit, 'Die Könige von Tibet,' p. 53. Ssanang Ssetsen (I. J. Schmidt, 'Geschichte der Ost Mongolen'), p. 41, says the building of the temple was begun in A.D. 811, and finished in 823. The date given by Csoma is probably correct, as King Tisrong detsan's father was a contemporary of the Tang Emperor Chang-tsung, who reigned in 684. Tisrong reigned from 740 to 786. He was born, according to Csoma, A.D. 728.—(W. R.)

* Ugyen-gyatso also speaks of the woods and gardens, and especially the walnut trees of this section of country. He refers also to the excellent roads. See 'Report on the Explor. from 1856 to 1886,' p. 28. A. K. speaks of the village of Do as Dushio. *Tso* (*shio*) means village, and is an abbreviation from *grong-tso* (pr. *drong-tso*).—(W. R.)

† There is a Reting gomba on the big broad between Lhasa and Hsi-ning, not far from Nagchukha. The party referred to may have come from this neighbourhood, though the Dokpa of that region are not Horba.—(W. R.)

‡ Phamu bub of the maps.—(W. R.)

§ Jang on the maps.—(W. R.)

I have seen in Tibet, the plan of it approaching rather that of a modern public building in Bengal. I noticed here eighteen beautiful silver and copper *chorten*, the finest specimens of such metal work I have seen. Six tablets of gold, each six feet long and six inches broad, hung from the ceiling, besides six piles of similar but smaller tablets in a corner.

Of all the monasteries in Tibet, this is perhaps the richest in religious treasures,* and the Government of Lhasa takes particular care of it. Among the curious objects placed before the images of the gods in the principal temple, I saw some bowls filled with various kinds of seed and some fossils, among which some grains of barley.

The next day we resumed our journey. The road at first led through a forest said to have sprung from the hairs of Je Phagmodu, the founder of the Densa-til lamasery.†

All the way to Samdub phodang, the capital of the Phagmodu kings, was a gentle descent over gravel and mica-schist rock. Crossing a fine wooden bridge about fifty yards long, with railings running along either side, we found ourselves in the principal street of the town, in which a large number of Dokpa traders were camped under some walnut trees.

The three-storied castle, once a royal residence, is now occupied by the Djongpon and the two Tsedung from Lhasa. Samdub phodang is now a *gon-shi*, or "Crown Demesne" of Lhasa.

A few miles beyond this town we came to the Sangri khamar lamasery,‡ situated on a beautiful eminence overlooking the Tsang-po, whose surface is broken here by huge masses of rock. Around the great lamasery stretched broad fields of barley, now ripe for the sickle, and the beauty of the crops surpassed anything I have ever seen in Tibet.

Here at Sangri khamar once lived Saint Machig labdon,§ an

* Quoting from the Dsamling yeshe, our author says elsewhere that there are here eighteen silver tombs of the successive Phagmondu lama rinpoche.

† Trees sprung from the hair of saints or deities are frequently found in Tibet and in other Buddhist countries. The most famous is the "white sandalwood tree" of Kumbum, described by Huc and other travellers. Chandra Das tells us (*supra*, p. 117) of a juniper within the walls of Tashilhunpo, which had sprung from the hair of Gedun-dub, the first Panchen rinpoche. Explorer Ugyen-gyatso ('Report on Explor. from 1856 to 1886,' p. 28) refers also to the Densatil forest. Csoma, 'Tib. Gram.,' p. 185, says the Dän-sa tel (gdan-sa tel) monastery was founded in A.D. 1156.—(W. R.)

‡ The Dsamling yeshe calls it Zangri khang mar.—(S. C. D.)

§ Elsewhere called Labkyi Donma.—(S. C. D.)

incarnation of Arya Tara. I visited the cell she lived in, and saw her tomb and an image of her. There are now two ascetics living here, who have made vows never to come out nor to speak a word so long as they live. When I approached them they smiled and seemed pleased with the little present I made them. The beadle who accompanied me said they had been immured in their cells for ten years.

Resuming our journey, we passed by Sangri Jong, and following a narrow path, scarcely a yard wide, overhanging the eddying river, reached Logang ferry;* but, though we shouted for an hour to the boatmen on the other side, we could not get them to come over for us, so we had to return to the village of Jong at the western base of the Densa-til mountain. Here we got lodgings for the night in the house of the headman.

November 5.—A little before dawn we left Jong and made for the Nango † ferry. There is an iron suspension bridge at this place, but it is so much out of repair that it cannot be crossed over, and we were ferried across in a large boat, together with a number of traders and their donkeys. The river is very narrow here, scarcely a hundred yards in breadth. Passing through the village of Khyungar we entered Tse-tang, ‡ the capital of Yarlung, and formerly a place of great importance. Our guide procured lodgings for us in the house of a woman whose husband, a Kashmiri, had died a year or so before and who was now living alone with her husband's son. The Kache (Kashmiri) received us very kindly, but after a short conversation with me he became alarmingly suspicious of my true character, and kept continually turning the conversation to the *Shaheb-logs* ("Englishmen") he had known at Katmandu, and the greatness of the *Engrez Maharani* ("Queen of England"). As often as he spoke of these

* From Sangri khamar the traveller turned westward along the river-bank till he came in front of Logang (or Lu-kang-tu), where there is a ferry-boat.—(W. R.)

† Nyen on the maps. I find no mention of this bridge in the reports of other explorers.—(W. R.)

‡ Called Chethang by all the other explorers. A. K. calls it "a large town containing 1000 houses, a bazar, a gomba, and a fort," 'Report of Explor. made by A. K.,' p. 83. Explorer Ugyen-gyatso, who visited in October, 1883, says, "Mahomedan shops were found in the market in which wheat and meat soup were sold. It is curious that the lama notes that pork is specially cheap at this place, three annas being the price paid for a pig's head, and eight annas for a quarter. Radishes, carrots, and yak's flesh are also sold in the public market," 'Report of Explor. from 1856 to 1886,' p. 27. Nain Singh, who visited Chetang in 1873, says there are 700 lamas in the two monasteries, see *Jour. Roy. Geog. Soc.*, xlvii. 117.—(W. R.)

subjects, so often did I rejoin with some inquiry about Buddhism or a lamasery I wished to visit.

I soon began to feel excessively nervous, and told my men that we had better leave Tse-tang as soon as possible; but Phurchung assured me that I need have no fear, that furthermore the ponies absolutely required rest, so that we must stay here a few days.

CANE BRIDGE ON THE RUNGIT RIVER.

The day after our arrival at Tse-tang I went on the roof of our house, and was able to see a broad stretch of the surrounding country. To the north of the town was the Gonpoi ri, one of the favourite resorts of Shenrezig (Avalokiteswara), and where, according to tradition, the monkey king and the goblin raised their family of monkeys, from which ultimately descended the Tibetan race.*

* This legend is told in the thirty-fourth chapter of the 'Mani kambum,' and our author gives an abstract of it. I have translated the full original text in my 'Land of the Lamas,' p. 355 *et sqq.*—(W. R.)

There are four lamaseries around Tse-tang, and in the town are some fifteen Nepalese, twenty Chinese, and ten Kashmiri shops, besides native traders from all parts of Tibet. Mutton and butter were abundant, but barley, though cheap, is of inferior quality.

I left Tse-tang on November 17 for a visit to the Yarlung valley and its monuments.

A short distance to the south of Tse-tang we passed through Ne-dong djong, where resides the Djongpon of this district, and which used to be a royal city of the Phagmodu kings. Save the lamasery of Benja, little remains but ruins to attest its past importance.

Following up the course of the Yarlung river, we came after a few miles to the temple of Tandub, one of those said to have been built in the seventh century by King Strong-btsan gambo, and to which a monastery was later on added by Tisrong detsan. It is a copy, on a small scale, of the Jo khang of Lhasa, and contains many objects of interest to the pious pilgrim.

Three hours' ride from Tandub brought us to Ombu lha-khang,* the most ancient of Tibetan palaces. It is situated on the side of a range of bare hills, and is about a hundred yards from the village of Ombu, which derives its name from the number of *ombu* trees (tamarisks) which grow around it. Ombu lha-khang, though it has temples and shrines, is more properly a kind of memorial hall. The images in it are not those of gods and saints, but of kings, nobles, and ministers. The building itself is a curious mixture of the Indian and Tibetan styles of architecture, and the interior arrangement of the rooms and their decorations were unlike those of Tibetan buildings. The rooms, I may add, all face eastward.

After taking our lunch under a tamarisk tree, we remounted our ponies and rode on to Phodang djong, the most ancient town in Tibet. As all the kings of the dynasty which sprang from this place bore the title of *Chos-gyal*, or "Catholic majesty," this town is also called Chos-gyal phodang. The present chief of this place claims descent from this very ancient line, but even his own people do not believe much in his pretended genealogy.

* Called on the maps Zomba Lha khang ("Ancient Palace"). The name is variously written U-bu la-gang, Ombo lang-gang. See Emil Schlaginwert, 'Die Könige von Tibet,' p. 42. It is said to have been built by King Nya-kri tsanpo (IVth century, B.C.?), or by King Totori nyan-tsan (IIIrd century, A.D.). I. J. Schmidt, *op. cit.*, p. 317 (quoting the Bodhimur), says it was called Ombre lang-ti.—(W. R.)

A few miles over gently rising ground brought us by sunset to the top of a hill, on which is situated the Tag-tsan bumba, or "Dome of Good Omens." * We were kindly received by the young monk in charge of the shrine, who presented me with a basket of splendid white potatoes, which vegetable he assured me had grown around this place from time immemorial.†

November 8.—We left before daylight, and, crossing the Yarlung, reached the Rachung lamasery on the top of a steep hill, where we gained admittance after a good deal of trouble, the keeper being away and the incarnate lama, Rachung, confined in a cell performing certain vows. A little below the monastery we were shown the cave in which the original Rachung, the greatest of Milaraspa's disciples, dwelt for three years, three months, and three days.‡

We rested here for a while, and then went to the village of Rachung at the foot of the hill, where we found good lodgings for the night in the house of an old acquaintance of our guide, Gopon.

Formerly this broad valley of Yarlung, or Gondang-tangme, was covered with innumerable populous villages, and in no other part of Tibet was there such opulence. But one day the snows melting on the Yarlha-shampo and torrential rains caused a mighty flood which submerged the whole plain for many days. The villages were utterly destroyed, and the people all perished, and when the waters had retired a deep deposit of sand covered everything. In course of time the country was reclaimed, and has now reached a certain degree of prosperity, but it has never recovered its primitive flourishing state.

The next day we rode across the northern slope of the Shetag mountains, or "Black Crystal" (*Shel-tag*), thus called from the glistening black rocks exposed to view along the road,§ and after a few miles came to the great cemetery which adjoins the lamasery of Yarlung-shetag. Phurchung and Gopon rolled themselves on the

* Tag chhen Pomda on the maps.—(W. R.)

† The young monk was certainly misinformed. Potatoes were introduced into Bhutan by Warren Hastings, and spread from there into Tibet within the last hundred years. On the eastern border of Tibet potatoes have been introduced by the Chinese and the French missionaries.—(W. R.)

‡ Ras-chung Dorje gragspa, or "Dorje drapa of Rachung," was born in 1083. This lamasery, which he founded, is also called Ras-chung phug gomba, "the lamasery of the cave of Ras-chung."—(W. R.)

§ Probably porphyry.—(W. R.)

blood-stained stone slab, on which corpses are cut up, and mumbled some *mantra*.

In this lamasery there live forty monks and as many nuns:* their children are brought up to the professions of their parents. This arrangement has been sanctioned by the Nyingma church, as the lamasery was so lonely that no monks could be induced to reside in it till this privilege was conceded them.

Beyond this lamasery the trail led along the edge of a precipice where we passed a number of little cells occupied by hermits (or *tsampa*), who, as we passed, stretched out their hands for alms through the little opening left in the front of their dens. Some of these men had been immured five years, and many of them had also made vows of silence.

A little way beyond this point, and about 500 feet below the summit of the hill, we reached the cell of Padma Sambhava, near which is a chapel called the Upper Lha-khang of Shetag. The keeper led us to a heavy door under a huge rock; unlocking it we entered the cavern, which is held the most sacred shrine of the Nyingma sect. In it I saw a silver reliquary in which is kept a silver image of the saint, representing him as a boy of twelve. There was a plate before the image filled with rings, earrings, turquoises, pieces of amber, gold and silver coins, the offerings of pilgrims.

Passing the Shetag, we came to the village of Ze-khang shikha, and thence by a gentle descent we reached the famed temple of Tsandan-yu lha-khang, "the temple of sandal-wood and turquoise." It was thus called, it is said, because that its founder, King Strong-btsan gambo, only used in building it sandal-wood, and that the blue tiles which covered it were glazed with melted turquoises.† It is a rather Chinese-looking structure, but one of the handsomest I have seen in Tibet. Every month six monks come here from Tse-tang to hold service.

A very short distance to the west of this sanctuary is the Lha-bab-ri, or "the mountain of the descent (of the king or god)" (*lha*

* This is a common practice in the Nyingma sect. Explorer K. P. found at Thum Tsung (Lower Tsangpo valley) a monastery in which "both men and women are allowed to preach and live together." He found the same practice in the adjacent village of Bhal gonpa and Marpung. 'Report on Explor. from 1856 to 1886,' pp. 9 and 12.—(W. R.)

† These blue tiles are certainly of Chinese manufacture.—(W. R.)

having both meanings), where the first king of Tibet, Nyakri-btsanpo, was seen for the first time by Tibetans. There is a little plateau on this hill, called the "King's Plain," or Btsan-tang, where a temple has been built called the Btsan-tang lha-khang.*

Leaving this interesting spot behind, we rode on across the fields

BRIDGE AT BRI, NEAR YANGYANG.

which the peasants were ploughing and irrigating for the autumn crops, and came, after a few hours, to the sanctuary of Gadan namgyal-ling, where Tsongkhapa took his final vows of monkhood.

* For this legend see I. J. Schmidt, *op. cit.*, pp. 21 and 316. Also Emil Schlaginweit, 'Die Könige von Tibet,' p. 39 *et sqq.* Ugyen-gyatso visited this spot in 1883, and refers to this legend, *op. cit.*, p. 27.—(W. R.)

It is a fine building in the midst of a grove of trees, through which flows a brook.

From this point we retraced our steps to Tse-tang, which we reached the same day, recrossing the Yarlung chu by a long stone bridge near the monastery of Tse-chog-pa, where we saw a number of the monks bathing in the river.

The Yarlung valley appeared to me to be a most prosperous one, the people gentle and good-natured. The soil produces grain and fruit in greater abundance than any other part of Tibet; *chang*, butter, meat, oil, barley, wheat, and fuel were everywhere plentiful.

On November 10 we left Tse-tang, on the return journey to Tashilhunpo.

We forded the Yarlung river, in which there was but little water, nearly all of it having been drawn off by irrigation ditches higher up the valley, and passing to the villages of Yangta and Gyerpal, we came to the old sanctuary of Yarlung, called the Chyasa lha-khang, or "the resting-place-of-birds temple," for the vast flocks of birds * which pass here in their migrations make it a resting-place. It is situated on the banks of the Tsang-po, and is a finely built and well-kept edifice, with a courtyard and beautifully frescoed walls. The image of Sakya Buddha in the temple is said to be made with an alloy of gold, silver, copper, and iron.

Following the bank of the Tsang-po, through heavy sands or over low hills, we came towards evening to Chincho-ling, a secluded and desolate little hamlet, the houses surrounded by low walls of stone to keep off the drifting sands, and here we put up for the night.

The next morning there was a heavy fog—quite a rare phenomenon in these parts—when we started. We breakfasted at the little fisher village of Dong-sho,† and a mile or so beyond this entered a well-cultivated valley containing numerous villages and fine trees. Near the first village we came to stands the monastery of Chongdu-chog.‡ We reached, before evening, the famous Nying-ma lamasery of Mindol ling, in a dale opening on the west side of the valley; a little below it is a very large village, where we found, after some difficulty, accommodation in the house of a well-to-do man.

* Called *Bya* (pronounced *Chya*). It is called Cha Sa on the maps. A. K. speaks of it as "the temple of Chyasa (Cheuse) Lhakhang."—(W. R.)

† Tong-shoi on the maps. A. K. mentions, 1½ miles west of this point, the Gerpa Duga ferry.—(W. R.)

‡ Or Tsong du ta-tsang, according to Ugyen-gyatso.—(W. R.)

The next day we visited the temple, which is very beautiful, though the lamasery itself has never recovered from the pillage by the Jungars in the seventeenth century; and the Nyingma * Church being at present, moreover, persecuted by the dominant Gelugpa, no longer enjoys its former wealth. The neatness of the stonework and the finish of all the masonry about the temple were very remarkable, and the courtyard was regularly paved with stone slabs.

To the south of the monastery is the residence of the abbot, who is always selected from the Tertalingpa family, in which this office is hereditary.†

I left Mindol-ling on November 12, returned to the Tsang-po, and reached the village of Cho by dusk. Quite early the next morning we entered Khede-sho, where our route joined that we had taken when going to Samye.

We left Khede-sho by daylight the next morning, and continuing along the bank of the Tsang-po, crossed the long meadow of Ding-naga, which is covered with a fine, short, moss-like sod. Then passing through the villages of Kyishong, Panza, and Gyatu-ling, we came to where the Gonkhar mountains abut on the river. On their farther side is the town of Gongkhar, ‡ still surrounded by imposing, though ruined walls. Here, after much difficulty, we managed to obtain shelter in the house of a fisherman, who gave us leave to pass the night in a hovel half filled with yak hides. He and his wife were very kind to us, and looked, to the best of their ability, after our wants and those of our ponies.

We resumed our journey at 4 in the morning, and pushed on slowly and with considerable difficulty, for the path was over rocks, in places overhanging the roaring river. At daybreak we passed by the village of Shyati-ling, and shortly after the sun pierced the fog which had enveloped us. A low *col*, called Yab la, was next passed, and we joined the high-road between Lhasa and Shigatse, which I

* This lamasery shares with Dorje-tag, previously referred to, the honour of being the supreme one of this sect. Waddell, *op. cit.*, 277.—(W. R.)

† Ugyen-gyatso says that should the married member of the Tertaling family die without issue, "the throne" Lama, in spite of his vows, is expected to marry the widow, and raise up his own heirs to govern. A total failure of heirs is attended by widespread calamities—war, famine, and general disaster. 'Report of Explor. from 1856 to 1886,' p. 29.

‡ A. K. says there are 600 houses in Gong-kha Jong and 200 around the Gongkha Chorten (*i.e.* Gong-kar chosde).—(W. R.)

have previously described. We stopped for the night at Tamalung.

The next day (November 16) we reached Palti djong.

On the 18th, a mile or so to the west of Oma-tang, where we had passed the night, we fell in with the Chinese Amban and his train on their way to Lhasa. First came numerous parties on horseback, then about three hundred men on foot carrying all the paraphernalia common to Chinese processions, and finally the Amban's chair carried by Chinese and sixteen Tibetans, the latter only holding strings attached to the poles to show that they were assisting in the work. Two Chinese armed with whips kept the way clear.

On November 24 I found myself once more at Tashilhunpo, and immediately set to work to prepare for a trip to Sakya, from whence it was my intention to proceed directly to India. A day or so after my arrival I was delighted at the receipt of a passport from the new Shape of Shigatse, permitting me to proceed to India and return to Tibet. It had been obtained at the instance of my friend, the minister.

CHAPTER X.

VISIT TO SAKYA AND RETURN TO INDIA.

On November 30, 1882, I said farewell to Tashilhunpo, and, accompanied by Phurchung and Gopon, my recent guide to Samye, I started for Sakya, from which place I proposed returning to Darjiling by way of Khamba djong and the Kongra lamo pass.

The country was now bare, the brown rocks, the gravelly soil, and the distant snow-covered mountains, added additional bleakness to the scene. We reached the village of Nartang the same evening, and were kindly received by some old friends of Phurchung.

A little before daylight the next morning we set out, following the great high-road which leads to Upper Tibet, instead of taking the direct road which leads there by the Lang la, but which is infested by highwaymen.

At the little hamlet of Chagri * we stopped to make some tea, and had to pay three annas for a little water, as the people have to bring all they use from a very considerable distance.

The wind was blowing violently when we resumed our journey, and the dust was so thick that we had to stop at Ge-chung, a little village to the west of the Singma la.

At daybreak we set out again, and after crossing the Re chu (here called Shab chu), along whose banks are numerous hamlets, we came to Lhimpotse, near which is a large lamasery built on a rocky eminence.†

We stopped for the night at Samdong, just beyond which village is a long wooden bridge. We got accommodation in the house of a

* Chiakri on the maps.—(W. R.)

† Called Lingbo chen on the maps. Our author's narrative is not at all clear in this part. If, as he states, the Re chu (Shab chu) flows by Samdong, the maps are wrong, for they make this river to flow seven miles east of that village (San chong on the map). It is probable that the brook (?) which flows by Samdong is an affluent of the Shab chu, but the maps do not show any watercourse at this point.—(W. R.)

rich villager, the younger of the two husbands (and they not brothers) of the woman of the house. The other husband was the headman, or *Sa-yong*, and when he appeared, he obligingly sold us very good *chang*, mutton, onions, and other vegetables.

December 3.—After drinking a cup of steaming *chang* * we set out, and following the course of the Shab chu, came to where the Tsarong chu empties into it, when we took up the course of this stream and followed it to its source.

Several miles above the village of Sikya, where cultivation practically ceases, we came to the large Dokpa village of Jig-kyong, where we stopped for the night. In all the villages small-pox was raging, and where the people were free from it, they showed great apprehension about letting us in, lest we should introduce the dreaded disease among them.

The next day (December 4) we crossed the Shong la,† which, though quite high, was of easy ascent, and traversed the Tao valley. After taking lunch at the Kham-yol we came to the Aton la, from whose summit Sakya is visible, with all its red-walled buildings and gilded spires,‡ bearing in a north-westerly direction.

We secured lodgings in a house in the town, near the bridge over the Tom chu, and from the window of my room, which opened to the south, I had a gorgeous view of the town by which the river gently flows; also of the great temple, and beyond these, of the snow-covered peaks of Tinki (Tingri) and Pherrug.

In the evening I strolled about the clean, though narrow streets, where the market people were still busy selling their wares.

Sakya is built on the eastern flank of Ponpoi ri, along whose base flows the Tom chu. Facing the town, but on the other side of the river, is the Lha-khang chenpo with its famous library and temple.

The appearance of Sakya is different from that of most Tibetan towns. The walls of almost all the public buildings, temples, and dwelling-houses are painted red with a clay obtained from the neighbouring hills. Black and blue stripes about nine inches broad cut the walls perpendicularly.§

* Usually Tibetans drink their *chang* cold. Heating it is the Chinese fashion.—(W. R.)

† Chong la on the maps.—(W. R.)

‡ I am unable to follow on the maps our author's route from the Chong la to Sakya. He appears to have taken a very roundabout way.—(W. R.)

§ This, our author has told us elsewhere, is a distinguishing sign of all Nyingma religious and lay buildings.—(W. R.)

The four Labrang * temples, built with Chinese roofs and gilded spires, are especially noticeable. They are called Labrang-shar (or "eastern"), Labrang-nub (or "western"), Labrang khung, and Khansar chenpo, and in their general arrangement they do not differ from the temples I had seen at Tashilhunpo and elsewhere.

WATERFALL BELOW PACHUNGRI, BETWEEN GERA-TANG AND METANG.

In the palmy days of the Sakya hierarchy there were four abbots under the hierarch who ruled these four Labrang. The rank was hereditary in their families, and all those abbots, the hierarch included, were allowed to marry. This system of hereditary hierarchy

* *Labrang* means literally "dwelling of a lama dignitary." *Phodrang* is a palace or residence of a secular officer.—(W. R.)

was known as *dun-gyu*. At the present time the abbots are Tantrik lamas from Khams. I was told that neither the lamas nor the nuns of Sakya are held by the people to be exceptionally virtuous, and, to tell the truth, the laity of Sakya has a similar unsavoury reputation in Tibet.

The Emperor Kublai made the hierarch Phagpa ruler of Tibet,* and it was the latter's deputy (or Panchen †), Kunga zangbo, who began building the Lha-khang chenpo of Sakya, which was completed by one of his successors in office, Anglen tashi. This latter proved himself an able and vigorous administrator, and annexed Tagpo to the Sakya principality. Zangpo-pal, the then reigning hierarch, sent him on a mission to the Emperor of China, Buyantu,‡ who granted to him and his heirs in perpetuity the Yamdo lake country. The Sakya Panchen have, down to the present time, been taken from this family. The last Sakya Panchen, Kunga nyingpo, died on June 20, 1882; his tomb, at the time of my visit to Sakya, was almost finished, and his wife was still wearing mourning.

It is told of the late Sakya Panchen that, some sixteen years ago, after the death of the two famous Dayan khanpo, the treasurer of the Gadan gomba of Lhasa, when his wicked spirit was causing various dire calamities to Tibet, every endeavour to expel it from the country proved abortive. So finally the Government of Lhasa, at the suggestion of the oracles, requested the Sakya Panchen to visit Lhasa to drive the fiend away. At the foot of Mount Potala he had lighted a great fire, and, by the potency of his charms, drove the evil spirit into a lay figure prepared for the occasion, whereupon it fell straightway into the fire. Then the Panchen drove his charmed *phurbu* §

* Phagpa (or Dro-gon Phagpa) is said to have been born A.D. 1233, and became ruler of Tibet in 1251. Csoma, 'Tib. grammar,' p. 186. The latter date is, however, inconsistent with facts, as Kublai only mounted the throne in 1260, and became actually seated on the throne of China in 1280, and it was he who made him *Kuo shih*, or "Preceptor of the realm." H. H. Howorth, 'History of the Mongols,' i. p. 506 *et sqq.*, makes no mention of Kublai raising Phagpa to be ruler of Tibet.

† Abbreviation of Ponbo chenpo, or "great officer." The Sakya monastery was founded in A.D. 1071, according to Csoma, *op. cit.*, p. 197. Phagpa was a nephew of the famous Sakya Pandita, the author of many standard works of Tibetan literature.

‡ Buyantu reigned from 1312 to 1320. Ssanang Ssetsen says that the lama Sakya Sribadra was head of the church under him. I. J. Schmidt, *op. cit.*, p. 121. The Saskya-pa sect was, prior to the rising of the present Gelugpa sect, the most powerful of the reformed schools of Tibetan Buddhism.—(W. R.)

§ A spike of iron or bronze with a triangular section. The top of it terminates in a *dorje*. It is used in exorcisms. Emil Schlaginweit, 'Buddhism in Tibet,' p. 257 *et sqq.*, and Waddell, *op. cit.*, pp. 341, 483, and 488.—(W. R.)

into the image, but while so doing the flames of the pyre surrounded him, and all thought he was dead; but lo! after an hour or so he came out of the flames dressed in rich satins, and with not even so much as a hair of his head scorched.

Panchen Jimed wang-gyal, or one of the other sons of the late Panchen, will succeed him as ruler of Sakya. One son is an incarnate lama and superior of the Tanag Donphug lamasery,* but he is obliged to reside continually at Sakya on account of a rule which prescribes that when the re-embodiment of a lama takes place in Sakya, the re-incarnation cannot return to the locality he occupied in his preceding existence. The names of the four other sons of the deceased Panchen will shortly be sent to Lhasa, and the Nachung oracle will decide who shall become the ruler of the principality.

These princely lamas wear long hair, ordinarily plaited in two queues hanging down their backs and tied at the ends with white cotton handkerchiefs. Over their ears they wear covers of gold studded with turquoises and emeralds, and almost reaching to their shoulders. To the lower part of these are appended earrings.†

In the Lhakhang chenpo (or great temple) are five seats of equal height, on which the princes take their places when conducting religious services; the one reserved to the hierarch remains vacant so long as the successor to the title has not been chosen.

Under the hierarch there is a Shape, or minister, who attends to all the temporal affairs of Sakya. The monks are divided into two orders, according to the locality of their birth; those from Tibet proper forming one set ruled by a Gekor, and having their cells near the great temple, and those from Khams (or Eastern Tibet), also with a Gekor over them, who live in the town.

As to the great library of Sakya, it is on shelves along the walls of the great hall of the Lhakhang chen-po. There are preserved here many volumes written in gold letters; the pages are six feet long by eighteen inches in breadth. On the margin of each page are illuminations, and the first four volumes have in them pictures of the thousand Buddhas. These books are bound with iron. They were prepared under orders of the Emperor Kublai, and presented to Phag-pa on his second visit to Peking.

* On this lamasery, see *supra*, p. 66.

† Apparently the earrings are attached to the ear-covers of gold, not to the ear itself.—(W. R.)

There is also preserved in this temple a conch shell with whorls turning from left to right, a present of Kublai to Phagpa. It is only blown by the lamas when the request is accompanied by a present of seven ounces of silver; but to blow it, or have it blown, is held to be an act of great merit.*

On December 5 I left Sakya, and passing by the Choskhor-lhunpo monastery, entered the broad Yalung valley, in which stands the big village of Lora and numerous scattered hamlets. We stopped at Lora to eat our breakfast, but so intense was the fear of the people of small-pox, of which there were several cases in the village, that they would have absolutely nothing to do with us, not even to sell us firewood.†

After crossing the Yalung river we ascended the Dong la, from whose summit we saw the Chomo kankar (Mt. Everest), and the endless ranges of mountains which jut out from it westward. At the Dong la the Arun and the Kosi have their sources.

The descent of the Dong la was very gradual, the country extremely bare, not a single tree was to be seen anywhere. We reached Chu-sho, at the foot of the pass, at about five o'clock, and it was only after much persuasion that we gained admittance to a poor hut occupied by an old woman and her son.

The next day we followed for a while the course of a little stream, called the Chu-shu, and then came upon a broad, barren plain, on either side of which rose bleak and lofty mountains.

Leaving the village of Map-ja, in which there are about one hundred houses, we breakfasted at Donkar, and then made our way towards the Shong-pa la, following up the course of the Shong chu. The ground in many places was riddled with holes made by a burrowing animal called *srimong*,‡ and our ponies had many tumbles by putting their feet in them.

* Called in Tibetan, *Ya chyil dung-kar;* and in Chinese, *Yu hsuan pai-lei.* Both nations consider such shells as treasures of inestimable value. There is one in China, kept at Fu chu by the Ti-tuh. See *Peking Gazette*, February 23, 1867, and one at Lhasa. 'The Land of the Lamas,' p. 110.—(W. R.)

† "In 1794 the Tale lama, under orders from the Emperor, erected special hospitals for small-pox patients, in which they were supplied with food and every necessary, and which were in care of a special officer. . . . The same plan has been adopted by the authorities of Tashilhunpo and Chamdo" (*Jour. Roy. Asiat. Soc., n.s.* xxiii. p. 235). I am not aware that these hospitals are kept up at the present day.—(W. R.)

‡ The marmot is called Chyi (phyi)-wa. *Mong* I am unable to explain; perhaps it is the same animal which our author calls elsewhere the *sremong* (*sri*), and which is

On descending from the Shong-pa la we found ourselves in the broad Chib-lung valley,* and towards six o'clock we reached the village of Dogang, and found shelter for the night in the hut of some poor people.

The following morning we passed through Tashigong and breakfasted at Gure, a village belonging to my friend the minister. Leaving

KHAMBA DJONGPON'S ENCAMPMENT ON A MORAINE BEYOND KANGCHAN JANG MOUNTAIN.

this place, we began the ascent of a high range which separated us from lake Tel-tung, or "Mule's Drink." † This pass is known as the Dobta Lachan la, and one commands from it a most gorgeous view of a wide expanse of country, the Nepalese and Sikkimese Himalayas,

smaller than a cat, with tawny hair. The skin, he adds, is much used in witchcraft. The skin is blown up after putting inside it a slip with the name of the person it is desired to injure on it. The victim dies of an inflated body within seven days.—(W. R.)

* The Chiblung tsangpo, the Upper Arun, flows through this valley.—(W. R.)

† On this lake, see *supra*, p. 211.

with lake Tel-tung and Dobta djong, belonging to the Sikkim Rajah, on a hillock beside the lake in the foreground.

We stopped for the night at Chorka, a part of Dobta, where a villager gave us the use of a yak-hair tent standing in his courtyard. We only remained here a short while, leaving before daylight, as we wanted to reach Khamba djong the same day. The cold was intense, and the violent wind which blew made it more piercing. Our way led along the margin of lake Tel-tung, now completely dried up and more resembling a broad pasture land than a lake. The country was alive with game; wild sheep, goats, and asses were specially numerous.

Leaving this broad plain, we entered the valley of the Che chu by a low *col* between the Dobta and Yaru la ranges. Crossing the river, we stopped for a while at Targye,* while Phurchung went on ahead to Khamba djong to secure lodgings for us.

At five o'clock we reached the village of Khamba, and were received most kindly by Phurchung's friend, Wang-gyal, who, together with his wife, did everything in their power to make us comfortable.

After tea I went with Phurchung, who had put on his best clothes for the occasion, to visit the Djongpon. The Djong stands on a hillock, the ascent of which is rather steep, and is made by flights of stone steps. The fort is a spacious two-storied building, and is supplied with water brought there through clay pipes from the mountains to the north, a piece of work of which the people are not a little proud.†

The Djongpon were reading religious books when I entered their presence, and the lama one asked me questions about myself and the object of my journey, all of which I managed to answer satisfactorily. I showed my passport, to which they put their seals, retaining a copy of the document. When I left they presented me with a dried sheep's carcass, ten pounds of rice, and a rug, and expressed the hope that they would see me again the following year.

On returning to our lodgings I hired two ponies and a yak-hair tent for our use as far as Gen-pang tang.

We left early in the morning, after saying farewell to our faithful guide Gopon, who left us here to return to his home at Gyantse, and

* At this point our author's route joined that which he had taken when coming into Tibet.—(W. R.) The Che chu is the Arun, see *supra*, p. 42.

† Certainly not of their own invention or manufacture.—(W. R.)

breakfasted at Geru. On the way we saw several flocks of wild sheep and some foxes. Leaving Geru, we ascended, one after the other, the foothills of the Kongra lamo pass, through a wild but beautiful country, till we finally reached the snow-covered summit, near which we camped on a bare rock. Thanks to the yak-hair tent and the good fire of argols which Phurchung kept burning, we did not suffer from the intense cold and piercing wind.

The following morning (December 10) we reached, at an early hour, Gen-gang, which forms the boundary between the territories of the Grand Lama and the Rajah of Sikkim, a vassal of the British Raj. From this point my way lay through Sikkim by a route followed by various European travellers, and concerning which I need say nothing here. I reached Darjiling and my home on December 27, after an absence of over a year.

CHAPTER XI.

SOCIAL DIVISIONS—MARRIAGE—FUNERALS—MEDICINE—FESTIVALS.

In Tibet there are three distinct classes among the people, lay and clerical, which are determined by birth and social position, and each of these has three sub-divisions.* They are as follows:—

First, or highest class, *Rab*:—

1.—*Rab-kyi rab.* The king, members of the royal family, and incarnate lamas who have appeared many times on earth.

2.—*Rab-kyi ding.* The Desi, or regent, ordinary incarnate lamas, ministers and councillors of state, learned lamas, or abbots, professors at important monasteries.

3.—*Rab-kyi tama.* Secretaries to the Government, Dahpon, Djongpon, and inferior lamas, or abbots.

Middle classes, *Ding*:—

1.—*Ding-kyi rab*, or "upper middle class," including families who have for generations possessed great wealth, landlords who do not claim descent from illustrious ministers or warriors; Dungkhor, old families and men who have personally contributed in a marked degree to the welfare of the country; and lastly, the Don-nyer.

2.—*Ding-kyi ding.* This class includes the Dung-yig, or clerks, stewards, chamberlains, head grooms, head cooks, and other petty officers.

3.—*Ding-kyi tama.* Soldiers and subjects. †

Lowest class, *Tama*:—

1.—*Tamai rab.* Grooms, menials engaged in domestic service, and other hired servants.

* I think these "classes" are more theoretical than real, and that these remarks are probably borrowed from some work, based on Indian notions. The idea of caste is un-Tibetan as it is un-Chinese. *Rab* (*rabs*) means "family, race, social class." *Rab-kyi rabs* means "upper superior class;" *Rab-kyi ding*, "middle superior class;" *Rab-kyi tama*, "lowest superior;" *Ding-kyi rab*, "superior middle class," etc., etc.—(W. R.)

† By "subjects" I fancy our author must mean serfs or tenants (*misser*).

2.—*Tamai ding.* Those who have no fixed homes, men who keep concubines, but no wives, loose women, professional beggars, vagabonds, and paupers.

3.—*Tamai tama.* The lowest of the low are butchers, scavengers, disposers of dead bodies, blacksmiths, and goldsmiths.

In Tibet there are no caste restrictions with regard to marriage as in India. The rich may bestow their daughters on the poor, the daughter of a poor man may become the bride of the proudest noble of the country. But the girls of the royal family and those of high rank are not generally bestowed on the low classes; but in the event of their not finding a suitable match, they are sent to convents. The daughters of commoners do, however, occasionally become the wives of nobles.

The nuptial ceremonies are alike for all classes, the only difference being in the amount of money expended in the festivities. In the first place, the friends of the bridegroom employ a go-between to make the first overtures to the parents or guardians of the girl. Should the latter entertain the proposal, the parents of the would-be bridegroom either take or send presents to them, consisting of *khatag* and wine (called *long chang*, "proposal wine"), and formally make an offer of marriage. The girl's parents make excuses, saying that she is neither handsome nor accomplished, and will be of no service to the suitor. The go-betweens thereupon more and more earnestly press their suit. After these conventional phrases have been exchanged, the girl's parents say, "If you are really in earnest, and believe that she will be of service to you, we shall consult with our friends and relatives, and let you know our decision."

A few days later their consent to the union is formally conveyed to the suitor's parents, when the latter, taking with them twenty or thirty gallons of wine, proceed to the home of the bride, where they entertain not only all her relatives, but also the servants and neighbours, and present each with a scarf. The purchase-money (*rin*) is then paid, which, for the middle classes is usually five or six *doche* (625 to 750 rupees), and about fifty gallons of wine. Another scarf is then presented to each of the elder members of the bride's family, and also to prominent persons among her friends and neighbours.

After an auspicious day has been fixed for the wedding, the parties make the arrangements necessary for the occasion. On the appointed day the bridegroom's parents depute some seven or eight

respectable men to go as their representatives to bring home the bride. They remain at her father's house three days, during which they are engaged in making negotiations and in assuring their hosts, by whom they are provided during this period with all necessaries, that their daughter will be happy in her new home. At the end of the three days the bride is told by her parents to go to the bridegroom's house. They give her a good milch-cow or yak, a pony, four or five oxen, two suits of summer and winter dress, a complete set of jewellery according to the custom of the country, a piece of stuffed carpet and a small dining-table, cups, plates, cooking vessels, and other articles for domestic use, fifty ounces of silver, and a female attendant. All those who have received scarves now come to present her in return with a scarf and a piece of money. The nearest relatives and friends of the parents, the chief of the country, and other people of position, present her with scarves, clothes, blankets, etc., and silver coins.

Presently about twenty of the bridegroom's friends arrive to conduct the bride to her new home. For the first half of the journey the arrangements are made and expenses defrayed by the bride's parents; for the second half by those of the bridegroom, and it is made on horseback, the bride riding in the middle of the party. Arriving at their destination, the bride is seated on a cushion placed on a raised stand by the side of her husband in the middle of the bridal party. At an auspicious hour a short religious service is performed by the village lama, and the parents or sponsors of the parties offer prayers for the happiness of the union.* The bridegroom's parents then beseech the gods to witness the ceremony of their son's marriage, and declare that henceforth the bride will be owned by the bridegroom and his brothers alone. For three days the festivities continue, during which time as much as fifty *chupan* of wine, three oxen, and three pigs are sometimes consumed. The notables among the bridegroom's friends arrive with presents of scarves, and are entertained by his father.

On the third day the bride exchanges the clothes and jewellery she wore on her arrival, for others supplied by the bridegroom. After a short prayer to the gods the pair are left together, for the first time, and on the following morning the bride begins to apply herself to her household duties. Her brothers and relatives who have accompanied her, return home at the expiration of seven days.

* Cf. *Jour. Roy. Asiat. Soc., n.s.* xxiii. pp. 228–230. See also Waddell, *op. cit.*, 553.

Some three months after the wedding her parents, accompanied

SEMARING AND ADJOINING SNOWY MOUNTAINS.

by the chief men among their friends and by servants, arrive with presents of food, and request that their daughter may pay them a

visit. After being entertained for ten or twelve days, they return home, and are followed some weeks later by the young couple, who are accompanied by a number of female servants bearing presents of scarves, provisions, wine, etc. They remain a month, and on their departure the bride receives from her father a new costume and jewellery, and the husband a complete suit of clothes and the inevitable scarf.

Among the very poor the proceedings are much simplified, the negotiations being conducted by the parents in person.

There is no fixed limit of marriageable age in Tibet. The average age, however, for both sexes, is from fifteen to twenty-five, and frequently the bride is older than the bridegroom.

When parties are desirous of dissolving the marriage bond, the reason for so doing must first be investigated. If the husband be found entirely blameless and willing to live with his wife, but she be resolved to divorce him, she is required to pay double the *rin*, or price paid for her, as a fine for the dissolution of the marriage contract, called *borche* and *den yo*, that is, "divorce fine" and "innocence fine." * In the absence of a marriage contract, the divorce fine fixed by law for the wife to pay amounts to eighteen gold *sho*, equal to 135 rupees; and for the husband three gold *srang*, equal to 180 rupees. If the husband's innocence be doubtful, but the wife's charges remain unproved, the wife is required to pay as divorce fine a complete suit of clothes, a pair of shoes, a bed-carpet, bed-rug, and a wrapper, and the husband must present to his wife a second scarf and a third article of any kind.

On the other hand, if a wife be found perfectly innocent, and willing to live with her husband, but the husband be resolved to divorce her for no fault of hers, he is required to pay to her twelve gold *sho*, equal to ninety rupees, as divorce fine, and also *yog la*, "service wage," amounting to six pounds of barley for every day and six for every night which she has spent with him from the day of marriage to the date of separation. The husband is also required to return the price of all the clothes and other gifts made to the wife by her friends since the time of their marriage. The divorced woman also takes away with her all jewellery given her by her relatives, but not that given

* The information contained in this section has been compiled, our author says, from "a legal work." I doubt if its rules are in practice. *Borche* appears to be *hbor-wa chye* (*hyed*), "to cast away, to abandon." *Den yo* is *bden*, "truth;" and perhaps *gyogs* (for *yo*), "covering of."—(W. R.)

to her by her husband. The wife cannot demand the "innocence fine." If there be children at the time of separation, the father takes the boys, and the mother the girls. If the husband be a man of property, the court may order him to give the divorced wife a certain share of his possessions for the maintenance of the girls. On the other hand, if the wife be possessed of property, she may be required to give something for the maintenance of her sons.

Again, when a marriage is contracted between a man of noble blood and a woman of humble rank, or *vice versâ*, with the definite understanding that they shall share each other's good and adverse fortune, their property in case of divorce is to be divided between them according to their faithfulness or guilt, and their amount of mutual presents at the time of union. In cases of divorce between parties who were united at their own wish for the enjoyment of pleasure or merriment, the court should, without regard to the nature of their guilt, divide their property equally between them.* In cases of marriage between slaves or serfs, the owner decides their separation or continued union. A man of this class is, for instance, married to a woman who, the owner thinks, might be of some service to him. When the woman is found useless, she is dismissed, being given one-sixth of her husband's belongings, and her place is supplied by a new wife chosen by the owner.

In Tibet members of the same family are forbidden by law to contract matrimonial alliances with their kindred within seven degrees. This rule is, however, nowadays disregarded by the people, who are known to make alliances with their kinsmen who are distant only three or four degrees of consanguinity. Among the Pobos and Khamba marriage is promiscuously contracted, the brother marrying his sister, the nephew his aunt.† Among the common Tibetans, so long as the parties do not claim a common father, there is no objection to the marriage; the uterine brother and sister may be united, and a man may marry his stepmother or aunts.

The custom of several brothers making one woman their common wife, to keep the ancestral property entire and undivided, is said to

* This would appear to refer to temporary marriages.—(W. R.)

† So far as the Khamba are concerned, I think our author is not correct in his statement. That it may have once been as he says is highly probable, but at present it is certainly not so; intercourse with the Chinese has, I believe, caused not only the people of Eastern Tibet, but of all Tibet to adopt to a great extent their ideas concerning marriages between near relations.—(W. R.)

have had its origin in Khams, where it is at this day extensively practised. The Tibetans of U and Tsang have borrowed it from their cousins of Khams, but it is not universal with them.* The wife is claimed by the younger brothers as their wife only so long as they continue to live with the eldest one. When they separate from their eldest brother, they cannot ask him to pay compensation for their share in the wife, and she remains the lawful wife of the eldest brother. It is not unusual for a father or uncle to live with his son's or nephew's wife, and even in high life a father makes himself a partner in the marital rights over his son's wife. †

The cessation of the pulse and the suspension of breathing are not considered tests of the extinction of vitality. The Tibetans consider that the spirit (*nam she*) usually lingers in the mortal frame for not less than three days, though the spirits of those who have attained to some stage of holiness quit the body immediately after the last breath has been drawn, for communion with the dwellers in Paradise, called Gadan or Tushita; but instances of such saintly personages are of very rare occurrence. It is consequently considered a very sinful action to move or dispose of the corpse immediately after death. Nowadays in Tibet and Mongolia the dead bodies of all classes of men are carefully kept within doors for three days, during which time their friends and relations attend on them and make prayers for their future well-being. On the morning of the fourth day the horoscope of the deceased, and that of the man who is selected to be the first to touch the corpse for removal, are consulted. A lama is employed to perform certain funeral ceremonies, with a view to cause the spirit of the deceased to pass out through a certain slit in the skull.‡ If this ceremony is omitted the soul will make its exit by some other passage and go to a state of damnation. The lama remains alone with the corpse, all the doors and windows being closed, and no one is allowed to enter until he declares by what passage the soul has fled. In return for this important service he receives a cow, yak, sheep, or goat, or a sum of money, according to the means of the deceased.

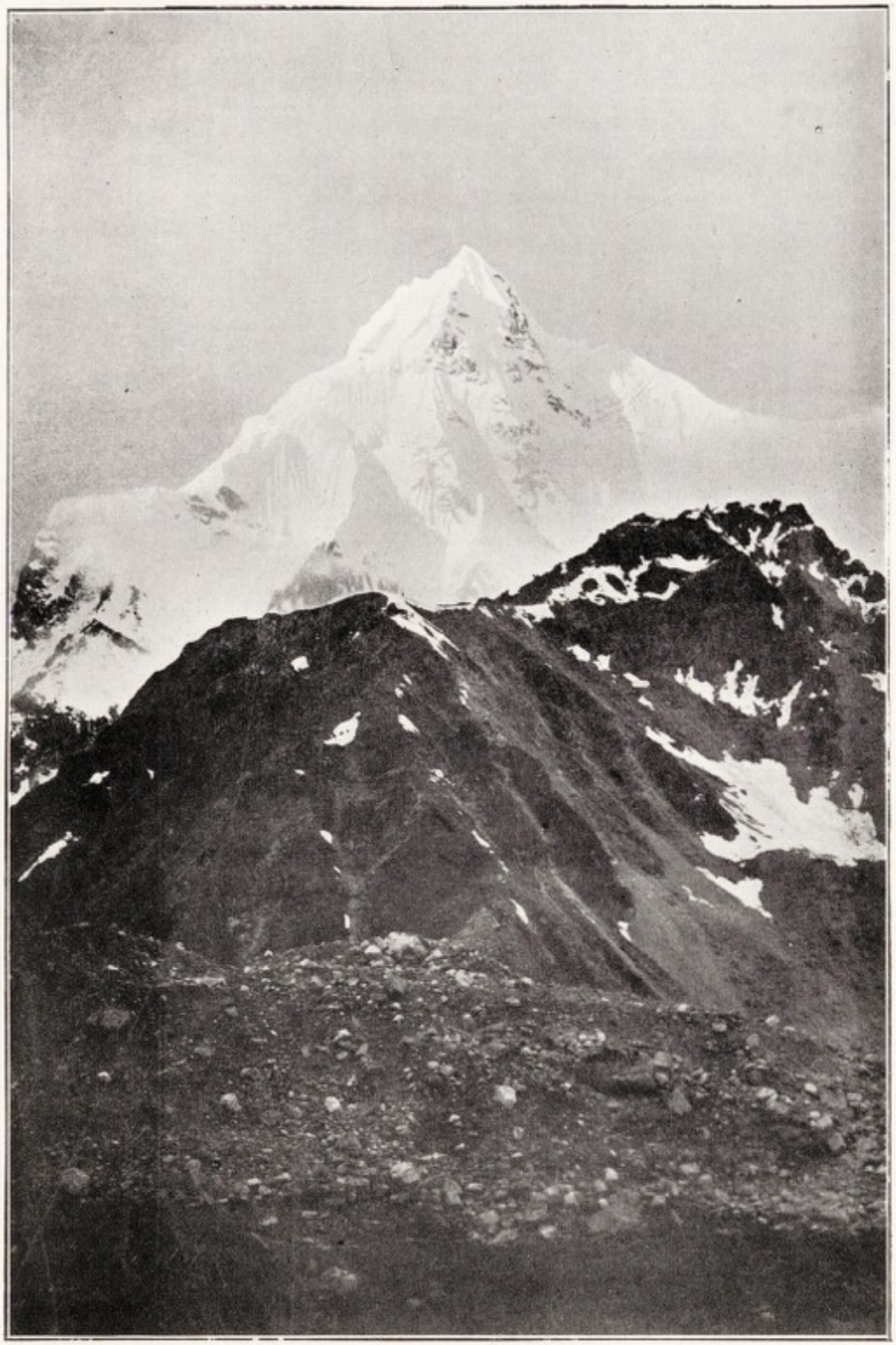
Before the dead body is removed from the house, an astrologer

* Neither is it in Khamdo. See my 'Land of the Lamas,' p. 211 *et sqq.*—(W. R.)

† I hardly imagine that our author intends to convey the idea that this is a custom of the Tibetans.—(W. R.)

‡ See Waddell, *op. cit.*, p. 88. He says the "soul-extracting lama" is called *hpobo*.

notes the dates of birth of the friends and relations present. If any among them were born under the same constellation and planet as



SINIOLCHUM OR D^{r}.

the dead person, they are said to incur the risk of being ridden by his ghost, and are consequently not allowed to attend the funeral. The astrologer also receives his reward in money or kind. Then the corpse, tightly wrapped in clothes, is placed on a stretcher facing the direction which has been declared auspicious by the astrologer, and is placed in a corner of the house. Five butter lamps are lighted near the head, and a screen is drawn round it, within which his usual food and drink, together with a lamp, are placed. Early on the morning of the day appointed for the disposal of the body, it is carried to the nearest cemetery. At the time of its removal the relations make profound salutations to it. Two men carrying wine or tea, together with a dishful of *tsamba*, follow the bier. The family priest, or lama, of the deceased throws a *khatag* on the litter and walks behind at a slow pace, holding a corner of another scarf tied to it. As he proceeds he mutters funeral *mantra*, turning a hand-drum (*damaru*) with his right hand, and with his left ringing a bell. It is inauspicious to place the litter on the ground before its arrival at the cemetery. If by accident this should happen, the body must be disposed of at that spot, instead of in the cemetery. In the neighbourhood of Lhasa there are two sacred cemeteries, Phabongka and Serashar. Those who dispose of dead bodies at the former pay two or three *tanka* for tea to the monks of Phabongka monastery; and at the latter they pay one *tanka* to the cemetery keeper, who also gets the bedding and clothes of corpses.

In every cemetery there is a large slab of stone, on which the corpse, stripped of its coverings, is placed face downwards. The officiating lama then crosses it with lines, and while repeating *mantras*, cuts it in pieces. The first pieces are flung towards the biggest and oldest vulture of the flock, called *tankar*, and the remainder to the rest. They are so tame that they come one by one at the call of the priest. Last of all the head of the corpse is crushed, and the bones pounded together are mixed with the brain and distributed among the vultures.* Then a new and unused earthen bowl, filled with fire of *argol* (dried cowdung), with some butter and barley flour burnt in it as incense, is presented to the departed by being placed in the quarter towards which he is supposed to have gone. The funeral attendants now wash their hands, and retiring to a short distance from the cemetery, breakfast, and at about midday return

* Cf. 'Land of the Lamas,' p. 287.—(W. R.)

home. During forty-nine days after the drawing of the last breath, food and drink are offered to the departed in his favourite dish; and incense, consisting of barley, butter, and juniper spines, is burnt.

During this period of *bardo*, as the interval between death and regeneration is called, the departed spirit is believed to wander, and in order to prevent its being subject to misery, on the forty-ninth day some of the clothes, shoes, head-dress, coins, etc., which belonged to the deceased, after being washed and sprinkled with saffron-water, are presented to some incarnate lama for his blessing. The last service is conducted by a Tantrik lama, with a view to expelling all the evil spirits and hungry ghosts which haunt the house of the departed.

On the seventh day after death, prayers are moreover offered for the deceased's well-being, and alms in coin, food, tea, gold, and silver are distributed among religious men. This is repeated on every consecutive seventh day until the forty-ninth day, when a grand feast is given to the congregation of lamas. Nowadays, however, the rich people of Lhasa generally distribute alms, at the rate of one *tanka* each to the monks of Sera, Dabung, and Gadan, dispensing with the other costly ceremonies. They also present the clothes belonging to the deceased to the professors and heads of those monasteries. Some bequeath the whole of their property to these monastic institutions or to Lamas of great repute.

The practice of making wills has been followed by the Tibetans from very remote times. Every man of property leaves a will bequeathing his movable property to his children or friends, and leaving instructions for the performance of his funeral obsequies and other pious works.

The cutting up and distributing of a corpse is a practical illustration of the Tibetan belief that charity is the highest of all the moral virtues. That man is said to be most virtuous whose funeral is attended by the largest number of vultures, while if his corpse attracts but a small company, the very dogs not deigning to touch his defiled remains, he is judged to have led a sinful life.

The dead bodies of pregnant and barren women, and also of lepers, are packed in leather bags and thrown into the waters of the great Tsang-po. A Tibetan proverb says, "She whose son dies after birth is white barren (*rab-cha karpo*); she whose daughter dies after birth is partly barren (*rab-cha tavo*); she who has borne no children

is black barren (*rab-cha nagpo*)." The corpses of such and of lepers are considered particularly unclean, and should not be kept within the limits of the country, but must either be thrown beyond nine hills and dales, or packed in horse's or ox's skins and thrown into the river.

The dead bodies of incarnate lamas are occasionally burnt, and their ashes and bones deposited in *chorten*. The remains of saintly personages, such as pretend to have emanated from Bodhisattvas and Buddhas, are preserved like the Egyptian mummies, being embalmed or salted and placed within gold, silver, or copper *chorten*, where they are seated in a meditative posture, like the conventional image of Buddha. These incarnate lamas, at the time of death, mention the time when and the place and the family where their souls will subsequently find re-embodiment, and also the name and race of the family, and instruct their friends to perform rites and ceremonies for their well-being after death.

On the demise of the Dalai and Tashi lamas, the work in all the public and private offices, all business, and market gatherings are suspended for seven days. For thirty days women are forbidden to put on their jewellery, and men or women may not wear new apparel. Lamas and monks must, on such occasions, mourn for ten days, during which they must not shave their heads, or wear their church head-dresses during services. All classes of people refrain from amusements and festivities, and from going into groves for pleasure, sports, or love-making. It is only in honour of the death of these two great hierarchs of Tibet that the whole country goes into mourning. The mourning for abbots of other monasteries and heads of families is confined to the friends and monks who are near to them. Rich and respectable men do not, within a year after the death of their parents, take part in marriage ceremonies and festivities; and do not undertake journeys to a distance.

Among the Sikkim Buddhists, dead bodies are burnt. On the fourth day after cremation, a lama performs the *tusol*, or washing ceremony, which consists in removing the relics, ashes, etc., and washing the place of burning with water. The relics are placed in an urn and deposited in a *chorten*. The ashes are thrown into a mountain stream, such as the Tista or Rungit.* The relics of

* The *tuisol*, or "cleansing ceremony" (*bkrus*, washed; *gsol*, to pray), is performed on numerous occasions and for various purposes. I suppose that by "relics," remains after cremation are here meant.—(W. R.)

lamas and important men, after being pulverized, are mixed with clay and cast in moulds into miniature *chorten*. These relic *chorten* are deposited in sacred places, such as monasteries, temples, caverns, etc. On the seventh day the funeral ceremony, called *Tenzung*, is performed. All relations and neighbours are invited to this funeral feast. At dusk all the evil spirits which are believed to have been invited to the departure of the deceased, are expelled by a Tantrik priest, assisted by the deafening yells of the guests.*

The physicians of High Asia have, I am told, discovered such remarkable properties of vegetable drugs, and of the flesh and bile of certain animals, and of some sorts of excrements in healing different kinds of sores, that if the statements of my informant be true, the surgeons of civilized countries would be struck with wonder at their marvellous performances. For this remarkable success, the Tibetans do not appear to be indebted to their Chinese or Indian neighbours.† Their medicines are mostly indigenous, and their discoveries in surgery have resulted from their own experience. They supply the greater number of physicians and surgeons to the Mongols and other neighbouring peoples.

The treatment of small-pox is very little understood by Tibetan doctors. Inoculation is, however, resorted to, and a new method of performing this operation has been discovered by the Northern Chinese physicians. It consists in selecting the best lymph from the light white pox pustules of a healthy child, which, mixed with camphor powder, is blown with a pipe into the nostril of the person to be inoculated.‡ Great care and experience are required in selecting the lymph, on which alone depends the safety of the patients. Chicken-pox occurs only in a mild form, and is generally left to take its course.

Hydrophobia is very prevalent in Tibet, Mongolia, and China, and its effects are considered to manifest themselves, according to the colour of the dog, at periods varying from seven days to eighteen months, and also according to the time of day at which the bite was received. The remedies are, however, sufficiently practical. As soon

* Waddell, *op. cit.*, 491, calls this sacrifice to the manes of the deceased *ting-shag*.

† Our author is not quite right here, as the Tibetans have borrowed the major part of their pharmacopœia from China and India. Most of their medical works are purely Chinese or Indian, and I do not believe they have much more, if even so much, knowledge of surgery as the Chinese, who are terribly ignorant themselves in this art. Tibetan medicines are in high favour among the Chinese and Mongols.—(W. R.)

‡ This is the usual Chinese method of inoculation.—(W. R.)

as possible tie a ligature four fingers above the wound; draw out the poison by means of the sucking apparatus, called *rnyabs-ras*, similar to the cupping-glasses of the Indians, and then bleed the wounded part. If the patient presents himself to the physician a day after having been bitten, the latter should only cauterize the wound, and then apply an ointment made of butter, turmeric, a poisonous bulb called *bon-nya*, and musk.

In Lower Kongbo, Pobo, Pemakyod, and other mountainous districts of Southern Tibet, and in Nepal, Sikkim, and Bhutan on this side of the Himalayas, goitre is the most prevalent disease. It owes its origin to the calcareous nature of the water drunk by the natives. Six varieties of goitre are recognized by Tibetan physicians, which are variously treated by cauterization, bleeding the jugular vein behind the ear, and also the swollen muscle of the goitre, and the administration of nostrums composed of the dried gullet of the yak or sheep, dried fish, different kinds of salts, *Piper longum* and pepper, and powdered conch-shell, burnt in a hermetically closed vessel.

Snake-bite is of rare occurrence in Higher Tibet, but in the lower valley of the great Tsang-po, great numbers of snakes are found, and also on the western frontier of China bordering Tibet.* Snake-bites are treated like hydrophobia, by tying a ligature above the part bitten and cupping. The wound is then washed with curd or milk, camel's milk being the most efficacious.† It is believed in High Asia that if a snake bite a camel, the snake dies immediately without injuring the camel. If there be no burning heat as a consequence of the bite, the wound should be cauterized. Internal remedies are also taken, consisting of cardamom, musk, pepper, and other native drugs. The Glak-los (wild people) of Pemakyod ‡ immediately cut off the bitten portion, or the bitten limb, if possible, after which they apply musk and bear's bile (gall ?) to the wound and bind it up. The Lalos eat snakes, of which, however, they reject the head and tail as injurious.

* Our author was misinformed. Snakes are very rare along the western border of China, venomous ones especially.—(W. R.)

† Camel's milk must be as great a rarity in most parts of Tibet as is elephant's milk, another remedy much prized in that country.—(W. R.)

‡ Probably the same as the Lo Tawa, or "stripped Lhopas," mentioned by lama Serap-gyatso, 'Report on Explor. from 1856 to 1888,' p. 7. This explorer distinguishes three classes of Lhopas—Lho karpo, or "white Lhopas," who are somewhat civilized; Lho nagpo, or "black Lhopas," who are a little less civilized; and the Lho tawa (*kra-pa*), or uncivilized, literally "mottled" Lhopas. Cf. also, *op. cit.*, pp. 16, 17, and Nain Singh's remarks in *Jour. Roy. Geog. Soc.*, vol. xlvii. p. 120.

During the months of January and February, when the great *mon-lam* (or prayer-meeting) fair takes place at Lhasa, the city is occasionally visited by a highly infectious disease which causes great havoc among the people when the crowd is great. When the disease is not properly treated the patient generally dies before the tenth day, but those cases which have passed the thirteenth day are considered hopeful. Tibetan physicians, by watching this disease in its different phases, have achieved remarkable success in treating it with their indigenous drugs.

In Lhasa, Shigatse, and other towns and monasteries of Tibet, the principal disease from which people suffer and die is paralysis.* Five different kinds of this disease are recognized by Tibetan physicians, who also profess to have observed that the first symptoms generally show themselves on the 4th, 8th, 11th, 15th, 18th, 22nd, 25th, or 29th day of the lunar month. Persons who have passed their sixtieth year seldom survive a paralytic stroke of any kind. All other cases in their milder forms are curable by proper and regular medical treatment.

Leprosy is prevalent in most of the countries of High Asia. It is variously called *glud-nad*, "the nag's (serpent's) disease," and *mje-nad*,† the "corroding malady," and is believed to originate from various causes, fanciful and real. By digging in pestilential soil where snakes live, turning up stones under which these reptiles lurk, felling poisonous trees, throwing tea, water, or cooked food and other refuse on the blazing hearth, men are said to excite the wrath of the *Nagas* and mischievous spirits of the upper and nether worlds, who delight in working the ruin of the human race. They spread this hateful malady by the exhalation of their breath, by their poisonous touch or malignant glance, or even by the power of their malignant wish. The "charmed banner" ‡ is a great preventive of these evils. The people of High Asia generally fix banners with printed charms thereon near to or on their houses, as they are believed to prevent the Nagas entering them. Leprosy is likewise assumed to be the

* Our author gives the name of this disease as *gzah-nad*. Jaeschke, 'Tib. engl. dict.,' translates this word by "apoplexy," adding that, in Western Tibet it seems to be used only for "epilepsy."—(W. R.)

† *Klu nad*, or *Klin gnod-nad*, meaning that the Nagas brings about the disease. *Mje nad* is *mdje nad*.—(W. R.)

‡ These charmed banners are the *lung-ta*, or "airy horses," of which mention is frequently made in this work.

consequence of the sins of former lives.* It also originates from disorders produced by irregularity and intemperance in food and habits, whereby the black and yellow fluids of the body are increased, and give rise to this distressing malady. Eighteen different kinds of leprosy are recognized. The chanting of charms and *mantras* of Vajrapani Buddha by the patient or the physician is resorted to, that wrathful deity being a mighty subduer of all malevolent demons and Nagas, and various native drugs are also administered in the form of pills.

Dropsy, though rare in High Asia, prevails in the southern and eastern districts in Tibet, and is caused by drinking much water after exercise, lying down in damp places, taking cold, or by light unsubstantial food, by which the digestive powers are deranged. Twelve varieties of this disease are recognized, which are divided into two main groups, characterized as "the hot" and "the cold fluid" respectively. Bone-ash is believed to be the best remedy; but other medicines, consisting of grapes, cinnamon, oxide of iron, pomegranate (rind ?), lime, and other ingredients, are also prescribed.†

Dyspepsia (*pad-kau*) is one of the commonest diseases in Tibet, and forty-three different varieties of this malady have been observed by native physicians.

Toothache is also a very general complaint of the people of Tibet, due to the extreme rigour of the climate and the coldness of the water. The inhabitants of the remote province of Chang-tang usually lose their teeth before reaching the age of thirty.

Among the games played by the Tibetans, there are some such as *mig-mang*, or "many eyes," resembling chess; *srid-pai khorlo*, or "the circle of life," ‡ and dice, which even the clergy are permitted to amuse themselves with. Others, as, for instance, wrestling, archery, polo, foot and pony races, are confined to the people; nor are the lamas allowed to amuse themselves with singing and dancing except at stated times, as, for example, during the New Year holidays.

* This remark applies equally well to all diseases in Buddhist estimation.

† Jaeschke, 'Tib. engl. dict.,' calls this disease *pags chu*, "skin water;" *snying chu*, "heart water;" *dmu chu*, "dropsy, especially in the chest and belly." On the medical knowledge of the Tibetans, see *Journ. Bengal Asiat. Soc.*, iv. pp. 1 *et sqq.*—(W. R.)

‡ In this game, which is an invention of one of the Panchen rinpoches, dice are thrown, by which the players get different positions in the various heavens or hells—(S. C. D.) Our author also mentions a game called *te-pi*, or *rocket*, but, unfortunately, does not give any idea of the game itself. See also 'Report U.S. National Museum,' 1893, p. 723.—(W. R.)

At midsummer the people and nobility dress tents, and for several days amuse themselves under them, picnicing, dancing, and singing.

In the 8th moon the *jon-gyu* festival takes place, lasting for seven or fourteen or even twenty-one days. On this occasion the lamas and people amuse themselves with sports, games, dancing, and feasting. This festival is observed in all northern Buddhist countries.*

Again, in the latter part of the 12th moon, there is a lama dance in every monastery, after which the evil spirits are exorcised.† Sometimes the 4th of the 6th and the 22nd of the 9th moons are observed as feast days; the latter as the anniversary of the Buddha's descent from the Tushita heaven.‡

In the summer, commencing with the full moon in July and lasting for a period of forty-five days, all lamas make a retreat in their monasteries, during which time they are not allowed to go without the lamasery walls, or take part in any amusement. This is known as the *yar-nas*.§

The birthdays of the Dalai and Tashi lamas are also kept as holidays, and on their reaching the age of three, twenty-five, forty-nine, sixty-one, seventy-three, or eighty-five, there are also great festivities.

When eclipses of the sun or moon occur, the Tibetans hold religious ceremonies similar to those of the Hindus.

Of all feasts, that of the New Year is probably the most popular. At Lhasa the State makes arrangements for the celebrations, beginning them about a month beforehand.

* Chinese authors say that, "during the 7th and 8th moons they (the Tibetans) put up tents along the river banks, and men and women bathe together in the river, it being symbolical of the purification ceremonies of the 13th of the 3rd month (in China)." *Jour. Roy. Asiat. Soc.*, No. xxiii., p. 213.—(W. R.)

† On the 29th day of the moon.—(W. R.)

‡ Our author mentions also the following festivals :—

15th of 1st	moon:	Buddha's birthday.
15th of 3rd	,,	First preaching of the Kalachakra tantra.
8th of 4th	,,	Buddha became a mendicant.
15th of 4th	,,	Buddha's nirvana.
5th of 5th	,,	Feast of god of medicine.
4th of 6th	,,	Buddha's first sermon.
10th of 7th	,,	Birth of Padma chyung-nas (Padma Sambhava).
15th of 7th	,,	The snowy mountains are worshipped.
25th of 10th	,,	Birth of Tsongkhapa.

Cf. Waddell, *op. cit.*, 502 *et sqq.*

§ Known in southern Buddhist countries as *varsha* or *Barsat*. *Yar* is *dbyar* (usually pronounced *chyar*), "summer;" and *nas* (*gnas*), "abode." I do not believe the practice is generally observed. Cf. Waddell, *op. cit.*, 224, and *supra*.—(W. R.)

The kitchen of the Grand Lama is in a large yellow building called the Phodang serpo, or Jag-ming khang (*ljags-ming khang*), situated to the east of the palace. The cooking-stoves are ornamented with gold, silver, and precious stones, estimated to be worth Rs. 20,000, and all the cooking utensils are of solid gold. All the butter and milk used here is obtained from the herd of five hundred *jomos* (half-breed yaks) belonging to the Dalai lama, which herd the people salute as it passes, taking off their hats or kotowing to the animals. Twenty Tse-dung (lama officials) herd these cattle, milk them, and churn the butter.

Here, when New Year is approaching, five lamas prepare cakes and dainties for the Grand Lama, their mouths covered with eight thicknesses of silk, so that the food may not be polluted by their breath. In the village at the foot of Potala, called the Shedo khang, two or three hundred men make cakes and biscuits for the officials, lamas, and people; and every one, whether rich or poor, has some prepared for the festival.

On the 15th of the 12th moon two hundred workmen begin white-washing the walls of Potala, which work occupies them for three days; and then, but only then, people are at liberty to have the walls of their houses whitened, and there is no one so poor that he does not at this season renovate the exterior of his dwelling.

On the 18th all public offices are closed for fifty days. Booths are erected to supply the crowds which assemble for the *mon-lam chenpo*, or "grand prayer-meeting," which, beginning on New Year's day, lasts for a month, and many of the officials visit Tse-dung linga, a beautiful park to the south of the city, where there is a Chinese restaurant and singing and dancing girls, called Tung-shema, or "drinking ladies."

On the 22nd in all lamaseries and in many houses of the people *torma* offerings are made, to be offered the following day to the household gods. Then the people bathe and get themselves ready to make visits of congratulations, which they begin doing on the 27th. On the 29th each householder has a general house cleaning, and the dust and dirt is thrown in a cross-road, and thus all impending misfortunes are got rid of with the rubbish.

Early on the morning of the 29th large and gorgeously decorated tents are erected in the great courtyard of Potala and other temples, in each of which three or four hundred people can be seated. In the

centre of each tent are *estrades* of carved and gilt sandal-wood (?), on which the abbots, head lamas, and guests of distinction take their seats, while on lower seats are the other guests. A number of lamas, with little tables of sandal-wood in front of them, on which different instruments of music, and implements used in church ceremonies, such as *dorje*, bells, *damaru*, etc., are placed, occupy another portion of each tent. When the preliminary service is over the grand "black hat" dance, of which I have previously made mention, begins.*

The dancers are eighty in number, and their gowns are made of white, red, and green satin. Each one holds in his left hand a wooden skull, and in his right a short club, from which hang five silk scarfs of different colours. They prance about, wildly waving their arms, for half an hour or so, when suddenly there is heard wild shrieking, and a second set of dancers, or masks called *Kambab*, come in. They are dressed to represent the various gods, most of them extraordinarily hideous to look at. These continue the wild dance to the music of cymbals, drums, and flutes for a couple of hours.

When the Kambab have stopped, four skeleton-like figures appear: they are the *Durdag*, or "lords of cemeteries," and they dance in their turn. These are followed by sixteen figures representing Indian *atsaras*, who, by their dress and contortions, excite wild mirth among the people. A number of dancers wearing stag heads then appear, and finally the "black hat" dancers come out once more, each with a cymbal or a drum in his hand, and the dance comes to an end.

At the termination of the dance the lamas who performed the religious service earlier in the day form in a procession and proceed to throw away the *torma* offering.

Five hundred soldiers and twenty-four flag-bearers accompany the procession. Three lamas carry on an iron tripod the *tsamba torma*, which is of pyramidal shape, about ten feet high and painted red, with projecting edges to represent flames, and frequently surmounted by a skull moulded in *tsamba*. Three other lamas bear on a large iron tray supported by a tripod a skeleton also made of *tsamba*. The procession goes to about a mile from the temple to where a shed, or *hom khang*, of straw or brush has been made, in which the torma and the skeleton are placed and then set on fire.

* See p. 114. On the New Year festivities, see Waddell, *op. cit.*, 518

When the flames break forth the flag-bearers lower their flags and run back to the lamasery with all speed, to escape the devil's assaults, and the soldiers fire off their guns at the burning mass to prevent the evil spirits escaping from the fire in which they are now supposed to be roasting.*

On the thirtieth day of the moon, New Year's eve, all house decorations and furniture are renewed or cleaned, and offerings and oblations made in every domestic chapel. The walls, pillars, posts, lintels, etc., are washed with whey. A lotus, finger-marks or marks of animals' claws are painted on the wooden floors of the rooms, or a sheep's head is scorched, and its eyes, ears, and nose painted with the five colours mixed with butter: this is said to be a certain means of insuring good luck, and is believed to be a pre-Buddhist custom of the country.

In the evening the whole city is illuminated, and this is kept up for three successive nights.

New Year's day is called Gyalpo lo sar, or "the King's new year," and the Grand Lama holds a levee on this occasion. The Donnyer chenpo, or Grand Chamberlain, opens the ceremony by wishing the lama all happiness ("*tra-shi de leg phun-sum tsog*"), and presenting him some wine and *tsamba*. The Grand Lama replies, "*Tan-du de-wa tobpar shog*," and dipping his finger in the wine, sprinkles a little about as an oblation, and then tastes the *tsamba*. Then the great trumpets sound, and the Dalai lama takes his seat on the throne in the great hall, and all the ministers and church dignitaries take their places according to precedence. Tea is then served, followed by *toma*, a kind of red potato of Tibet, cooked in butter and sugared.† When they have finished eating, every one presents His Holiness with *khatag* about eighteen feet long, and he gives each one in return his blessing.

In the mean time "the good luck dance" (*tra-shi-gi gar*) is going on outside the hall, in which some twenty little boys, of eight years of age, take part, the lower officials, such as the Dungkhor, forming the audience.

In every house of any importance the master, his wife, and children

* I have witnessed a number of these *kurim*, or guilt-offering ceremonies, but none of such magnitude as the one held at Lhasa. See, for a picture of this procession at Lhasa, Georgi, 'Alph. Tibet,' p. 212.—(W. R.)

† Toma is *droma* (or *doma*), the root of the *potentilla anserina*, and called *chuoma* in Eastern and North-eastern Tibet. It is mealy, and tastes like a bean rather than a potato. It is about 1½ inches long.—(W. R.)

are offered the compliments of the season by all their relatives, dependents, and friends, who, in their turn, are treated with wine by them. When the New Year's wine has been drunk, the *misser* (serfs) sing some hymns or glees.

At the New Year the Tibetans watch out for omens for the forthcoming year, the best of which, if one is to start soon on a journey, is to see a young woman with a child in her arms. To see flags, banners, milking of cows, persons carrying vessels filled with water or any other liquid, or timber for house-building or firewood, is lucky, as is also the sight of a corpse on a bier. To meet well-dressed persons, to be greeted by friends, to hear a lucky name, are also held to be signs of good luck; but to see beggars, ragged persons, empty vessels, a person descending a hill, or carrying shoes in his hand, a saddled horse without a rider, to hear impolite or rough language, are portends of bad fortune.*

On New Year's day dancing beggars (or Dre-kar) make their appearance in the streets and houses. They wear masks, usually representing a black devil, with a shaggy, white beard, with cowries for eyebrows and encircling his face, and sometimes with a cowrie on either cheek. They dance and crack jokes to the delight of the guests assembled in each house for the New Year's breakfast.†

In the afternoon there is further feasting in most of the houses, and the guests, both male and female, frequently end the entertainment with a dance (*shabdo*); first, the women dance alone, then the men, and finally, both sexes together.‡

The New Year's festivities terminate on the third day at noon, when the monks of the great lamaseries all meet in the Kyil khording (or Jo khang) to hear the Grand Lama expound the faith. On each succeeding day, till the 24th of the moon, they hold the great prayer-meeting, or *monlam chenpo*.§

* All these omens of good and bad luck are of equal importance at any time of the year.—(W. R.)

† I have seen these mummers in North-eastern Tibet. See 'Land of the Lamas,' p. 246.—(W. R.)

‡ On the second day of the new year, all the inhabitants gather together to witness a feat performed by two men, each of whom in turn mounts on a wooden saddle and slides down a strong rope fastened from the fort walls to a post buried about nine feet in the ground. 'Report on the Explorations of A. K.,' p. 33. Cf. *Jour. Roy. Asiat. Soc., n.s.*, xxiii. p. 209, and 'Report on lama U. G.'s Exploration,' p. 32, where we learn that on the second day of the New Year the Nachung chos-gyong prophesies the events of the year beginning. See also Huc, 'Souvenirs d'un voyage,' ii. 375 *et sqq.*

§ The *monlam chenpo* was instituted by Tsongkhapa in 1407. Csoma, 'Tib. gram.,' 187.

In the afternoon of the third, the Tsog-chen Shalnyo of Dabung assumes the government of Lhasa for the next month and a half, previously informing the police magistrates of the fact, and henceforth all authority, even that of the Kalon, as far as the city is concerned, is vested in him alone.*

* Cf. lama Ugyen-gyatso's account of the Shalnyo's rule in 'Report on explor. from 1856 to 1888,' p. 32. Also A. K., *op. cit.*, p. 33; and Huc, *op. cit.*, ii. 380. He calls this rule of the Shalnyo, the "Lha-ssa Morou," but he says it only lasts six days; but all other authorities agree in saying that the rule of the city is turned over to the Dabung lama for a month.—(W. R.)

INDEX.

ABSOLUTION to deceased official, 106.
Acharya Ami, his *Sarasvat Vyakarana*, 112.
Ailurus ochraceus in Sikkim, 2.
Allowance, for officials travelling, 51, 52; to monks, 79.
Almanac, preparation of, 113.
Altan Khan, first uses the name Dalai lama, 172.
Altars in front of houses in Lhasa, 148.
Amban, the senior and junior, 48; trouble of junior with Tibetan authorities, 48, 50-52; inspections by, 50; expenses for, 51; in procession, 61; goes to Lhasa, 63; his power in Tibet, 178; exactions of, 179; his salary, 180; disliked by Tibetans, 181; author meets him on road, 236.
Amchi, or physician, 41, 55; at Samding gomba, 131; lhamo dancers, 217.
Amdo, province of, 64, 156, 196.
Amolonkha, a sacred rock, 152.
Ani, or nun, 25, 29; meaning concubine, 48.
Animals, not allowed to be killed, 43, 76, 83.
Antelope, in Sikkim, 2.
Apricots, 7; dried, 139.
Aprons of women, 157.
Archery, 202, 260.
Arms, of soldiers, 180.
Army, force of, 180; how recruited, 180.
Arun valley, inhabitants of, 3; river, 38, 39, 42; source of river, 242; upper course, 243. *See* Che-chu.
Aspergill, used in religious ceremonies, 137.
Asses, wild, 42, 244.
Astrologer making almanac, 113; at funerals, 252, 253.
Atisha, died at Netang, 145; at Samye, 222.
Aton la, 238.

BACHELOR of theology, 91.
Bad luck, signs of, 265.
Balpo, or Nepalese, 68.
Bangle worn by women, reason for, 157.
Bangye-shag, residence of Phala, 85; 149, 150, 161.
Banquet, to Tibetan general, 81, 82.
Barat, feast thus called, 59.
Bardo, period between death and regeneration, 140, 255.
Bardon, a district of Khams, 197.
Barley, near Lhasa, 145.
Bathing, house, 102; after summer retirement, 214.
Bears, 2, 14.
Beehives, 15.
Beggars, at Shigatse, 47; alms distributed to, 64, 68, 106; at Lhasa, 156; dancing, 265.
Behor, temple of, 224.
Bellows, 30.
Belung, hamlet of, 74.
Bhutan. See Dugpa.
Birthplace of Tibetans, 229.
Black Court of Lhasa, 174.
Black-water mysteries of Bonbo, 206.
Blessing, 57, 95, 109.
Boats, of skin, 140, 143.
Bogto la, 16, 18.
Bonbo sect, 205; their deities, 205; high priest, 206; mysteries, 206; lamas, 207, 208; moral rules governing them, 208; tenets of their faith, 215.

Books, at Gyantse, 88, 90, 94; arsenical paper used for, 111; search for Sanskrit ones, 112; on lama dances, 118; written by Pan-chen lama, 120; owned by the Dorje Phagmo, 138; of Bonbo at Rigyal Sendar, 206; at Phuntso ling, 209; at Sakya, 210; copied by U. G. at Shendar, 215; at Samye, 222, 225; at Sakya, 241.
Bora, the Shape, 60, 61.
Bra-gyin-pa gonba. *See* Regyin-pai monastery.
Bribery of Chinese officials, 52.
Bridge, bamboo, 1; over the Rummam, 2; over the Kalai, 6; over Rigbi, 8, 14; over Yalung, 21; over Yamatari, 23; over Yangma, 29; at Tashi-rabka, 37; over Nyang chu, 84; of chains over Tsang-po, 143; over Ti chu, 145; over Tong chu, 204; over Tsang-po, 228.
Brigands, 72, 129.
Broadcloth, superior quality made at Pishi Mani Lhakhang, 73; of Tosnam-gyaling, 218.
Broth, Tibetan, 48, 72.
Btsan-tang, plateau of, 233; lha-khang, 233.
Buckwheat, 32, 144, 145.
Buffaloes, 7.
Bur-chu tsan, springs, 204.
Burnt offerings, 203.
Butchering, Tibetan usages, 41.

Cabbages, 83.
Calcutta, goods in Tibet, 68; goods in Gyantse, 85.
Camels, winter pasturage of Pan-chen lama's, 72.
Campbell, Dr., badly treated, 193.
Cangue, punishment of the, 186.
Cardamom, 1, 2, 6.
Catechu, used by women to smear faces, 157; origin of custom, 157.
Cavalry, how recruited, 180.
Cedar trees, 21.
Cemetery, at Shigatse; at Gyantse, 87; of Lhasa, 163.
Censor carrier of Dalai lama, 167.
Chabug la, 39.
Chagpori, Mount, 145, 195, 196.
Chagri, hamlet of, 237.
Chaini, village of, 29.
Chamdang bird, 20.
Chandra Gomi, his *Chandra Vyakarana* found, 112.
Chang, national drink of Tibet, 8; its preparation, 23; drinking, 24, 70, 112.
Chang tang, plain of North Tibet, 52, 53; pilgrims from, at Gyantse, 89; travellers from, 119; lamas from, 205, 207.
Chani, village of, 39.
Changachelling monastery, 7.
Charcoal, used as fuel in houses, 60.
Charity, 64, 255.
Chasag, or Chancellor, 173.
Che (or Chi) chu, the Arun river, 42, 244.
Cheese, dried, 48.
Cheri, slaughter-house of Lhasa, 146.
Chess, game of, 260.
Chethang. *See* Tse-tang.
Chiakri. *See* Chagri.
Chiblung, village of, 210; valley, 243.
Chim phug, 222, 223.
Chincho-ling, hamlet of, 234.
Chinese, at Shigatse, 48; harsh treatment of Tibetans, 51; aid Tibetans against Sikhs, 53; arrogance of, at Shigatse, 55, 63; in procession, 60; cemetery at Shigatse, 65; in Gyantse, 85, 86; cemetery at Gyantse, 87; in Lhasa, 148, 150; political relations with Tibet, 178, 192, 193, 194; Chinese at Samye, 222; at Tse-tang, 230.
Chitishio Jong. *See* Kidesher.
Cho, village of, 235.
Choigyal rabtan, ruler of Nyang, 87; books about him, 88; his statue, 89.
Choi-khor-tse. *See* Chong-khor monastery.
Choilung monastery, 87.
Cho-kanchanjinga, 21, 23.
Choma, an edible root, 125.
Chomo Kankar mountain, 20, 242.
Chongdu-chog lamasery, 234.
Chong-khor monastery, 217.
Chong la. *See* Shong la.
Chonjom, on the Ringbi, 14.
Chopsticks, used by Tibetans, 82.
Chorka, part of Dobta djong, 244.
Chorten, 3, 7, 30, 32; at Tashilhunpo, 45; at Gyantse, 88; great ones in Tibet, 9; at Potala, 168; of Bonbo, 206; at Samye, 222; at Jong, 227; made of human ashes, 257.
Chorten-gang, 3.
Chorten Nyima river, 40.

Chosthor-gyal phodang. *See* Phodang djong.
Chos-gya, in Kong po, 161.
Choskhor-lhunpo monastery, 242.
Chu lonkyok. *See* Chum-bab la.
Chum-bok la, 17, 18, 19.
Chumbi, 73; traders from, at Shigatse, 104.
Chumig-gang, hamlet of, 145.
Chumo-lha ri, 87.
Chung, a name of Limbus, 3.
Chung Rivoche, 143.
Chunjorma mountain, 21, 22.
Chu-sho, village of, 242.
Chu-shu, brook, 242.
Chu-shul djong, 144.
Chuta, village of, 43.
Chuta Chyangma, village of, 72.
Chyabtam lama, tells a rich man how to escape evil birth, 64.
Chyag-dso-pa, or Treasurer, 80, 94, 95.
Chyag-na dorje, the god, 153; miracle working image of, 153.
Chyag-tsal gang, place of prayer-meeting, 198, 199.
Chyamba, the future Buddha, 152.
Chyang chu, village of, 70, 102, 124, 125.
Chyang-chub gya-lam, 33.
Chyangjob, household officer of Panchen lama, 55.
Chyasa lha-khang, sanctuary, 234.
Chyi-khyab Khanpo, or Prime Minister, 173.
Chyi-lon Huteketu. *See* Minister.
Chying-sang, a name given the Kalon, 174.
Chyugpo mepang family, 39.
Chyugpu Shung, plateau of, 72.
Circumambulating, 78, 88; by Bonbo, 206, 211.
Club dance, 210.
Coin, debased, forced circulation of, 48; exchange of Indian coin for Tibetan, 49.
Complimentary address, 31, 32, 68, 264.
Conch shell, 242.
Contracts, how prepared, 190.
Corpse thrown into Lake Dumo, 139, 140; fed to vultures and dogs, 164; to pigs, 169; how disposed of by Bonbo, 208; of Panchen lama, 214; of children, how disposed of, 220; stone on which cut up, 232, 254; how treated on death, 252; releasing the spirit, 252; corpses of pregnant and barren women, 255; of lepers, 256; of incarnate lamas, 256; burning of corpses, 256; disposal of ashes, 257.
Cotton, 2.
Courier service, 177, 185.
Corvees, 182, 183, 184.
Courts, of Lhasa, 174.
Cranes, seen on Nyang chu, 72, 83, 125.
Cushions, 70.
Custom dues, 30, 31, 184.

DABA NGONPO, "blue clay," 28.
Dab-lung, village of, 140.
Dabung monastery, 146; by whom founded, 171; judicial power of Abbot, 177; revenues of, 182; annual rule of Dabung monks over Lhasa, 266.
Dacoity, penalty for, 186; ordeal for proving, 189.
Dahpon, or general, 51, 70, 80; of Gyantse, 86; where stationed, 180; social rank of, 246.
Dalai lama, collection of hymns by, 63; picture of the first receiving throne of Tibet, 79; ordination of, 104; enthronement of, 104; palace of father of, 147; mode of selecting, 159–161; discovery of latest incarnation, 161; audience of, 165; description of, 167; audience hall of fifth Dalai lama, 169; his position in Buddhist church, 170; incarnation of Shenrezig, 171; first one, 171; successors, 172; become sovereigns of Tibet, 172; origin of name, 172; majority at eighteen, 173; his throne at Samye, 222; his kitchen, 262; mode of preparing food for, 262; New Year's levee, 264.
Dam-ra, or "grove in a swamp," 149.
Dance by Tibetan girl, 108; by professionals, 217, 262, 265; on New Year's day, 263, 265. *See also* Lama.
Dao-targe, village of, 76.
Darchendo, the town of, 156. *See also* Ta-chien-lu.
Darchung djong, 75. *See also* Tuchung Jong.
Darding sergo tamo temple, 206.
Darjiling, 1; Tibetan pottery sold at, 66; railway a danger for Chinese trade, 193; return to, 245.
Daru, near Lhasa, 146.

Dates, dried, 101.
Dayan Khan, 172.
Dayan Khanpo, feared his spirit might exercise evil influence, 161; expelled by Sakya Panchen, 240, 241.
Death, Lord of, weighing men's acts, 93; his image, etc., in commemoration ceremony, 203; spirit after, 252; period before rebirth, 255.
Deba, or chief, 70.
Deba Shikha, 70, 102, 123, 124, 201.
Dechan phodang, of Tashilhunpo, 60.
Dechan phug, haunted cave, 13.
Dechan rolpa monastery, 21, 22.
Dechen, village of, 221.
"Deceiving death," ceremony of, 134; life, ceremony of, 134.
Deki rabdan, village of, 70.
Demalung. *See* Tamalung.
Densatil, monastery of, 226; its founder, 227.
Deodar tree, 23, 29.
Dephu, village of, 140.
Desi, or regent, 172, 246.
Devil, burnt in effigy, 118.
Dewan, ex, of Sikkim, his influence in Tibet, 192, 193.
Dhunkota valley, 20.
Dhuramdien, valley of, 3.
Diba Dongtse, castle of, 98.
Dice used for divination, 134; game of, 260.
Ding-naga, meadow of, 235.
Ding-pon, or lieutenant, 86.
Dipankara Buddha, 152; feast in his honour, 199.
Divination, modes used for selecting incarnate lamas, 159.
Divorce, 250, 251.
Djari tang, 29.
Djong, or prefectural town, 177; *dso*, or prefectural store-house, 177; *shi*, or prefectural lands, 177; accounts, 182.
Djim-khar, village of, 143.
Djong-nyer, or sub-prefect, 51, 176; their number, 182.
Djongpon, or prefect, 51; of Phagri, 73; appeals against to Lhasa, 174; their duties, 176, 177; their number, 176, 182; their salaries, 177, 182; social rank of, 246.
Do, village of, 226.
Doche, ingot of silver, equivalent terms for, 51, 183.
Do la, 29.
Dobta djong, 210, 244; Lachan la, 243; mountains, 244.
Dog, mad, 76; pariah, re-embodiment of sinful lamas, 119; watch-dogs of Yamdo famous, 131; kept for hunting by Panchen lama, 211.
Dogang, village of, 243.
Dogbane, 2.
Dog tsang, village of, 72.
Doi. *See* Panam gang.
Dokpas, Tibetan pastoral tribes, 52; dress of women, 67.
Dolma, the goddess, incarnate in Dorje phagmo, 138; turquoise image of in Ramoche, 165; in Machig labdon, 228.
Dolmai ri, mount behind Tashilhunpo, 118.
Dombu choskhor or monastery, 218.
Dong khang, traveller's bungalow, 13.
Dong la, 242.
Dong-sho, village of, 234.
Dongtse, town of, 45, 49; invitation to visit, 60, 68; leave for, 69; arrival at, 76; monastery of, 76; the Kham-tsan of at Shigatse, 119; second trip of S. C. D. to, 121; visits it third time, 125; fourth visit to, 196.
Donkar, village of, 146, 242.
Donnyer, a civil officer, 5¼; social *rank*, 246; chempo of Potala, 168.
Dora chu-tsan, hot springs, 211.
Doring, village of, 70.
Dorje jig-je, Lord of death, 126.
Dorje phagmo, incarnate female saint, 131; tells author's fortune, 132, 134; performs religious ceremonies for his recovery, 133, 134, 137; throws dice for divination, 134; power to restrain waters of lake, 136; tombs of predecessors, 136, 137; her residence, 138; description of present incarnation, 138; peculiar habits of, 138; incarnation of Dolma, 138; origin of incarnation, 139; saves monastery from invaders, 139.
Dorje-tag mountains, 35; ghat, 219; monastery, 220.
Dowa targya. *See* Dao-targe.
Dragon-head pillars of Jo Khang, 163.
Dress of lady of rank, 121, 127; of Dalai

lama, 167; of Kalon, 174; of Bonbo lamas, 207; of hostess at Samye, 221.
Dropsy in Tibet, its treatment, 260.
Drum beating, by Limbus, 4, 11.
Dsambling gyan, tomb of Dalai lama, 169.
Dsamling gyeshe, an historical work, 62; copied for author, 68.
Dsongo stage house, 36.
Ducks, wild on Nyang chu, 83.
Dugpa, sect of lamas, 129.
Dugpa, a name of Bhutan, origin of name, 129.
Dugpa-kunleg, saint of the red hat lamas, 92, 94.
Du khang, or congregation hall, 78, 79, 95.
Dukpa-nagpa, old Shaman town, 75.
Du la, 15, 16.
Dumo tso, or Devil's lake, 136.
Dung khor, civil officer, 75, 145; their number, how chosen, 175; their salaries, 176; social rank, 246.
Dung-yig, or clerk, 67; social rank, 246.
Dye plant, 213.
Dyspepsia, its varieties, 260.
Dzo, a weight, a tenth of a *srang*, 150.

EARRING, 24, 30, 82.
Earthquakes, destroy Samye, 225.
Eclipses, religious ceremonies when they occur, 261.
Eggs, not eaten by lamas, 98.
Elephant, sent by Rajah of Sikkim to Lhasa, 100; difficulty of road for, 144; shed at Lhasa, 169.
Eleusine coracana. *See* Murwa.
Embalmment, 214, 256.
Emperor of China, worship of, 60; ratifies appointment of regent, 173.
Epidemic, annual, at Lhasa, 259.
Estates, great ones of Tibet, 183.
Exorcising evil spirits, 101.

FABLE, the leopard and the ass, 198.
Feasts, 25th of 10th month, 56; of new moon, 64, 106; given general at Dongtse, 81; New Year's day, 107, 112, 120; pre-Buddhist feast, 108; on date of Buddha's death, 150; prayer-meeting in June, 198, 199; 15th of 8th moon, 199; July 19, great holiday, 201; harvest, 214; midsummer, 261; annual feasts, 261. *See also* New Year.
Feylep valley, 20.
Fines, in lieu of punishments, 187.
Fir trees, 218.
Fish, let loose as charity, 134; not eaten for a year by order of Talai lama, 141; used as manure, 220.
Fishing, 2, 6.
Flagpoles, 149, 151.
Floor, made of mosaic, 78.
Flutes, 57, 108.
Fog, 234.
Foreigners, policy of Tibet regarding, 181, 192.
Fortune telling, 132, 134; forbidden, 212.
Fossils, as relics in temple, 227.
Foxes, 39, 245.
Funeral, feast, 68, 257; rites of Bonbo, 208; of Panchen lama, 214; persons forbidden to be present at, 253, 254; ceremonies, 254, 255.

GADAN, monastery of, its revenues, 182.
Gadan Gyahu, the usurper, 75.
Gadan khangsar, palace of, 172.
Gadan namchoi, birthday of Tsongkhapa, 56.
Gadan namgyal-ling, sanctuary of, 233.
Games, 260.
Gampo, or elder, 52.
Gandan Chakhang in Gyantse, 84; chapel in, 85, 89; description of, 91.
Gang. *See* Panam-gang.
Gar, attacked by the Sikhs, 53.
Garden, at Jorgya, 73; near Dongtse, 99; party, 201.
Gar, General of King Srong-btsan, 168.
Garpon, or governor of fortress, 53.
Garrison of Gyantse, 86.
Gartok, 70.
Ge river, 38.
Ge-chung, village of, 237.
Gedun-dub, founder of Tashilhunpo, 114; juniper tree grown from his hair, 119; reincarnate in first Dalai lama, 171.
Gedun-gyatso, the Tale lama, 63; becomes head of Dabung monastery, 171; first Dalai lama, 171; monastery founded by, 226.
Geese, wild, on Nyang chu, 83.
Gelong, or priest, 59; ordination of, 120, 126.
Gelugpa Church, feasts of, 56; image of

its supreme Buddha, 89; forbid use of wine, 90.
Gen-gang, boundary of Sikkim, 245.
Geru, village of, 244.
Gingu la, 75.
Glak-los, wild people, 258.
Goat, wild, in Sikkim, 2; at Karma, 42; stuffed at Gyantse, 91; wild, near Yamdo tso, 140; near the tsomo Teltung, 244.
Gods, of land and mountains, 32.
Goitse, at Kangpa-chan, 23; in other parts of Tibet, 258; treatment of, 258.
Gojogs, a mendong at Gyantse, 87.
Gok, village of, 1.
Golab Sing, his war with Lhasa, 53.
Golden jar, used for selecting Dalai lama, 160.
Golog, their country, 196; their customs and religion, 197; kissing among them, 197.
Gondang-tangme, valley of, 231. *See* also Yarlung.
Gongkhar, djong, 218, 235; mountains, 235.
Gon-po, the god, 169.
Gonpoi ri, 229.
Good luck, sign of, 166; how insured for the year, 264; dance, 264; signs watched for on New Year's day, 265.
Greyhound, 99.
Guilt offering ceremony, 263, 264.
Guma shara, village of, 37, 38.
Gumo tang, 16.
Gungri gung-btsan, Prince, 168.
Gure, village of, 243.
Guring tribe of Limbus, 20.
Gushi Khan, the conqueror of Tibet, 79.
Gya, or Chinese, 52.
Gya-bum gang, square of, 155. *See also* Tomse gang.
Gyade country, 205.
Gyal-tsab, or regent, 172. *See also Desi.*
Gyampo, or elder, 176.
Gyantse djong, 63; general at, 80; town of, 80; author wishes to visit it, 81; description of, 84; market at, 85; ancient province of, 87; climate of, 88.
Gyapon, or captain, 86.
Gyarong, the district of, 76; lamas from, 205.
Gyatso-shar, village of, 70, 196, 200; beauty of, 201.
Gyatu-ling, village of, 235.
Gyerpal, village of, 234.
Gyunsar, village of, 23, 27.

Haboi ri of Samye, 221, 224.
Hailo, village of, 140.
Hall, of worship, 57; of departed saints, 214.
Hamdang Kham-tsan, 73.
Hares, 20, 39, 83, 144.
Harman, Captain, 26, 41.
Harvest, lucky day to begin it, 213.
Hat, 30, 40; of lamas, 69; worn in lama dances, 114; taking off, 31, 95, 107; felt, 203.
Headdresses, of Tibetan women, 38, 55, 67, 85, 221; origin of, 157; peculiar of the Dungkhor, 176; value of, 200.
Hermits, 228, 232.
Hi, range, vegetation on, 4; village of, 5, 7; view from pass (Hi la), 5.
Hooker, Dr., meets Phurchung, 22; attempt to enter Tibet, 192, 193.
Horba, met at Tos nam-gyaling, 218; bring salt to Samye, 226.
Horn, 57.
Horses, richly ornamented, 52; hoof revered, 114, 116.
Hoshang Dharma-tala, the, 115.
House, in Tashilhunpo, 45, 46; no chimney, 60; outside decoration, 69, 72; interior of, at Tashigang, 74; at Kye-pa Khangsar, 96; of lama at Samding, 132, 135; of noble at Lhasa, 150, 162; ceremonies for consecrating new home, 202, 203.
Hydrophobia, treatment of, 257.

Iago, village of, 43, 75.
Illumination, of Tashilhunpo, 56.
Images, holy, at Dongtse, 78; at Gyantse, 89, 90; metal out of which made, 100; painted on rocks, 142, 145; in Jo khang at Lhasa, 151, 152, 153, 157; in Potala, 168; at Ombu lha-khang, 230.
Impostor, claims discovery of sacred volumes, 94.
Incarnate lama, 56; college of, 57; received as novice, 57; female one, 131; (*see* Dorje phagmo), degraded for

adultery, 133; mode of selection of, 159, 160, 161.
Indian corn, 1, 7, 8, 24, 29.
Inoculation of small-pox, 257.
Inscription, relating to founding of Tashilhunpo, 114; gigantic, on rocks, 123; on stone in Tibetan and Chinese at Lhasa, 148, 151.
Interest on money, 190, 191.
Invocation to mountain deities, 5, 18.
Irrigation, 39; canals, 72, 73, 76.
Isa, village of, 76.

JAH-HU TANG, parade ground, 65.
Jail, horrors of Tibetan, 186.
Jaisang Teba, the Desi, 172.
Jang, village of, upper and lower, 144. *See also* Jong.
Je Kadub rinpoche, Bon high priest, 206.
Je la, 205.
Jelap la, value of road, 194.
Jerong, district of, 209.
Jetsun Tinlas-tsomo, founder of Samding monastery, 136.
Jig-kyong, camp of, 238.
Jong, village of, 226, 228; temple at, 227.
Jong Luguri, village of, 43. *See also* Luguri djong.
Jongri, 21; la, 15, 16.
Jorgya, village of, 72, 73.
Jo-vo, "the Lord," his image, 78; of Lhasa, 78, 151; — khang, 149, 150; *see also* Kilkhording; description of temple, 151, 152, 153, 154; second visit to, 157; statue in, 157; pillars of temple, 163; copy of, at Tandub, 230.
Jungars, attack Samding, 139; especially inimical to Nyingma sect, 141; miracle, 141, 142; sack Rigyal Sendar, 206; pillage Mindol-ling, 235.
Juniper, erroneously called "sandal-wood," 13; grown from hair of saint, 119; along Tib chu, 218.
Juonga, mountain, 21. *See also* Cho Kang-chan Juonga.
Justice, courts of, 174, 177, 178; administration of, 186.

KABILI river, 19, 21, 22.
Kabsopa, or chief clerk, 175.
Kabu la, 217.
Ka-che, or Kashmiri, 228.
Kadong, monastery of, 74.
Kadung, or secretary, 173; their number, 175.
Kahdong monastery, 76.
Kalai river, 6.
Kalliat river. *See* Kalai.
Kalon, or ministers of State, 173; their dress, 174; how chosen, 174.
Kal-zang zamba, 141.
Kamai phugpa, 28.
Kamab, a class of dancers, 263.
Kambachen. *See* Kangpa-chan.
Kampa lacha. *See* Khamba partshi.
Kang, a land measure, 86, 180, 182.
Kangchan mountain, 15; river, 23.
Kangla chen pass, 24, 29, 34, 35.
Kangla jang-ma peak, 18.
Kangla Nangmo la, 21.
Kangpa-chan, village of, 12, 23; cultivation at, 24; departure from, 27; monastery at, 31; valley, 22; early inhabitants of, 26; their fights with the Magar, 27; road to, 29.
Kangyur, reading of, 30; copy at Manding gomba, 31; at Dongtse, 126.
Kang zang-po mountain, 129.
Kargya, or purwana, 176; reserve store, 177.
Karma, a hundredth of an ounce, 184.
Karma Bagshi, a celebrated lama, 145.
Karmapa sect, old lamasery of, 75.
Karmoling, pasture lands of, 217.
Kashag, or ministers' council hall, 174.
Kashmir, envoy arrives at Tashilhunpo, 52; why sent, 53; war between Golab Sing and Tibet, 53; people of in Lhasa, 146, 150; lax Mohammedans, 146; man at Tse-tang, 228; people at Tse-tang, 230.
Katmandu, 68, 228.
Kedesho Jong. *See* Kideshor.
Kega tsal cemetery, 65.
Kemai tsal, grove of, 147.
Kena, village of, 72.
Kesar Lhakhang, temple of Kuan-ti (Kuan-ti miao of the Chinese), at Shigatse, 52.
Keshong, village of, 205.
Keta, near the Ringbi, 14.
Khama kang tung, 28.
Ke-utag village, 217.
Khal, a dry measure, 182.

Khamba, 24; their lawlessness, 47; met near Dongtse, 76; attack ex-Dewan of Sikkim, 87, 88; quarrel in Shigatse market, 107; lama, 156; estimate of character, 156.
Khamba chyang tang, 142.
Khamba jong, 40, 50, 56, 59, 65, 216; the Djongpon of, stops Phurchung on his way to India, 102; return of author to, 244; its waterworks, 244.
Khamba la, 142.
Khamba partshi, village of, 142.
Khamdo, province of, 56, 64; lamas from, 240.
Khamedo, village of, 217.
Kham-yol, 238.
Khando phug, 22.
Khang-nyer, or house-keeper, 149.
Khang-toi shikha, in Lhasa, 92.
Khara Tedong, village of, 70.
Khatag, or complimentary scarf, 32, 49, 55, 78, 83, 95, 125, 128, 184; red ones given by Dalai lama, 168.
Khamba barchi. *See* Khamba partshi and Kampa lacha.
Kharnang-phu chu, river, 129, 130.
Kharo la, 129.
Khede-sho, town of, 218, 235.
Khon family, 210.
Khraldupa, or tax-collector, 177, 184.
Khunpodo village, 217.
Khyab-gong, a lama title, 132.
Khyungar, village of, 228.
Kiki-naga, residence of Panchen's mother, 120.
Kiku-tamsa, a storehouse, 119; pictures hung up on it, 119, 199.
Kinkab, or brocaded silk, 60, 127.
Kingfisher, or Nyang chu, 84.
Ki phug, 33.
Kirata tribes, 3, 26.
Kirong, district of, 52.
Kissing among the Golog, 197.
Kitchen of Dalai lama, 262.
Kon-chog sum, used to translate "god," 77.
Konjo, the Princess, brings image of Buddha to Tibet, 151; other services rendered by her, 151; temple built by, 155; founds Ramoche, 165; her image at Potala, 168.
Kongpo, province of, 125, 161, 183; goitre prevalent in, 258; Gyamda, town of, 161.
Kongra lamo pass, 237, 245.
Korchagpa, or policeman, 148.
Kosi river, its source, 242.
Kotowing, 82, 95.
Kuchar khanpo, official of Dalai lama's household, 167.
Ku-dag, or gentleman, 165.
Kumba karna mountain, 15.
Kunduling, palace of regent, 147; monastery, 73.
Kunga nyingpo, hierarch of Sakya, 240.
Kunga zangbo, of Sakya, 240.
Kun-khyab ling, palace of Panchen lama, 57, 61, 211.
Kunyer, or keeper of holy images, 84, *et pas.*
Kurim, or guilt offering ceremony, 263, 264.
Kurma, village of, 42, 43, 211.
Kushi Khan, confers sovereignty of Central Tibet on Dalai lama, 172.
Kutuketu, a Mongol, 126.
Kyab-dzang chenpo. *See* Minister of Temporal Affairs.
Kye-na. *See* Kena.
Kye-pa Khangsar, minister's house at, 94, 95.
Kyi chu, the river of Lhasa, 144, 145; rock which keeps back its waters from Jo khang, 163.
Kyil khang Ta-tsan, 119.
Kyi-phug nunnery, 102.
Kyilkhor-ding temple, 149, 150; square in front of, 155; New Year's ceremonies at, 265. *See also* Jo-vo Khang.
Kyishong, village of, 235.
Kyoga, village of, 211.

Labrang, or episcopal palace, of Tashilhunpo, 62, 69; full name given, 120; at Sakya, 239.
Labrang dokpa (camp), 43, 211.
Lachan, frontier post, 40, 50, 59, 77.
Lachang pass, 84; shortest road to Sikkim, 84.
Lachmi pokri, lake, 16.
Ladak, pilgrims from, at Gyantse, 89.
La dug, mountain sickness, 15, 17.
Lamas, at Tashilhunpo, 48; music by, 57; noviciate of, 57; studies, 91; taking

vows, 113; early rivers, 113; dance, 114, 117, 118, 204, 210, 263; from Khams, as traders, 156; officials, 176; revenues of, 182.
Lamb skins, lining of clothing, 67.
Lampokri. *See* Tama chu lake.
Lamps, lit on New Year's eve, 120.
Lamteng valley, monkeys in, 2.
Langbu la, 38.
Langdarma, King, 153; destroys Samye, 225.
Lang la, 237.
Langma, village of, 129.
Lap-chyi peak, 18, 20.
Larche tree, 23, 29.
Lasa, village of, 209.
Lawsuits, how settled, 178.
Lebor, a measure of distance, 185.
Leeches in Sikkim, 5.
Leopards in Sikkim, 14, 18; snow leopards, 20; stuffed at Gyantse, 91.
Lepchas, their fishing, 2; mode of killing monkeys, 2; notices on, 5; priests, 6; marriage, 6; burials, 6; no religion, 7; paradise, 21.
Leprosy, its cause and treatment, 259, 260.
Letter writing, difficulty in Tibetan, 49.
Lha-bab ri, sanctuary of, 232.
Lhacham, or lady of rank, 121; stops at Nangartse, 130; her drawing-room, 161; arranges audience with Dalai lama for S. C. D., 165; to whom title given, 174.
Lhadong, village of, 210.
Lhagpa-tsering, the charity of, 64.
Lhakha, peak of, 38.
Lha khang, or temple, 31.
Lhalu, the Shape, 51, 66.
Lhamo sung chyong-ma, oracle of, 173, 211.
Lhari-zim phug, monastery, 88; books at, 88.
Lhartse djong, 209.
Lhasa, tribute sent it by Kashmir, 52; its war with Kashmir, 53; stops travel to and from India, 63; road to, best season to travel, 85; enforces strict rules as to foreign travel, 103; protests against Panchen taking vow of monkhood, 120; S. C. D. advised not to stay long at, 128; first view of, 145, 146; enters city, 147; description of streets, 148, 149, 150; filth in streets, 155; view of from Potala, 166; author leaves, 195.
Lhasre, a title, 126; to whom given, 174.
Lha-tsun, Buddhist saint, legend connected with, 21; lived at Manding gomba, 30, 31; founded Dongtse gomba, 78; books concerning, 88.
Lhena djong, 72.
Lhimpotse, village of, 237.
Lhokha country, 216.
Lholing, village of, 66.
Lhopas, Southerns, 21; various kinds of, 125; marriage customs of, 125; raid country round Lake Palti, 216.
Limbudu, country of the Limbu, 3, 4.
Limbus, their fishing, 2; tilling, 3; early habit at, 3; called Chung by Lepchas, 3; houses, 3; customs, 4; cultivation, 6; priests, 6; physicians, 7; woman, 9; marriages, 10; divination, 11; use *khatag*, 12; burial services, 12; a Limbu legend, 20.
Ling, the four great of Lhasa, 173; of Samye, 222.
Ling, village of, 217.
Lingbo chen. *See* Lhimpotse.
Lingcham, village of, 5, 7.
Lingkor, circumambulation, 87; of Lhasa, 169.
Lithographic press, brought to minister, 50, 59; fear it might spread small-pox, 105; first printing on, 107.
Lito phug, division of Gyantse, 87, 91.
Lobding, country place of minister, 70.
Logang ferry, 228.
Loh-bu Jong. *See* Ling.
Lomba hills, 221.
Lora, village of, 242.
Luguri djong, 43, 211. *See also* Jong Luguri.
Lu khang, or "snake house," of the Jo khang, 163; palladium of Tibet perserved in, 163.
Lumber for Lhasa, 221.
Lungkyong chu, 29.
Lungmo la, 14.
Lung ta, or "wind horse," 149; keeps off leprosy, 259.
Lupa gyaltsan, a friend of author's, 50, 104, 107.

Machen, or chief cook, 45.
Machig labdon, saint, 227, 228.
Magar tribe, 26.
Mahakala, a patron god, formerly Matrankaru, 139.
Maitreya, image of, at Gyantse, 90; at feast at Shigatse, 199; worship of, 200.
Mamo, the goddesses, or she-devils, 22; towers sacred to, 76; images of, 99.
Manda phug, 22; la, 22.
Manding monastery, 29, 30; its importance, 31.
Manidara, 3.
Mantra (charms) recited, 34, 41; author not proficient in, 59; continual repetition of, 90.
Mapham, lake, 53.
Map-ja, village of, 242.
Magpon, or general, 178.
Mang ja, or "general tea," 132, 133, 205.
Mani lhakhang, or prayer wheel temple, 73, 74, 76; of Tashilhunpo, 119.
Market of Shigatse, provisions brought, 69.
Markham, the province of, 76.
Marmots, 242.
Marriage ceremonies of Bonbo, 208; customs of Tibet, 247-250; forbidden degrees of consanguinity, 251; polyandric, 251, 252.
Marsh, near Lhasa, 146.
Mastiffs, chained before gate, 70; stuffed at Gyantse, 91.
Matrankaru, the demon, 138; destroyed by Tamdrin, 139. *See also* Mahakala.
Maudgalyayana, disciple of the Buddha, 152; his bill preserved at Lhasa, 152.
Mayaphug, 29.
Me agtsoms, King, orders the Tsang-po to be whipped, 221.
Meals, at Tashilhunpo, 46, 48, 49; supplied tailor, 62; with the Deba Shikha, 71, 72; of high officials, 82; with minister, 83, 98, 99; with Lupa gyaltsan, 107.
Medicine, given by S. C. D. to Tibetans, 41, 54, 98; bought at Darjiling, 42; given to Tibetan lady, 121; given him by the Dorje phagmo, 132, 133; by lamas, 134; used by Tibetans, 257.
Melung, village of, 217.
Mende, village of, 41.
Mendong, or stone piles, 3, 4, 15, 32, 64, 69, 87; of Bonbo, 206.
Mice, tame in chapel, 159.
Mikyod dorje, the god, 155.
Milarapa, saint, a legend concerning, 153, 154.
Militia, Tibetan, 40; commanded by Amban, 178; how recruited, 180.
Mindol-ling lamasery, 234, 235.
Minister, Prime, 173; Council of Ministers, 173; duties of, 173, 174.
Minister of Temporal Affairs of Tsang, 41, 51; letter to, 49; his country house at Lobding, 70; receives author at Dongtse, 76; his literary work, 78, 80; talk with author, 80; learns to write Roman characters, 81; learning English, 83; his mother visits him, 94; exorcises evil spirits, 101; wants to learn surveying, 101; promises to facilitate author's journey to Lhasa, 101; promises to send S. C. D. to Lhasa, 106; studies with author, 108; speaks Mongol, 109; interest in astronomy, 109; views on stars, 110; lodges S. C. D. in his residence, 110, 111; does not eat in the afternoon, 112; speaks of Panchen of S. C. D., 120; ordains priests, 120; S. C. D. takes leave of, 128; stricken with small-pox, 169, 196; writes in Roman character, 202.
Mint of Lhasa, 171.
Mipon, or headman, 176.
Mirkan la, 22.
Mirkan Pandita, a Mongol, 124.
Mishmis, the, 123.
Misser, peasantry or serfs, 51; how to be treated by officials, 177; property of, 182.
Missionaries, feared in Tibet, 193.
Mitogang road, 2.
Mi-wang, King, his birthplace, 75.
Miza lakelet, 32.
Mongol, in Tashilhunpo, 48; lama, failed at examination, 48; punishment for forgery, 56; pilgrims at Tashilhunpo, 109.
Monkeys in Sikkim, 2.
Monks, admission to the Kham tsan order, 57.
Mon lam, or prayer meeting, 198, 262, 265.
Month, fourth, the holiest, 133.

Mourning, signs of, 203; on death of Panchen lama, 214, 256; of abbots and others, 256.
Mountain sickness, see *la-dug;* tops, prayer and offering, 142.
Mudang phug, 22.
Mug, village of, 39.
Mu-li-ding-ki tso, image of new Dalai lama appears on its waters, 161.
Murder, punishment for, 187; ordered for proving, 189.
Murmis, at Shigatse with envoy of Kashmir, 52.
Murwa, bier, 3; fields of, 7.
Musk deer, 29; near Yamdo tso, 140.

NABSO LA, 141.
Nachung chos-kyong, oracle of, 146; description of temple, 146; consulted as to successor of Dalai lama, 160; of regent, 173; of Sakya Panchen, 241.
Nagshu chyema, 221.
Nagtsa-shar, or Black Court, 174.
Nag-wang lob-zang, the fifth Dalai lama, 169; first sovereign of Tibet, 172.
Nag-wang lo-zang tubdan gya-tso, the present Dalai lama, 161; description of, 167.
Naga, district of, 123.
Nagpa, or sorceress, 75, 109; — khang, 114, 118.
Nag-wang kun-bzang, a Dorje phagmo, 137.
Na-Pematang, paradise of the Lep-chas, 21.
Nairanjana, sand from the river, 152.
Nam, hamlet of, 144.
Nambu, village of, 43; la, 43.
Nambura, village of, 8, 10.
Namga stream, 21.
Namga-tsal, 13, 21.
Namgyal Ta-tsan, of Lhasa, 143, 168, 169.
Namring monastery, 78, 209.
Nangartse djong, 63, 129, 130, 140.
Nango ferry, 228; la, 22, 38, 29.
Nanin monastery, 87.
Nari ta-tsang, monastery of, 226.
Naring, village of, 211.
Nartang, town of, 70, 237.
Natog, village of, 72.
Ne-dong djong, 230.
Nembotong, village of, 75.
Nepal, war with Tibet, 36; friendly relations with Tibet, 181.
Nepalese, at Shigatse, 52; their trade with Tibet, 68; in Gyantse, 85; in Lhasa, 149, 150; in Samye, 222; at Tse-tang, 230.
Nesar, village of, 76.
Netang, village of, 144, 145, 196.
Nettle, giant, in Sikkim, 5, 7.
New moon ceremonies, 133.
New Year's Day, 107; festivities for, 112, 113, 260, 262-266.
Ngambu dung la. *See* Nambu la.
Niru chu, 87.
Noga slope, camp at, 17.
Noijinhamara temple, 224.
Noi-jin kang-zang mountains, 87, 129.
Noijin norpa zang-po mountain, 129.
Non chu, 208.
Norbu-gang, hamlet of, 145.
Norbu linga, palace of, 147.
Norgya Nangpa, 72.
Norpa khyung-djin, ruins of lamasery, 75, 123,
Num chu, its course, 70.
Nuns, 121; and monks living together, 232.
Nyagpa, or sorceress. *See* Nagpa.
Nya-kri btsan-po, King, 230, 232.
Nyang choi jung Nyimai odser, title of historical work, 94.
Nyang chu, 72, 73, 75; extent and fertility of, 83; source of, 87; an affluent of, 101; headwaters of, 129; bathing in, 214.
Nyema lung. *See* Melung.
Nyen. *See* Nango ferry.
Nyer-tam. *See* Netang.
Nyingma, sect of lama, 37; impostor of, claims discovery of sacred volumes, 94; nuns, wear long hair, 121; Palti djong one of its strongholds, 141; holiest shrine of, 232; colour of buildings, 238. *See also* Red-hat sect.

OATH, form of, in Tibet, 107.
Offerings to gods, 78, 134; at a haunted spot, 141; on tops of mountains, 142.
Om-dse, or master of ceremonies, 115, 205.
Om mani padme hum, cut on rocks, 38; when recited, 55.
Oma tang, plateau of, 129, 236.

Ombu, lha-khang, palace of, 230; village of, 230.
Omens, watched for on New Year's Day, 265.
Onions, wild, 7.
Oranges, 7; in Gyantse, 92.
Orchard, at Pishi mani lhakhang, 73.
Ordeals, 188–190.

PADDY fields, in Sikkim, 3.
Padma Sambhava, identified with the Limbu Srijanga, 4; image painted on temple, 76; his birthday, 210; his cave at Samye, 222; his prophecy concerning Samye, 224; driven away by Bonbo, 225; his cell, 232.
Painam. *See* Panam-gang.
Pa la, 210.
Palchen chuvori, monastery of, 143; by whom built, 143.
Paldan lhamo, image of at Lhasa, 154, 158; mice in her chapel, 159. *See also* Srimati devi.
Paljor rabtan, house in Lhasa, 149.
Palkhor choide, great temple of Gyantse, 81; visit to, 83; chorten of, 84; surveyed, 86; by whom founded, 88; description of, 90.
Palmistry, esteemed in Tibet, 97.
Palmoi-pal tang, desert of, 154.
Palri, 75. *See also* Pe-li.
Palri Kusho, the lama, 88.
Palti, lake, 130; djong, 141; origin of name, 141; town saved by miracle, 141, 142; passed through, 196, 236. *See also* Yamdo Yumtso.
Palti Shabdung, a saint who saved Palti djong, 141.
Panam-gang, village of, 72; doi, 74; district, of, 74; djong, 88.
Panchen lama, 56; attends an ordination, 57; his blessing, 57; description of, 57; receives the Amban, 62; punished for doubting gods, 89; visit to Lhasa, 104; his literary work, 118; Lhasa Government accuses him of heresy, 118; mode of selection of, 160; sovereignty of Ult-Tibet given him by Kushi Khan, 172; audience to Amban, 179; belief he will leave Tibet, 180; its consequence, 181; independent spirit of, 181; when absent from ceremonies how represented, 198; fatal illness of, 202; death of, 203; cause of, 203, 204; war of Bonbo stock, 207; incidents connected with death of 211, 212; his funeral, 214.
Pangang, village of, 75. *See also* Pong kong.
Pangbo la, 22.
Pangri, hamlet of, 76.
Pankor shornub, mountains of, 72.
Panza, village of, 235.
Paongtang, 13.
Parade ground, at Shigatse, 65.
Paralysis, prevalence of, 259.
Pargo kaling chorten, western gateway of Lhasa, 147, 151.
Parrot in Tashilhunpo, 112.
Passport, 62, 67, 77; severe rules enforced at Khamba djong, 102; given Ugyen-gyatso, 109, 110; duties of officials concerning, 177; from Golog chiefs, 197; given author, 236.
Patama, ferry on the Tsang-po, 66.
Patna, merchants of in Lhasa, 149.
Patsal, hamlet of, 74. *See also* Pishi.
Pay of troops, 86.
Pe li. *See* Palri.
Peach trees, 226.
Pearls, sale for at Shigatse, 104.
Pema-kyod, province of, 183; goitre prevalent in, 258.
Pema-yangtse, village of, 7.
Penagangdo, village of, 72. *See also* Penjang.
Penam jong. *See* Panam-gang.
Peru, nunnery of, 218.
Peri jang, 74. *See also* Penagangdo.
Perong shavea, hamlet of, 70.
Peurbu, or Nepalese, 68.
Phagmodu, dynasty, 159, 226; origin of name, 226; its old capital, 227; village of, 226; royal city of, 230.
Phagpa, the lama, 159, 240; books presented him, 241.
Phagpa lha, greatest noble of Tibet, 183.
Phagri djong, 63; road to and from Gyantse, 87; traders from at Shigatse, 104; pass, 109.
Phala, the Dahpon, 80; reception of at Dongtse, 81; his home in Lhasa, 85, 149, 150; a friend of the minister, 101; his wife ill, 120.

Phamu-bub. *See* Phagmodu.
Pheasants, 14, 16; snow, 20; green, 21, 29.
Phendi Khangsar, minister of Tsang, 41.
Pherug mountains, 34, 38, 238.
Phodang djong, 230.
Phodang marpo, palace of Potala, 166; architecture of, 169.
Phola, village of, 75.
Phrug, or serge, 30.
Phugpa karpo, 33, 34.
Phuntso Khangsar, residence of minister at Tashilhunpo, 47, 49, 107, 108, 211.
Phunsto ling monastery, 209.
Phurchung, 2, 10, 20; his brother-in-law, 22; his meeting with Sir Joseph Hooker, 22; native village of, 23; his uncle, 24; his faithfulness, 27; drunkenness, 30; gives a bond for S. C. D., 31; his duties at Tashilhunpo, 47; sent to Khamba djong, 60; returns to Tashilhunpo, 102; prepares to return to India with U. G., 110; starts on journey, 111; returns to Shigatse, 196; rejoins S. C. D., 216.
Phyling, or foreigner, 102.
Pictures hung up for bestowing blessings, 119.
Pigeons, 43, 224.
Pigs, wild, 7, 14; at Tale, 7; fed on corpses at Lhasa, 169; where raised, 183.
Pillars of Jo khang, 163.
Pills, magical, 30, 132, 138, 168, 202, 203.
Pishi, village of, 72.
Pishi mani lhakhang, 73, 125.
Plantain, wild, 8.
Ploughing, in Sikkim, 3; ceremonies at beginning of, 123.
Plum trees, 226.
Pobo, province of, 258; goitre prevalent there, 258.
Po phug, 33.
Podong-chogleg namgyal, author, 138.
Pogpon, or paymaster, 62; of Shigatse, 86.
Poison, for killing bears, 2; for fishing, 6; weed near Bogto la, 16; natives killed by, 27.
Pole, camp, 39.
Police, Tibetan, 40; Chinese at Shigatse, 48.
Polo, game of, 260.
Polyandry, 96; Tibetan views on, 162; husbands not related, 216, 238; origin of custom, 251, 252.
Pomda, town of, 156.
Pong kang. *See* Pangang.
Ponpoi ri, 238.
Poplars, near Shigatse, 73; at Aniung, 76; at Dongtse, 95, 99; near Lhasa, 144, 149; sprung from hair of Buddha, 151; along Tib chu, 218; at Taga-sho, 226.
Postal service, 177, 185; diet of couriers, 185.
Potala, mount, at Lhasa, 145, 146; visit to, 166; audience with Dalai lama at, 166–169; annual white-washing of, 262.
Potatoes, 23, 24, 26, 83, 98, 231.
Pottery, of Tanag, 66; manufacture of, in Tibet, 66; at Ring-la, 216.
Potentilla anserina, used as food, 264.
Prayer-wheels, 25; turned by water, 28; at Dongtse, 98; at Tashilhunpo, 119; at Potala, 166; at Shari, 217; meeting, 189, 262.
Presents, money and scarves usually used, 46, 49, 71; made guests on arrival, 74; to Chyag-dso-pa, 96; to minister of rugs, serge, etc., 100; to Dalai lama, etc., 104; of green barley, 143; to Dalai lama, 167; New Year, 264.
Prisoners, cruelly treated, 49, 51, 62, 186.
Procession, to worship Emperor of China, 60; on arrival of general at Dongtse, 80, 82; escorts minister out of Dongtse, 95; New Year's, 263.
Property, exempted from seizure, 191; disposal of at death, 255.
Propitiatory ceremonies of Lord of death, 124; of gods of life, 133, 134; of Tamdrin, 135, 137.
Pudding, blood, 26.
Pulo, or serge, 100.
Pungde, town of, 156. *See also* Pomda.
Punishment, of Tibetan officials, 51, 52, 54; for forgery, 56; for murdering lamas, 64; of work-people, 213.
Purang, on Nepal border, 53.
Purug. *See Phrug*.

Quoits, game of, 202.

RACHUNG, saint, a legend concerning, 153, 154; his cave, 231; monastery, 231; village of, 231.
Radeng, Hor Dokpa from, 226.
Ragasha, the Shape, 146.
Rag-tso ferry, 209.
Ralpachan, King, 151.
Ralung zamba, bridge over Nyang chu, 129; chong-doi, village of, 129; til monastery, 129.
Ramoche, temple of, 155; relics preserved at, 155, 156; services held at, 156; communicates with hell, 165; relics in, 165.
Rampa, the Shape, 101.
Rampa, a food plant, 125.
Rapa-chan, stream, 27.
Rape, how punished, 188.
Rape, raised at Chu-shul, 144.
Ratna talai Khan, 172.
Ratong river, 7, 16.
Re chu, 43, 237; district of, 65; road to, 75. *See also* Shab chu.
Red-hat sect of lamas, 31.
Regent, office elective, 173; how chosen, 172; duties of office, 173.
Regyinpai monastery, 43.
Religious services, at Gyantse, 90.
Restaurant, at Shigatse, 55.
Revenue of State, 181; how paid, 182; in cattle, 184.
Review of troops, 82, 178, 198.
Rhododendrons, 142.
Rice, at Ringbi, 8; at Chaini, 29; at Wallung, 38; given by Dalai lama at audience, 168.
Rigyal Shendar, monastery of, 205; description of, 205, 206; second visit of U. G. to, 213.
Rin-chen gang, traders from, at Shigatse, 105.
Rin-chen Khadoma, the goddess, amber image of, in Ramoche, 165.
Rinchen tenwa, quoted, 13.
Ringbi, river, 8, 14; village of, 7, 8.
Ring-la, hamlet of, 130, 216.
Rishi chorten, on Hi range, 4.
Rishi stream, 5.
Ritoi monastery, 87.
Ri-tong precipice, 75; view from, 75.
Ri-u, village of, 37.
Rivotag, river, 217; djong, 217.
Rogyaba, beggars, at Shigatse, 47; origin of name, 63; form a guild in Lhasa, 163; how recruited, 163; cut up dead bodies, 164; their chief, 164; their houses, 164, 169.
Rombuja lake, 217.
Rope, sliding down, at festival, 58, 59, 265.
Roses, wild, 142.
Rudok, attacked by the Sikhs, 53.
Rugs, made at Targye, 41, 211; at Phola, 75; at Gyantse, 100, 203, 213.
Rummam, the river, its source, 2.
Rungit, great, the river, 2, 6.
Rupon, or colonel, 86, 178.

SAFFRON plant, in pot at Tashilhunpo, 112.
Sakya, hierarchs of, their ancient domain, 87; translate work of Sri Dandi, 112; ordain the Panchen, 120; visit to, 204; roads to, 209; arrival of U. G. at, 209; description of, 209, 210; — Panchen, 210; first view of town, 238; description of town, 238, 239; hierarchs marry, 239; succession, 241; their dress, 241; government of principality, 241; treasures in temple, 242.
Sa-sung-pa, policeman, 148.
Sa-wang, title given the Kalon, 174.
Sa-wang Rampa, the Shape, 48; Phala, 149.
Sakyang, village of, 7.
Sal trees, 2.
Salaries of ministers, 174; of Djongpon, 177.
Salt, 8; trade at Yampung, 15.
Salutation, mode of, in part of Khams, 197.
Sam ding, monastery of, 130; arrival at, 131; description of, 135, 136, 137; origin of, 136; founder of, 136; saved from destruction by Dorje phagmo, 139.
Samdong, village of, 237.
Samdub phodang, 227.
Samye, monastery of, 215; S. C. D. starts to visit it, 216; first view of, 221; library of, 222; images at, 222; pictures on temple walls, 222; village of, 222; adjacent country, 223; sands rapidly engulfing it, 224; temples of, 224; history of, 224.
Sandalwood image, 169.

Sangri jong, 228.
Sangri khamar monastery, 227.
Sangye-gyatso, the Desi, 79, 169, 172.
Sanskrit, books found by S. C. D., 112.
Santa Rakshita, saint, 224; driven away by Bonbo, 225.
Sarsha, village of, 70.
Satu. *See Tsamba*.
Saving life, to acquire merit by, 134.
Sawe. *See* Samye.
Sa-yong, headman, 238.
Sayong kong, plateau, 28; hok, 28.
Science, interest in, in Tibet, 102.
Seal, great, by whom held, 173; attached on property after death, 211.
Sedan chairs, by whom used in Tibet, 61, 130, 174.
Semaron, village of, 70.
Semarum la, 19, 20.
Semu, village of, 144.
Sera, monastery of, 147; judicial power of abbot of, 177; revenue of, 182.
Seng-chen, or lama minister, 202.
Serge, 30; superior quality made at Pishi Mani lhakhang, 73; presented to minister, 100; of Tos nam-gyaling, 218.
Serkempa, or lay monk, 156.
Serpon, or collector of customs, 109.
Shab chu. *See* Ré chu.
Shabdung, or page, 79.
Shabshi, village of, 217.
Shalchepa, title given the Kalon, 174.
Shalu, monastery, 72; chu, 72.
Shamalung. *See* Tamalung.
Shandung chu, 217.
Shape, minister of State, 36, 48, 51; in procession, 61; also called Kalon; 174.
Shari, village of, 217.
Shar Khambu district, 18, 26; mountains of, 20, 35.
Shata, the Shape, 36, 173.
Shar-chyog Aniung, village of, 76.
Shartse college, 119; Khanpo of, finds the Dalai lama, 160, 161.
Sharui teng, a haunted spot, offering made at it, 141.
Sheep, wild, 16, 32, 37, 42, 244, 245; carcasses cooked whole, 42; wild, stuffed at Gyantse, 91; horns hung before temple, 151.
Shendar ding, village of, 205, 214.
Shenrab mivo, chief deity of the Bonbo, 205; his descendants, 206.
Shenrezig, the god, 76; incarnate in Tamdrin, 138, 139; famous statue of, in Lhasa, 152; statue at Potala, 168; incarnate in Dalai lama, 171; one of his favourite resorts, 229.
Shen-tang srung-lug, sect of Bonbo, 208.
Shen tsang family, 206, 207; — lug, sect of lamas, 208.
Sherab dongbu, cited, 177.
Shetag mountains, 231.
Shetama, maidservant, 96, 150.
Shetoi, village of, 129.
Shetot. *See* Shetoi.
Shigatse, town of, 43; market at, 47, 51, 52; people dishonest, 111; climate, 113; return of U. G. to, 211.
Shikya, village of, 238.
Shing donkar, village of, 146.
Shinyer, or foreman, 146.
Sho, tenth of an ounce, 184.
Shong la, 238.
Shong-mar-tse, village of, 210.
Shong chu, 242.
Shong-pa la, 242, 243.
Shugpa tang, 29.
Shulenpa, title given the Kalon, 174.
Shyati-ling, village of, 235.
Sikhs, at Shigatse with envoy of Kashmir, 52.
Sikkim, north-west boundary of, 2; Tibetan pottery sold in, 66; Rajah's sister, 206.
Sing-dong, waterfall in the Tsang-po, 125.
Singing songs, 108; birds, 221.
Singli mountains, 2, 5, 6, 20.
Singma la, 237.
Slate, wooden, used to learn to write on, 81.
Small-pox, fear of, 105, 110, 193; in Central Tibet, 126; at Nangartse, 130; ceremonies for recovery, 130; persons ill with, 143; prayers for recovery, 146; spread of, in Lhasa, 155, 170; near Sakya, 238; hospitals for, 242; treatment of, 257.
Snakes, at hot springs, 205; their bite rare, 258; treatment of, 258; eaten by Lalos, 258.
Snow, fall of, 123, 124.
Snow-shoes, 26.
Soap, substitute for, 100.

Social divisions of Tibet, 246, 247.
Solpon, or steward, 50; chenpo, or cup-bearer of the Dalai lama, 167.
Sonam chuphel, the Desi, 172.
Sonam-gyatso, the Dalai lama, 172.
Songkar, village of, 220; origin of name, 221; la, 221.
Springs, hot, 204, 211.
Srang, or ounce, 182.
Sri Dandi, his *Kavyadarsha* found, 112; minister's opinion of, 112; study of it by S. C. D., 113.
Srang-btsan gambo, King, his Chinese wife, 151; image of, Shenrezig made by him, 152; his soul absorbed in it, 153; image of king, 153; his stone seat, 153; picture painted with his blood, 159; his image in Potala, 168; temple built by, 230, 232.
Stag, stuffed at Gyantse, 91.
Stirrup-cup, 28.
Store houses in Djong, 177.
Stove, earthenware, 60, 112, 162.
Stuffed pheasants, 8; animals of Gyantse, 91.
Sumdongma plain, 29.
Summer retirement of lamas, 214, 261.
Sunapara, village of, 70.
Sundub phug, 18.
Surgeons, college of, at Lhasa, 195, 196.
Surveying mode followed for Gyantse, 86, 87; minister wants to learn, 101.
Swallows, 43.

Ta-chien-lu, the town of, 516.
Tag, village of, 220.
Taga-sho, village of, 226.
Tag chhen Panda. *See* Tag-tsan bumba.
Tagkar-sho, ruins of, 226.
Tagmar. *See* Tamar.
Tagnag, village of, 211.
Tagong. *See* Taugang.
Tag-po, birth-place of new Dalai lama, 161; annexed to Sakya, 240.
Tag-tsan bumba, shrine of, 231.
Taimen, hamlet of, 75.
Taisamling college, 119.
Takoar, village of, 1.
Tale of the two friends who tried to deceive each other, 92–94.
Tale, village of, 7, 8.
Ta-lung, village of, 216.
Tama chu, lake, 15.
Tama la, 22.
Tama lung, village of, 142, 236.
Tamar, village of, 43.
Tamarisk trees, 230.
Tambur valley, early inhabitants, 327; Khola Limbu, 20.
Tamdrin, the god, 22; *see also* Haryagriva; incarnation of Shenrezig, 138; destroys demon, 139.
Ta miran kukyab, crags, 22.
Tana, village of, 209.
Tanag, village of, 66; estate of minister at, 125; visited by U. G., 204; incarnate lama at, 241.
Tanag Donphug, lamasery of, 241.
Tandub, temple of, 230.
Tang-da. *See* Tanta.
Tanglung, village of, 40.
Tang-pe, valley of, 204.
Tangye-ling monastery, 149, 195; regent taken from, 173.
Tang-tong gyal-po, King, builds bridge over Tsangpo, 143; his other works, 143.
Tanka, Tibetan coin, 39.
Tanta, hamlet of, 217.
Tao valley, 238.
Taranath lama, early residence, 209.
Targod chyi-khang, author lodged in, 45; leaves it, 111.
Targye, village of, 41, 211, 244.
Tarmima. See *doche*.
Tarpa gang, 34.
Tashi-chos ding monastery, 24.
Tashiding hill, at mouth of Kalai river, 6.
Tashigang, village of, 74, 101, 121, 123, 204.
Tashigong, village of, 243.
Tashi-gyantsa, village of, 62, 69, 125; description of, 69.
Tashi lama. *See* Panchen lama.
Tashilhunpo, frontier of, 40; author's first journey to, 40; arrival at, 43, 44; residence at, 45 *et sqq.*; beauty of, 45; illumination of, 56; worship of Emperor of China in, 60; view of, 69; employés living at Tashi-gyantsa, 69; inscription relating to founder of, 114; great temple of, 114, 117; S. C. D. leaves it for Lhasa, 124; house in Lhasa belonging to, 149; final departure from, 237.

Tashi-rabka, 32, 35, 36, 77; wall at, 36; bridge at, 37; traders at, 38.
Ta-tsan or colleges of Tashilhunpo, 117.
Ta-u, relay of horses, 52; officers of the, 63; tax, 182; by whom due, 185.
Taugang, village of, 74.
Tax-collectors, 177; duties and rights, 184.
Taxes, 181; exempted classes, 182; fixation of, 182, 183; lamaseries exempted from, 183; assessments, how made, 183; on wine, 183; on store-keepers, pedlars, 184; paid to landlords, 213.
Tea, drinking, 24, 49, 77–80; "general tea," 132, 205; varieties at Lhasa, 159; its introduction into Tibet, 159; grace before drinking, 167, 168; drinking by lamas, 207.
Teak wood pillars, in Jo khang, 163.
Tebong, village of, 39.
Telephone invented by lama, 208.
Teling, hamlet of, 76.
Temple, description of, at Dongtse, 78; at Gyantse, 90; at Samye, 222; at Sakya, 239.
Temple, Sir Richard, 73, 193.
Tertalingpa family, 235.
Theft, how punished, 187; ordeal for determining, 189.
Thorny shrub on Oma tang, 129.
Threshing, method of, 216, 218.
Tib chu, 218; village of, 218; la, 217, 218.
Tibgyu chu, 39.
Ti chu, 145; bridge over, 145.
Tiger, in Sikkim, 14; stuffed, at Gyantse, 91.
Timkra la, monkeys near, 2.
Timpon, police court of Lhasa, 174.
Tingri djong, 50, 121; road to, 50; general at, 80; visited by Amban, 178.
Tingugma, village of, 29.
Tinkar la, 84.
Tinki, peaks of, 238.
Tinle-gyatso, the Dalai lama, 159.
Tisrong detsan, King, 222; his image, 223; founds Samye, 225; monastery built by, 230.
Tobacco, smoking forbidden in Tashilhunpo, 119; by lamas generally, 119.
Tobgyal, palace of, 199; Panchen lama dies there, 203, 214.
Toilung, village of, 145.
Toilung chu. *See* Ti chu.
Toilung Tsorphu, 50.
Toi Suduling, monastery of, 218.
Toitsi, village of, 143.
Toll, bridge, 184.
Tom chu, 238.
Tombs, of Panchen lamas, 56, 69, 118; of Dorje phagmo, 136, 137; of first Dalai lama, 169.
Tomse-gang, square of, 155. *See also* Gya-bum gang.
Tondub Khangsar, family, 55; office at, 62; passport from, 67.
Tondub ling, 209.
Tongbu, village of, 142.
Tong chu, 204.
Tonglo mountain, 5.
Tong-shoi. *See* Dong-sho.
Tonmi Sambhota, the minister, 168.
Ton namgyalling Jong. *See* Tos namgyaling.
Toothache, caused by worms, 60; its prevalence in Tibet, 260.
Torma offerings, 56, 126, 262.
Tos-nam-gyaling, town of, 218.
Tovo Metsig-pa, the god, 153.
Trade, between Lhasa and China, 156; customs in Tibet, 191, 192.
Trap, for pheasants, 14.
Treasury of Tibet, 51.
Trees sprung from hair of saint, 227.
Troops, their pay, 180.
Tsa-khang, village of, 144.
Tsal-pa-nang, ruined village, 144.
Tsamba, parched barley meal, 40; how eaten, 112.
Tsandan-yu lha-khang, temple of, 232.
Tsang khang, or "chief temple," 151, 153.
Tsarong chu, 238.
Tsa tsam, 33.
Tsang, or Ulterior Tibet, 41; generals in, 80.
Tsang-po, the river, 66; waterfall at entry into Bhutan, 125; first view of, 142; bridge over, 143; crossing of by boat, 143; crowd near Tashi-gang, 204; ferry at Rag-tso, 209; passage near Kideshor, 219; at Samdub, 227; ferry at Logang, 228; journey along, 234, 235.
Tsari, country of, 88, 125. *See also* Yaru tsang-po.
Tse-chan monastery, 84; one of most ancient in Tibet, 87; doctor from, 121.

Tse-chog ling, incarnate lama of, degraded for adultery, 133; regent chosen from, 173.
Tse-chog-pa monastery, 234.
Tse-dung, or lama officials, 176; their number and duties, 176; linga, 262.
Tse labdra school of Potala, 176.
Tse-pa-med, the god, coral image of, in Ramoche, 165; image at Samye, 222.
Tse-tang, town of, 228, 229; lamaseries at, 230; lamas from, 232; returns to, 234. *See also* Che-thang.
Tsha-bu-na. *See* Tsal-pa-nang.
Tsi-khang, or Bureau of Accounts, 175.
Tsipon, or accountant, 50, 81.
Tso chung donka, lakelets, 22.
Tso dom-dongma, lake, 17.
Tsog-chen shalnyo, his annual reign in Lhasa, 266.
Tsog-chi, village of, 75.
Tsogpon, or headman, 51, 52.
Tso khang, or hall of worship, 57.
Tsomoling, the regent, 156; his reforms, 157; anecdote concerning, 156, 157; regent chosen from, 173.
Tsomoling lamasery, 157.
Tsomo tel-tung, 211, 243; visit to lake, 244.
Tso-nag lake, 16, 17.
Tsong du ta-tsang. *See* Chong du-chog.
Tsong-khapa, his birthday, 56; lamasery, near Gyantse founded by, 84; image at Gyantse, 90: crown on Lhasa Jo-vo presented by, 152; his statues at Lhasa, 152, 153; rock discovered by, 152; stone lamps given by, 153; his prayer-meeting, 198; place where he took his vows, 233.
Tsoni, in Ando, 156.
Tsopon, or head of village, 176.
Tsorpu monastery, 145.
Tubdan, lamasery of, 204.
Tuchung Jong. *See* Darchung djong.
Tu Kham, or upper (*Stod*) Khamdo. *See* Khamdo.
Tu-lug, family of Bonbo, 207.
Tung-chen, chief secretary, 47; goes to Dongtse, 69; his dress, 69; his birth place, 70; visit to his mother, 71.
Turban, yellow, 62, 95, 99.
Turnip, 32.
U, or Central Tibet, 61.
Uddayani, dance in celebration of birth of, 210.
Ugyen-gyatso, lama, 1, 24, 27; goes to Gyantse, 81; his visit of Gyantse, 85–88; surveys the town, 86; questions traders, 105; sent to the Lachan pass, 105, 106; recommends S. C. D. to friend, 107; prepares for journey, 110; leaves Shigatse, 111; returns to Gyatso-shar, 196; botanizes, 201; visits Bonbo sanctuary, 205, 206, 207, 208; revisits Rigyal Sendar, 213; returns to India, 216.
Ulag, hardships on people, 51, 53, 66, 179; given Chinese Amban, 63, 63; given all soldiers and merchants, 179; definition of, 182; by whom due, 182, 183; who exempted, 183.
Underground monastery, 38.
Urga, the town of, 209.
Usury, 190.

VACCINE, author brings some to Tibet, 105.
Vaidurya Ta-tsan, 195.
Vajra Akshobhya, the image of, at Lhasa, 155.
Vermicelli, 59.
Visvakarma, sculptor of image of the Buddha, 151.

WALLUNG, village of, 24; road to, 29; lamasery of, 31; district of, 36; traders from, 37.
Walnut trees, 218, 224, 226.
Wangdan, village of, 75.
Wangdu *chorten*, of Lhasa, 155.
Washing hands before meals, 99.
Watchmen in fields, 2.
Water, cold, not drunk, 112.
Weather makers, 24.
Well, mode of drawing water, 73, 87, 195.
Wena, village of, 39.
Wheat, grown at Chu-shul, 144; near Lhasa, 145.
Willow trees, 70, 73, 76, 118; near Lhasa, 144, 145, 149; at Tos nam-gyaling, 218; near Samye, 224, 226.
Winds, at Shigatse, 109.
Wine, not allowed lamas, 90.
Witchcraft, spread of, 212.

Wolves, 36.
Women, occupied in business, 55; their labours, 72; sell in market, 85; not in business at Shigatse, 85; harshly treated, 99; dress of wealthy, 121; make bricks, 143; official duties towards, 177; when unclean, 214; purification of, 214.
Worship, in temple of Dongtse, 78; by minister, 95; Kalachakra mandala, 127, 128.
Wu-tse temple of Samye, 222, 224.

YAB LA, 235.
Ya-go, village of. *See* Iago.
Yak, riding, 30; bulls drive off wolves, 36; stuffed at Gyantse, 91; horns hung before temple, 151; legend concerning some yak horns, 153, 154.
Yakthanga, name of Limbus, 3.
Yalung, valley, 20, 242; river, 21; village, 22.
Yamata ri valley, 22, 23.
Yambu, a weight of silver, 51.
Yamdo tso, 136, 216. *See also* Palti, lake, and Yamdo-yum tso.
Yamdo-yum tso, lake, 130, 140.
Yampung la, 12, 15; village, 15; trade at, 15.
Yangaro district, 20.
Yang-ku tang, village of, 32.
Yangma, 16, 24, 32; road to, 28, 29; river, 29, 32, 33; traders from, 29; cultivation at, 32; district of, 36.
Yangpung, salt dealers from, 8. *See also* Yampung.
Yangta, village of, 234.
Yanku tang, 22.
Yanthang, village of, 7.
Yarlha-shampo mountains, 231.
Yarlung, district of, 226; its capital, 228; inundation of, 231; its fertility, 234; river, 231, 234; — shetag lamasery, 231. *See also* Gondang-tangme.
Yarsa, village of, 27.
Yaru la, 42, 244.
Yaru tsangpo, river 41. *See also* Tsang-po.
Yurupe village, 217.
Yu-tog, zamba, 148; school, 175.
Yong-dso chu, 16.

ZANGPO-PAL, hierarch of Sakya, 240.
Ze-khang shikha, village of, 232.
Zim phug, 30.
Zinan la, 22.
Zomba Lha khang. *See* Ombu lha-khang.
Zorwar Sing, the Sikh general, 53.

THE END.

PRINTED BY WILLIAM CLOWES AND SONS, LIMITED, LONDON AND BECCLES.

Published by the Royal Geographical Society